Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews

Series Editor:
Richard A. Harvey

Cell and Molecular Biology

Nalini Chandar
Susan Viselli

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

thePoint

Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Cell and Molecular Biology

Nalini Chandar, PhD
Professor of Biochemistry
Midwestern University
Downers Grove, Illinois

Susan Viselli, PhD
Professor of Biochemistry
Midwestern University
Downers Grove, Illinois

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: Crystal Taylor
Product Manager: Jennifer Verbiar
Marketing Manager: Christen Melcher
Development Editor: Kelly Horvath
Designer: Holly McLaughlin
Compositor: SPi Technologies

351 West Camden Street
Baltimore, MD 21201

530 Walnut Street
Philadelphia, PA 19106

Printed in China

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Chandar, Nalini.
Cell and molecular biology / Nalini Chandar, Susan Viselli.
p. ; cm.—(Lippincott's illustrated reviews)
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-0-7817-9210-3 (alk. paper)
1. Cytology—Examinations, questions, etc. 2. Cytology—Outlines, syllabi, etc. 3. Molecular biology—Examinations, questions, etc. 4. Molecular biology—Outlines, syllabi, etc. I. Viselli, Susan. II. Title. III. Series: Lippincott's illustrated reviews.
[DNLM: 1. Cells—Examination Questions. 2. Biological Transport—physiology—Examination Questions. 3. Cell Physiological Phenomena—Examination Questions. 4. Genetic Processes—Examination Questions. QU 18.2 C454c 2010]
QH581.2.C47 2010
611'.0181—dc22

2009037688

DISCLAIMER

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information present and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of this information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner; the clinical treatments described and recommended may not be considered absolute and universal recommendations.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with the current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in this publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at **(800) 638-3030** or fax orders to **(301) 223-2320**. International customers should call **(301) 223-2300**.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: http://www.lww.com. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6:00 pm, EST.

This book is dedicated to those we teach and
to those who taught us

Acknowledgments

Special thanks are extended to Matt Chansky who expertly and patiently transformed our sketches into the works of art that appear as figures throughout this book.

We are grateful to the team at Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. We thank Crystal Taylor whose support has been invaluable throughout the course of this project. We extend our gratitude to Kelly Horvath for her encouragement and skillful developmental editing. We also greatly appreciate the guidance provided by Jennifer Verbiar.

We value the support and critical reviews provided to us by our department chairman, Dr Lon Van Winkle. We are also thankful to all peer and student reviewers who read and critiqued the early versions of the chapters of this book.

We extend special gratitude to Dr Pamela Champe and Dr Richard Harvey, editors of the Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews series. We have used LIR Biochemistry as our coursebook for many years. We hope that this newest addition to the series will complement it and other fine LIR books and will become a helpful resource to students of the health professions.

And, of course this book would not have been possible without the support of our families. Thank you!

Contents

UNIT I
Cell and Tissue Structure and Organization

Unity of plan everywhere lies hidden under the mask of diversity of structure—the complex is everywhere evolved out of the simple.
—Thomas Henry Huxley
A Lobster; or, the Study of Zoology (1861). In: *Collected Essays*, Vol. 8. 1894: 205–206.

The most basic and simple form of human life is the cell. Complex organisms, such as humans, are collections of these individual cells that have grown and differentiated to generate the organism itself. Each cell in an adult developed in a purposeful way from a precursor cell along a specific lineage to become organized structurally and according to its function. Be it a liver cell, a blood cell, a bone cell, or a muscle cell, it was derived from a stem cell generated soon after the organism's conception. Hidden within the tiny stem cell is the vast capacity to develop into an array of diverse cell types that differentiate into efficient individual units that survive only within the context of the whole person.

Our discussion of cell and molecular biology therefore begins with an examination of stem cells, from which all other cells are generated. As we move deeper into this unit, we explore structural components of tissues including the extracellular matrix, which is produced by cells but resides outside the boundary of cell membranes. In considering cell structure, cell membranes serve as our starting point. As the outer limit of the cell, the plasma membrane protects the cell's interior from the environment. Yet, it is also a dynamic structure that enables interactions with the environment and facilitates the cell's function. Within the confines of the plasma membrane, we find cytoskeletal proteins that not only organize the cytoplasm and provide a structural framework for the cell but also function in the intracellular movement of chromatin and organelles. The organelles are specialized centers within each cell that carry out functional processes, including energy extraction in the mitochondria, macromolecule digestion in the lysosomes, and DNA and RNA synthesis in the nucleus. While each organelle is a complex machine in its own right and has its own unique role within the cell, organelles are linked physically by the cytoskeleton and cooperate in completing their tasks with a unified purpose.

Stem Cells and Their Differentiation 1

I. OVERVIEW

All cells within an organism are derived from **precursor cells.** Precursor cells divide along specific paths in order to produce cells that are differentiated to perform specialized tasks within tissues and organs. Cells with the capacity to give rise to the whole organism are referred to as **stem cells**. Stem cells are characterized by the ability to self-renew. They also generate many daughter cells committed to differentiate (change) into a diverse range of specialized cell types. A daughter cell with the ability to differentiate into a wide variety of cell types is **pluripotent**.

The human body is made up of about 200 different types of cells. The human genome is the same in all cell types, meaning that within an individual person, all cells have exactly the same DNA sequences and genes. Stem cells represent all the different ways that human genes are expressed as proteins. In order for different regions of the genome to be expressed in different cell types, the genome has to be reversibly modified. In fact, the organization of **chromatin** (a complex of specific proteins and DNA) varies between cell types and is made possible by reversible covalent modification of the proteins that are associated with DNA and sometimes the DNA itself (see also Chapter 6). These modifications are important to expose regions of the DNA to the proteins and enzymes that are required for **transcription** (DNA $\rightarrow$ RNA), allowing for variation in gene expression as proteins (see also Chapter 8).

Different cell types arise from single precursor cells that proliferate (divide) and eventually differentiate into cells with unique structures, functions, and chemical composition. From specific proteins produced in the cells, a special type of cell division, and the microenvironment of the precursor cell, a progeny of cells is produced. This progeny can both sustain the organism as well as carry out specific functions in the body.

II. STEM CELLS

Stem cells exist in both early embryos and in adult tissues (Figure 1.1). The stem cells present in early embryos have an extensive capacity to differentiate into all cell types of the organism. Populations of stem cells exist in adults that can differentiate into various cells within a lineage but not outside that lineage. For example, a hematopoietic stem cell can

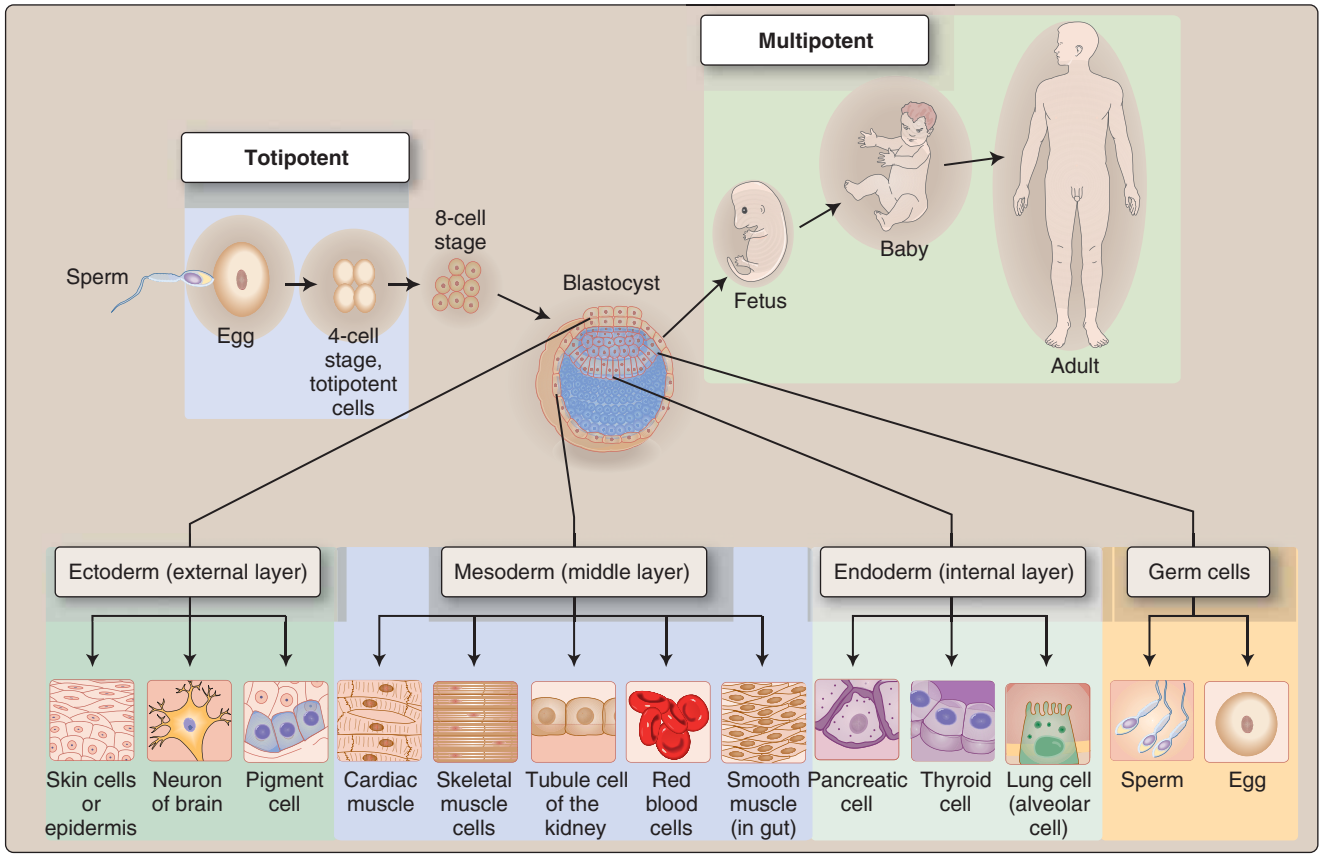


Figure 1.1
Embryonic and adult stem cells.

differentiate into various types of blood cells but not into a hepatocyte (liver cell). However, researchers may have found new properties of adult stem cells.

- **Totipotency** is the potential of a single cell to develop into a total organism (e.g., a fertilized egg and the four cell stage).
- **Pluripotency** is a cell's capacity to give rise to all cell types in the body but not to the supporting structures, such as the placenta, amnion, and chorion, all of which are needed for the development of an organism.
- **Unipotency** is a cell's capacity to give rise to only one cell type.
- **Multipotency** is a cell's capacity to give rise to a small number of different cell types.

A. Pluripotent stem cells

The most primitive, undifferentiated cells in an embryo are embryonic stem cells. These cells retain the ability to differentiate into a number of cell types. This ability to differentiate into multiple cell types is called **plasticity**.

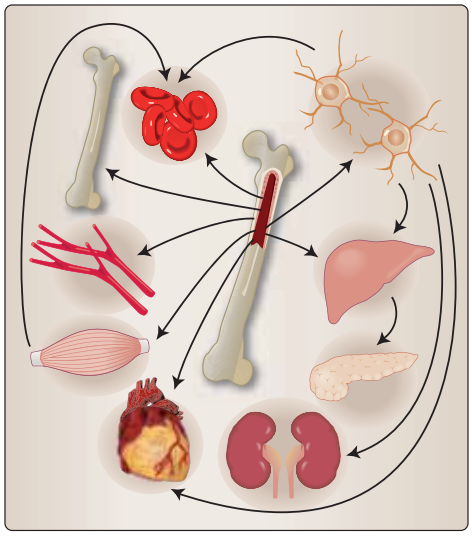


Figure 1.2
Stem cell plasticity.

B. Unipotent stem cells

Cells that reside within the adult tissues and retain the ability to generate cells for the tissue type to which they belong are **unipotent** stem cells. New information suggests that adult stem cells may actually be pluripotent. Adult stem cells have been identified for a number of different tissue types such as brain, bone marrow, peripheral blood, blood vessels, skeletal muscle, skin, and liver (Figure 1.2).

1. **Hematopoietic stem cells:** This group of stem cells gives rise to all the types of blood cells, including red blood cells, B lymphocytes, T lymphocytes, natural killer cells, neutrophils, basophils, eosinophils, monocytes, macrophages, and platelets.
2. **Mesenchymal stem cells:** Also called **bone marrow stromal cells,** mesenchymal cells give rise to a variety of cell types, including osteoblasts (bone cells), chondrocytes (cartilage cells), adipocytes (fat cells), and other kinds of connective tissue.
3. **Skin stem cells:** These stem cells are found in the basal layer of the epidermis and also at the base of hair follicles. Epidermal stem cells give rise to keratinocytes, while the follicular stem cells give rise to both hair follicles and the epidermis.
4. **Neural stem cells:** Stem cells in the brain give rise to its three major cell types: nerve cells (neurons) and two types of nonneuronal cells—astrocytes and oligodendrocytes.
5. **Epithelial stem cells:** Located in the lining of the digestive tract, epithelial stem cells are found in deep crypts and give rise to several cell types, including absorptive cells, goblet cells, Paneth cells, and enteroendocrine cells.

III. STEM CELL COMMITMENT

Most stem cells give rise to intermediate progenitor cells (also known as **transit amplifying cells**), which then produce a differentiated population of cells. A good example of this stepwise process is illustrated by hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs). These cells are **multipotent** but undergo commitment into a particular pathway in a stepwise process. In the first step, they give rise to two different **progenitors**. The committed progenitors then undergo many rounds of cell division to produce a population of cells of a given specialized type. In this particular case, the HSCs give rise to one type that is capable of generating lymphoid cells and another type that results in the generation of myeloid cells (Figure 1.3).

The different steps of commitment happen due to changes in gene expression. Genes for a particular pathway are switched on, while access to other developmental pathways is shut off by specific proteins that act as **transcription factors** (see Chapter 10). These proteins are able to both activate the genes necessary for a particular pathway and shut down the expression of genes necessary for development along a different pathway.

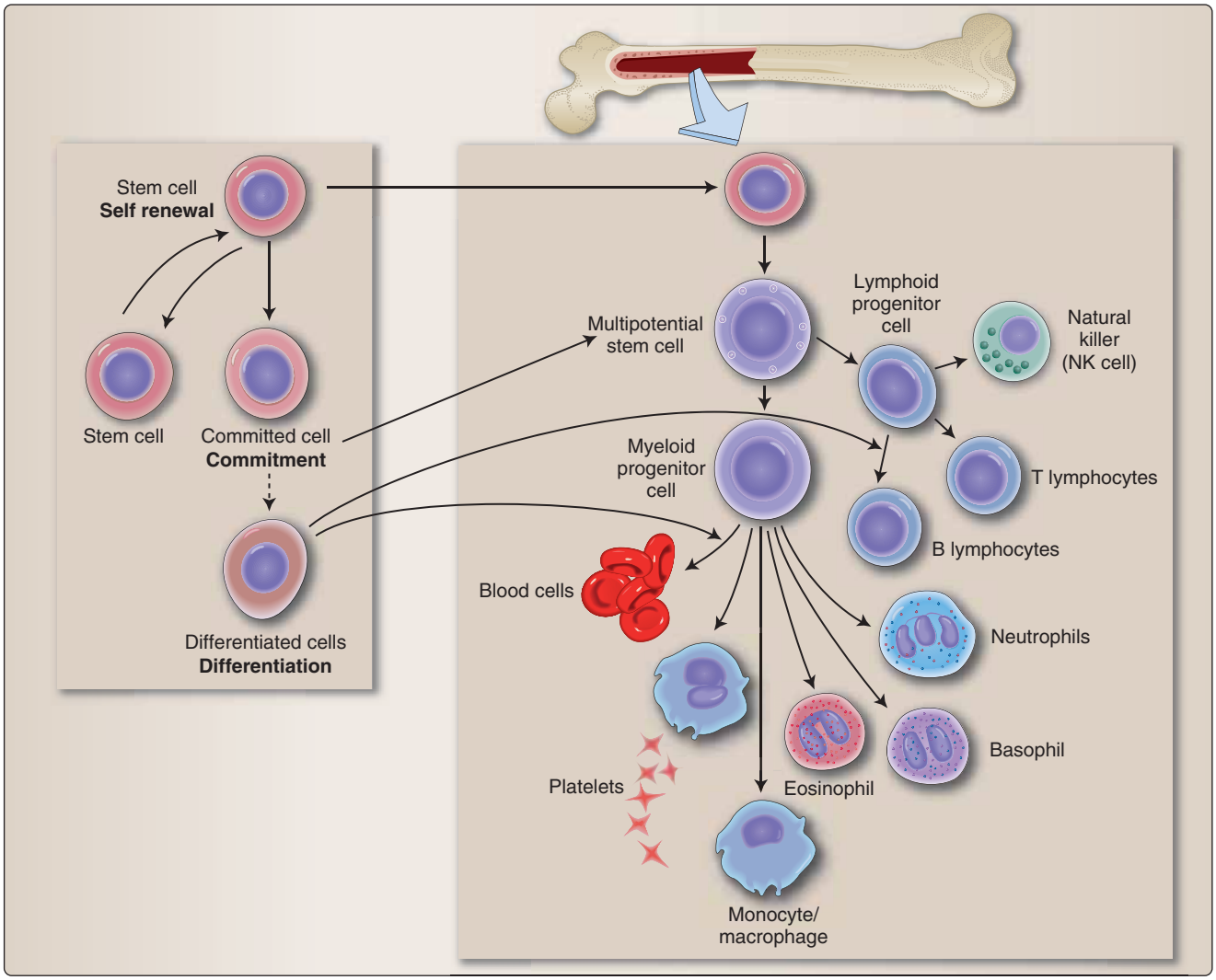


Figure 1.3
Stem cells commit to different pathways in a stepwise process.

IV. STEM CELL PLURIPOTENCY

In order to maintain stable self-renewal of stem cells, mechanisms that prevent their differentiation and promote their proliferation must be transmitted to their daughter cells. While specific mechanisms by which stem cells retain their pluripotency remain largely unknown, studies with mouse embryonic stem cells suggest the importance of a self-organizing network of **transcription factors.** These factors play an important role in preventing the differentiation and promoting the proliferation of the stem cells (see below). Another alteration that facilitates this process is the **epigenetic modification** (change that affects the cell without directly affecting the DNA sequence) of DNA, histones, or the chromatin structure in such a fashion that it changes the accessibility to transcription factors.

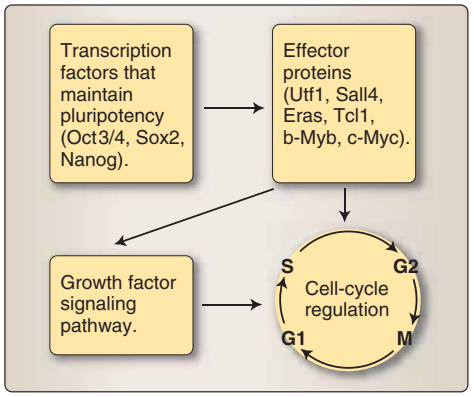


Figure 1.4
Proteins involved in maintaining stem cell pluripotency.

A. Transcription factors

As mentioned above, transcription factors play an important role in this process. These proteins function through other effector proteins to activate specific signaling pathways that lead to both cell survival and entry into the **cell cycle** to facilitate cell division. Several transcription factors act as master regulators to maintain pluripotency (Figure 1.4).

B. Epigenetic mechanisms

When stem cells are induced to differentiate, their nuclei are strikingly different from the nuclei of undifferentiated stem cells. The chromatin is more relaxed in undifferentiated stem cells than in differentiated cells. This allows the low level expression of several genes that is characteristic of pluripotential cells. The open structure allows for the rapid regulation that is necessary for stem cells to respond to the needs of the organism. One group of proteins that is important in silencing the genome through its ability to modify histone proteins is the **polycomb group of proteins**. These proteins have been shown to play key roles in stem cell maintenance, but details regarding their mechanism of action in embryonic stem cells are not resolved.

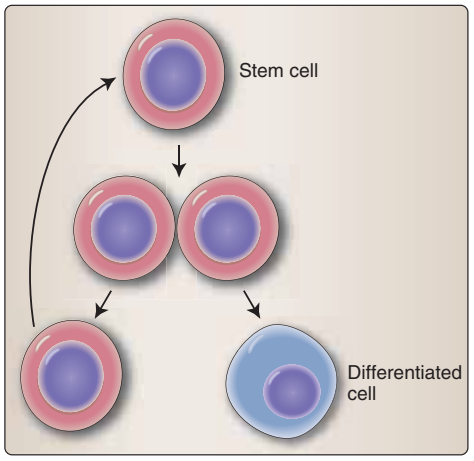


Figure 1.5
Asymmetric cell division.

V. STEM CELL RENEWAL

Development requires cells to commit to different fates. However, in the case of stem cells, there must be a mechanism in place to maintain their populations while also generating differentiated populations. This mechanism is called **asymmetric cell division.**

Asymmetric cell division occurs when two daughter cells are produced that differ in fate. In the case of the stem cell, it is the capacity to produce one cell similar to itself (i.e., to continue being a stem cell) and also generate another daughter cell that can proceed on a different pathway and differentiate (Figure 1.5).

Several mechanisms exist within stem cells that determine whether asymmetric cell division will take place. One such mechanism is **cell polarity.** Polarity is a stable feature in early embryos but may be a transient feature in tissue stem cells. External signals transmitted by seven transmembrane receptors are involved in this process (see Chapter 17).

VI. STEM CELL NICHE

If stem cells have to be maintained as stem cells and not differentiate into a particular cell type, mechanisms must exist to guarantee their continued presence. The microenvironment that controls the self-renewal and maintenance of stem cells is termed the "**stem cell niche.**" The niche saves stem cells from depletion, while protecting the host from overproduction of stem cells. It performs as a basic tissue unit integrating signals that allow for a balanced response of stem cells to the needs of the organism.

Progress has been made in the understanding and identification of niches for various types of tissue stem cells and in elucidating the role of the niche in regulating the asymmetric stem cell division. The choice of fate is determined by both extrinsic signaling and intrinsic mechanisms (see also Chapters 17 and 18).

A. Extrinsic signaling

While the cues that control proliferation and renewal of stem cells are not yet well defined, extracellular matrix interactions are known to play an important role (see also Chapter 2 for information regarding the extracellular matrix). Studies have highlighted the requirement for E-cadherin– and β-catenin–containing junctions between stem cells and cells that support their "stemness" (see also Chapter 2 for information about cell adhesion molecules and cell junctions). This is best understood with HSCs that associate with certain osteoblasts in the bone microenvironment that supports them. Signaling pathways that are engaged through adherens junctions have been found to be important in HSC renewal and proliferation. Cells outside of the direct contact with osteoblasts will differentiate, while the ones associated with this subpopulation of osteoblasts will remain as stem cells (Figure 1.6).

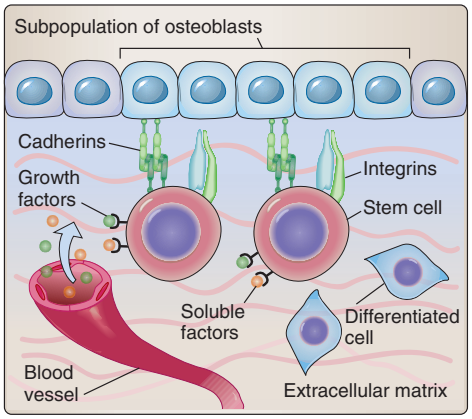


Figure 1.6
Extrinsic pathways maintaining HSC stem cell niche.

B. Intrinsic mechanisms

The mechanism of asymmetric cell division in mammalian cells is not completely understood. Different mechanisms may result in asymmetric cell division. One such mechanism may rely on specific proteins to subdivide the cell into different domains before **mitosis** (cell division) so that an axis of polarity is generated. Segregation of certain cell-fate–determining molecules into only one of the two daughter cells will help maintain one as a stem cell and allow the other to differentiate (Figure 1.7).

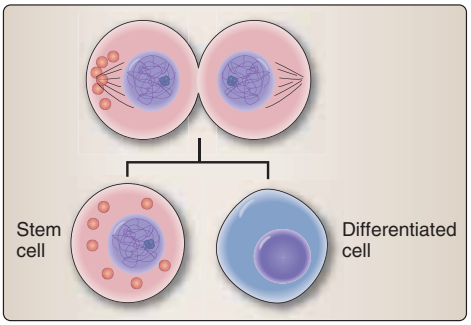


Figure 1.7
Differential segregation of cellular constituents during asymmetric cell division.

VII. STEM CELL TECHNOLOGY

Pluripotent stem cells offer the possibility of a renewable source of replacement cells and tissues to treat a number of diseases and conditions.

- Parkinson, where the brain cells secreting dopamine are destroyed.
- Type 1 diabetes mellitus, where the β cells of the pancreas are destroyed.
- Alzheimer disease, where neurons are lost due to the accumulation of protein plaques in the brain.
- Stroke, where a blood clot causes loss of brain tissue oxygenation.
- Spinal cord injuries, leading to paralysis of skeletal muscles.
- Other conditions such as burns, heart disease, osteoarthritis, and rheumatoid arthritis, where lost cells can be replaced using stem cells.

Induced pluripotent stem cells (iPS cells). It has been possible to reprogram adult cells into a pluripotent state by introducing extra copies of key genes that control pluripotency. In these cases, a cocktail of three to four genes appeared to do the trick. These genes code for specific transcription factors such as c-myc, Sox2, Oct3/4, Nanog, etc. While

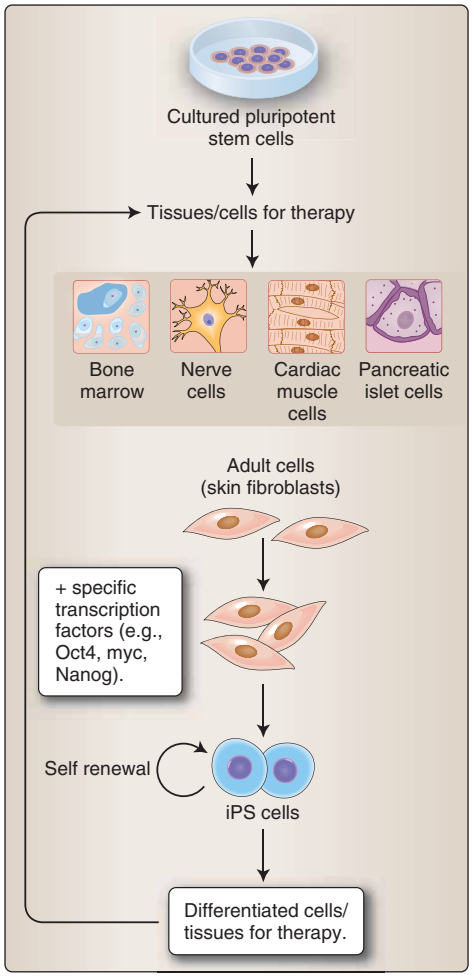


Figure 1.8
Stem cell–based therapy.

such research is in its infancy, the potential of iPS cells in the treatment of the above mentioned disorders is enormous (Figure 1.8).

VIII. STEM CELL DISEASES

It is possible that stem cell abnormality is the basis for several diseases and conditions.

Metaplasia is a switch that occurs in tissue differentiation that converts one cell type to another. It is often seen in lung disease (e.g., pulmonary fibrosis) and intestinal disorders (e.g., inflammatory bowel disease, Crohn disease). This represents a change that might be brought about by stem cells rather than terminally differentiated cells.

It is likely that many cancers, particularly of continuously renewing tissues, such as blood, gut, and skin, are in fact diseases of stem cells. Only these cells persist for a sufficient length of time to accumulate the requisite number of genetic changes for malignant transformation (see Chapter 22).

Extracellular Matrix and Cell Adhesion

2

I. OVERVIEW

Cells are organized into groups or aggregates, known as **tissues,** that perform one or more specific functions. Tissues, in turn, create a stable environment in which the cells live and function. Unlike epithelial, muscle, and nerve tissues which are composed principally of cells, connective tissue contains a matrix of macromolecules in the extracellular space. Known as the **extracellular matrix** (ECM), these macromolecules are synthesized and then secreted by cells that live within the tissue.

Adhesion is also important for maintaining a stable tissue environment and allows for communication between cells and the ECM. Therefore, structural components within tissues must include mediators of cell-to-cell and cell-to-ECM adhesion. Adhesive properties of cells also facilitate cellular growth and differentiation and allow cells to migrate. The cells and the ECM within a tissue influence each other by altering their adhesive connections, creating a complex feedback mechanism.

II. EXTRACELLULAR MATRIX

A substantial part of tissue volume is an extracellular space largely filled by the intricate network of macromolecules of the ECM. Proteins and polysaccharides of the ECM are secreted by cells of the tissue and are then assembled into an organized meshwork. The ECM is specialized to perform different functions in different tissues. For example, the ECM adds strength to tendons and is involved in filtration in the kidney and attachment in skin.

Cellular and extracellular materials make up different proportions of different tissues (Figure 2.1). While **epithelial tissue** is principally cellular with a small amount of ECM, **connective tissue** is principally ECM with fewer cells. The ECM of epithelial tissue is known as the **basement membrane** or **basal lamina** and is secreted in the same direction from all epithelial cells in the layer. Therefore, the basement membrane appears beneath the epithelial cells that have secreted it and separates epithelial cells from connective tissue underlying it. The **lamina propria** is a thin layer of loose connective tissue found beneath the epithelial cells or epithelium. Together the epithelium and the lamina propria constitute the **mucosa.** "Mucous membrane" or "mucosa" always refers to the epithelium with the

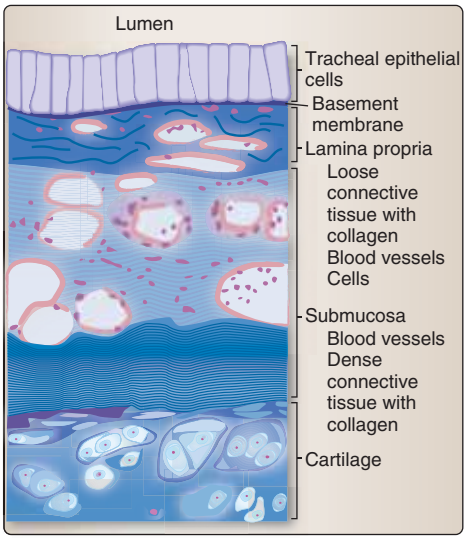


Figure 2.1
Connective tissue underlying an epithelial cell sheet.

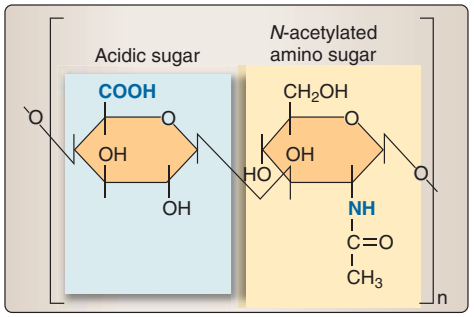


Figure 2.2
Repeating disaccharide unit of GAGs.

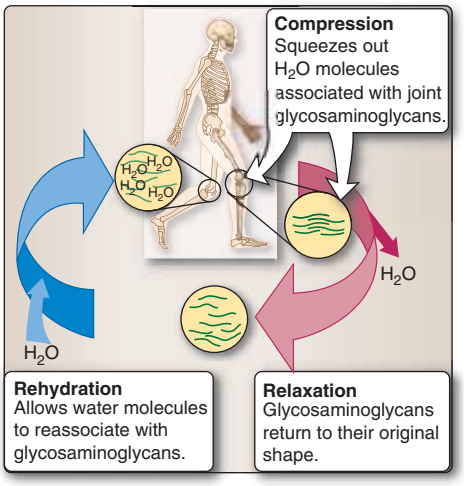


Figure 2.3
Resilience of GAGs.

lamina propria. **Submucosa** refers to a layer of tissue beneath a mucous membrane.

The physical nature of the ECM also varies from tissue to tissue. Blood is fluid, while cartilage has a spongy characteristic owing to the nature of extracellular materials in those tissues. Three categories of extracellular macromolecules make up the ECM: glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) and proteoglycans; fibrous proteins including collagen and elastin and adhesive proteins, including fibronectin and laminin. While two of these categories are proteins, proteoglycans are mostly carbohydrate in their structure.

A. Proteoglycans

Proteoglycans are aggregates of GAGs and proteins. GAGs are also known as **mucopolysaccharides** and are composed of repeating disaccharide chains where one of the sugars is an *N*-acetylated amino sugar, either *N*-acetylglucosamine or *N*-acetylgalactosamine (Figure 2.2), and the other is an acidic sugar. Most GAGs are sulfated. They are organized in long, unbranched chains. GAGs contain multiple negative charges and are extended in solution. The most prevalent GAG is chondroitin sulfate. Other GAGs include hyaluronic acid, keratin sulfate, dermatan sulfate, heparin, and heparan sulfate.

1. **Characteristics of proteoglycans:** Because of their net negative surface charges, GAGs repel each other. In solution, GAGs tend to slide past each other, producing the slippery consistency we associate with mucous secretions. Also, because of the negative charges, water floods into the matrix containing GAGs and creates swelling pressure (turgor). This pressure is balanced by the tension from collagen, a fibrous protein of the ECM, helping the ECM resist opposing forces of tissue compression. Cartilage matrix lining the knee joint has large quantities of GAGs and is also rich in collagen. This cartilage is tough, resilient, and resistant to compression. The bones of the joint are cushioned by the water balloon–like structure of the hydrated GAGs in the cartilage. When compressive forces are exerted on it, the water is forced out and the GAGs occupy a smaller volume (Figure 2.3). When the force of compression is released, water floods back in, rehydrating the GAGs, much like a dried sponge rapidly soaking up water. This change in hydration in the ECM is referred to as **resilience** and is seen in cartilage as well as in synovial fluid and the vitreous humor of the eye (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 14).

2. **Structure of proteoglycans:** With the exception of hyaluronic acid, GAGs are found covalently attached to protein and form **proteoglycan monomers**. These monomers consist of a core protein with GAGs extending out from it and remaining separated from each other owing to charge repulsion. In cartilage proteoglycans, the GAGs include chondroitin sulfate and keratin sulfate. The resulting proteoglycan is often described as having a “bottle brush” or “fir tree” appearance (Figure 2.4). The individual GAG chains resemble needles on an evergreen tree and the core protein, a branch. The trunk of the tree is the **hyaluronic acid**, as individual proteoglycan monomers then associate with this large GAG, to form

proteoglycan aggregates. The association occurs primarily through ionic interactions between the core protein and the hyaluronic acid and is stabilized by smaller, **link proteins**.

Use of glucosamine as therapy for osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis is the most common form of joint disease and the leading cause of pain and physical disability in elderly persons. Traditional management of the disease has been with drugs that treat the symptoms but do not improve joint health. Glucosamine and chondroitin have been reported both to relieve pain and to stop progression of osteoarthritis. These compounds are readily available as over-the-counter (OTC) dietary supplements in the United States. Based on several well-controlled clinical studies, it does appear that glucosamine sulfate (but not glucosamine hydrochloride) and chondroitin sulfate may have a small-to-moderate effect in relieving symptoms of osteoarthritis. Additionally, there is evidence that glucosamine sulfate and chondroitin sulfate can help to halt the progression of osteoarthritis.

B. Fibrous proteins

Fibrous proteins are extended molecules that serve structural functions in tissues. They are composed of specific amino acids that combine into regular, secondary structural elements. In contrast to fibrous proteins, globular proteins have more compact structures resulting from secondary, tertiary, and, sometimes, quaternary protein structure (see *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 4). **Collagen** and **elastin** are fibrous proteins in the ECM that are important components of connective tissue as well as of skin and blood vessel walls.

1. **Collagen:** The most abundant protein in the human body, collagen forms tough protein fibers that are resistant to shearing forces. Collagen is the main type of protein in bone, tendon, and skin. Bundled collagen in tendons imparts strength. In bone, collagen fibers are oriented at an angle to other collagen fibers to provide resistance to mechanical shear stress applied from any direction. In the ECM, collagen is dispersed as a gel-like substance and provides support and strength. Collagen is a family of proteins, with 28 distinct types. However, over 90% of collagen in the human body is in collagen types I, II, III, and IV. Together the collagens constitute 25% of total body protein mass. Types I, II, and III are fibrillar collagens whose linear polymers of fibrils reflect the packing together of individual collagen molecules. Type IV (and also type VII) is a network-forming collagen that becomes a three-dimensional mesh rather than distinct fibrils.

   a. **Structure of collagen:** Collagen molecules are composed of three helical polypeptide **α chains** of amino acids that wind around one another forming a collagen triple helix (Figure 2.5). The various types of collagen have different α chains, occurring in distinct combinations (Table 2.1). For example, collagen

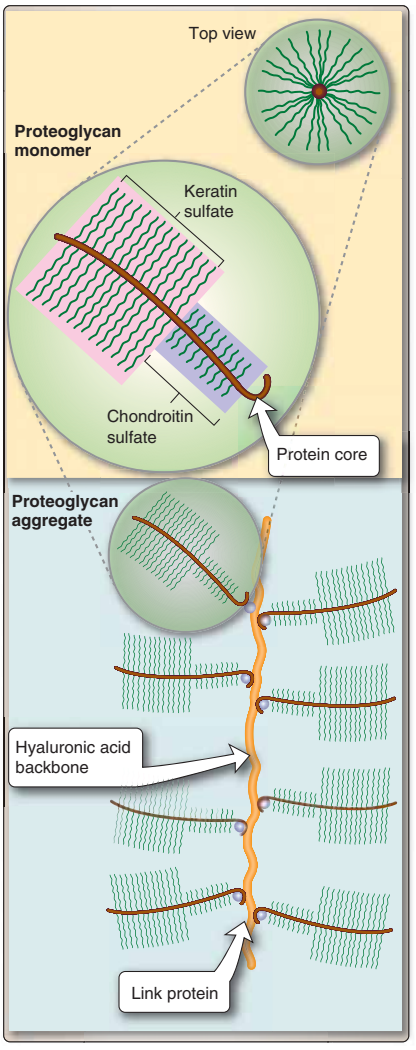


Figure 2.4
Model of cartilage proteoglycan.

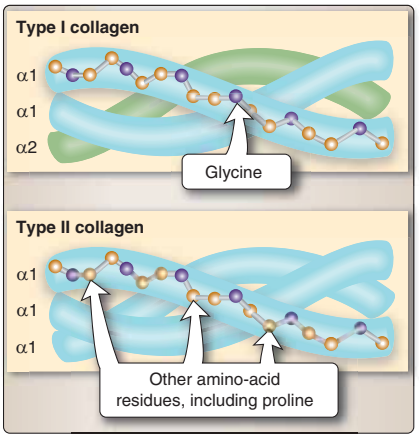


Figure 2.5
Triple helical structure of collagen.

Table 2.1
CHAIN COMPOSITIONS OF COLLAGEN TYPES

Type	Chain Composition	Characteristics
I	$[\alpha_1(I)]_2[\alpha_2(I)]$	Most abundant collagen Found in bones, skin, tendons Present in scar tissue
II	$[\alpha_1(II)]_3$	Found in hyaline cartilage Present on the ventral ends of the ribs, in the larynx, trachea, and bronchi, and on the articular surface of bone
III	$[\alpha_1(III)]_3$	Collagen of granulation tissue in healing wounds Produced before tougher type I is made Forms reticular fibers Found in artery walls, intestine, uterus
IV	$[\alpha_1(IV)_2[\alpha_2(IV)]$	Found in basal lamina and eye lens Part of the filtration system in glomeruli of nephron in kidneys

type I has two type I α_1 chains and one type I α_2 chain, while collagen type II has three type II α_1 chains. In the primary amino acid sequence of α chains, every third amino acid is **glycine**, whose side chain is simply a hydrogen atom. Collagen is also rich in the amino acid **proline.** The amino acid sequence of most of the α chains can be represented as repeating units of -X-Gly-Y- where X is typically a modified form of either proline or lysine (hydroxyproline or hydroxylysine), Gly refers to glycine, and Y is proline. In the collagen triple helix, the small hydrogen side chains of glycine residues (amino acids within proteins) are placed toward the interior of the helix in a space too small for any other amino acid side chain. Three α chains in this conformation can pack together tightly. Proline also facilitates the formation of the helical conformation of each α chain because it has a ring structure that causes “kinks” in the peptide chain.

b. Synthesis of collagen: Collagen manufacture occurs as individual fibrillar collagen polypeptide chains are translated on membrane-bound ribosomes (Figure 2.6). An unusual modification is then made to certain amino acid residues. In a reaction dependent on **vitamin C**, selected proline and **lysine** amino acid residues are **hydroxylated**. Some of the hydroxylysine residues are then **glycosylated** (carbohydrate is added to them). In the Golgi complex, three pro-α chains assemble into a helix by a zipper-like folding. A secretory vesicle then buds off from the Golgi complex, joins with the plasma membrane, and releases the newly synthesized collagen triple helices into the extracellular space. Propeptides, small portions of each end (C-terminal and N-terminal) of the newly synthesized chains, are cleaved by proteases (such as procollagen peptidase) to yield tropocollagen. Self-assembly and cross-linking of **tropocollagen** molecules then occur to form mature **collagen fibrils**. Packaging of collagen molecules within fibrils leads to

a characteristic repeating structure with a banding pattern that can be observed with electron microscopy. The fibrillar array of collagen is acted on by the enzyme, **lysyl oxidase,** which modifies lysine and hydroxylysine amino acid residues, forming **allysine** residues and allowing them to form the covalent cross-links seen in mature collagen fibers. This cross-linking is essential to achieve the tensile strength necessary for proper functioning of connective tissue.

Collagen and aging

Because collagen plays a key role in the support structure of the skin, if collagen production slows or its structure is changed, the appearance of the skin will also change. As skin ages, collagen production slows down. Additionally, over time, collagen fibers become rigid. Theoretically, this damage is caused by free radicals that attach to collagen, causing collagen strands to bind together and become thicker and more unyielding to movement. This process is the basis for wrinkle formation and the loss of firmness in mature skin. Collagen injections are sometimes given to restore volume and reduce the appearance of wrinkles. Antiaging products commonly contain antioxidants that may inhibit free radicals and slow the damage to collagen. Some other OTC topical products contain plant or animal collagen, in the hope that it will be absorbed by the skin and replenish the natural collagen that has been lost due to aging. More promising topical products may contain retinoids that inhibit synthesis of collagenases, the enzymes that break down collagen. Retinoids, available as prescription creams, can also stimulate the production of new collagen fibers in the skin. While hundreds of OTC antiaging products are available, they contain either much lower concentrations or different active ingredients than creams available by prescription. The efficacy of OTC antiaging products is not proven.

2. **Elastin:** The other major fibrous protein in the ECM is elastin. Elastic fibers formed by elastin enable skin, arteries, and lungs to stretch and recoil without tearing. Elastin is rich in the amino acids glycine, alanine, proline, and lysine. Similar to collagen, elastin contains hydroxyproline, although only a small amount. No carbohydrate is found within the structure of elastin and therefore it is not a glycoprotein.

   a. **Synthesis of elastin:** Cells secrete the elastin precursor, tropoelastin, into the extracellular space. Tropoelastin then interacts with glycoprotein microfibrils including **fibrillin**, which serve as a scaffolding onto which tropoelastin is deposited. Side chains of some of the lysine amino acid residues within tropoelastin polypeptides are modified to form **allysine residues**. In the next step, the side chains of three allysine residues and the side chain of one unaltered lysine residue from the same or neighboring tropoelastin polypeptide are joined covalently to form a **desmosine cross-link** (Figure 2.7). Thus, four individual polypeptide chains are covalently linked together.

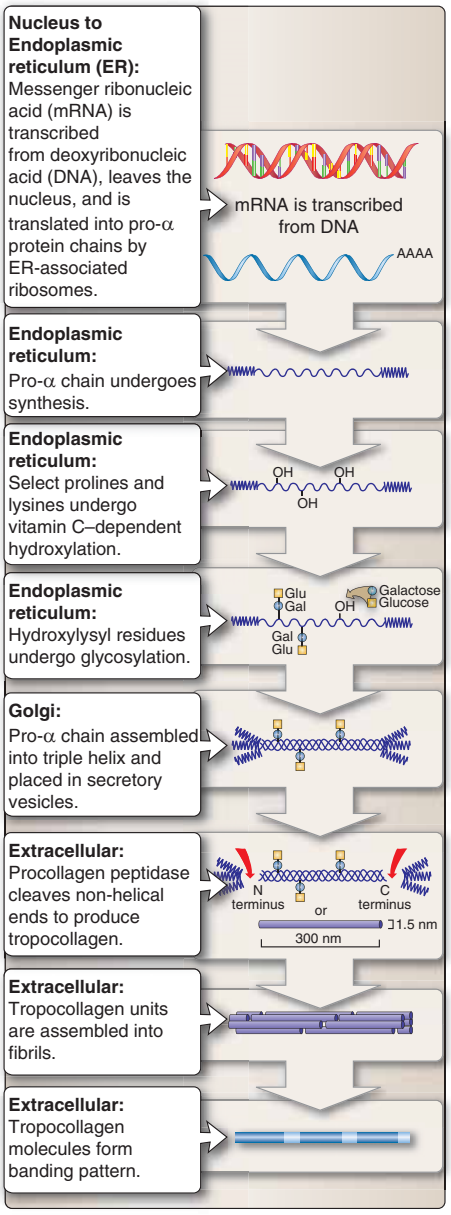


Figure 2.6
Synthesis of collagen.

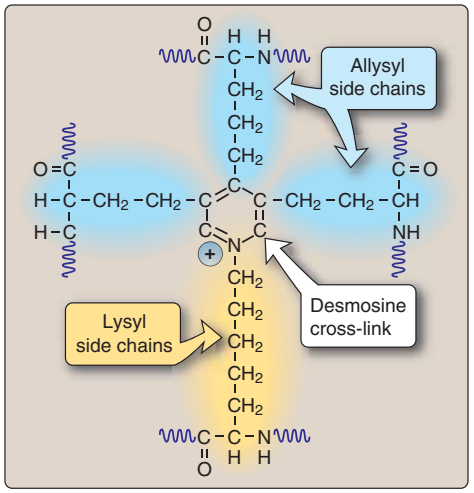


Figure 2.7
Desmosine cross-link in elastin.

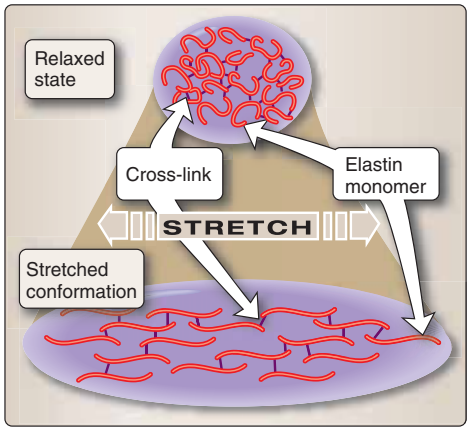


Figure 2.8
Elastin in relaxed and stretched conformations.

b. Characteristics of elastin: The structure of elastin is that of an interconnected rubbery network that can impart stretchiness to the tissue that contains it. This structure resembles a collection of rubber bands that have been knotted together, with the knots being the desmosine cross-links. Elastin monomers appear to lack an orderly secondary protein structure because elastin can adopt different conformations both when relaxed and when stretched (Figure 2.8).

C. Fibrous proteins and disease

Because collagen and elastin play important structural roles in tissues, impaired production of these fibrous proteins can result in disease states. Both acquired and inherited defects can result in abnormal fibrous proteins that change the physical properties of the tissue, sometimes with serious consequences. In other situations, the fibrous proteins are synthesized properly but are then degraded inappropriately, also impacting the normal functional characteristics of the tissue. The disease states described below serve to highlight the importance of normal fibrous proteins to the health of tissues and of the individual.

1. **Scurvy:** Dietary **deficiency in vitamin C** causes scurvy, a disorder that results from aberrant collagen production. In the absence of vitamin C, hydroxylation of proline and lysine amino acid residues cannot occur, resulting in defective pro-α chains that cannot form a stable triple helix. These abnormal collagen pro-α chains are degraded within the lysosomes of the cell. As a consequence, there is less normal, functional collagen available to provide strength and stability to tissues. Blood vessels become fragile, bruising occurs, wound-healing is slowed, and gingival hemorrhage and tooth loss occur (Figure 2.9A).

Scurvy: Past and present

In centuries past, scurvy was a ravaging illness among seamen. They began to carry limes onboard ships to provide a source of vitamin C during long voyages. While much less common in the 21st century, scurvy does still occur today, even in industrialized societies. It is seen predominantly among elderly, indigent persons who live alone and prepare their own food; persons with poor dentition; persons with alcoholism; and those who follow fad diets. Other individuals may avoid fruits and vegetables, dietary sources of vitamin C, because of perceived food allergies or intolerances. Scurvy is less common in the pediatric population. Signs of scurvy in children may mimic child abuse, while scurvy may actually occur as a result of parental neglect in not providing proper foods to the children. Because vitamin C deficiency today is typically accompanied by deficiencies in other essential nutrients, diagnosis may be delayed.

2. **Osteogenesis imperfecta:** In contrast to the acquired collagen deficiency of scurvy, inherited collagen defects may impact individuals throughout their life span. A family of inherited collagen disorders, osteogenesis imperfecta has been called “brittle bone disease,” because many affected individuals have weak bones that

fracture easily (Figure 2.9B). The disorder is caused by any one of several inherited mutations in a collagen gene, resulting in weak bones. A mutation may result in decreased production of collagen or in abnormal collagen. Eight forms of osteogenesis imperfecta are currently known. Some forms have more severe signs and symptoms than others (Table 2.2). The most common is osteogenesis imperfecta type I, in which most affected persons have mild signs and symptoms including bones that fracture easily, especially prior to puberty. They may also have spinal curvature and hearing loss. By contrast, type II is lethal prior to or shortly after birth. Most types have autosomal dominant inheritance patterns and affected persons inherit a mutant gene from one parent who is also affected.

3. **Ehlers-Danlos syndrome:** A group of relatively uncommon disorders that result from inherited defects in the structure, production, or processing of fibrillar collagen is known as Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. There are six major types of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, categorized based on signs and symptoms. Most are inherited as autosomal dominant traits. All six types include joint involvement. Most also affect skin. Some of the more prominent signs and symptoms include joints that extend beyond the normal range of movement and skin that is especially stretchy or fragile (Figure 2.9C).

4. **Marfan syndrome:** Another condition inherited as an autosomal dominant trait is Marfan syndrome. In this disorder, a mutation occurs in the gene that codes for the **fibrillin**-1 protein essential for maintenance of elastin fibers. Because elastin is found throughout the body and is particularly abundant in the aorta, the ligaments, and in portions of the eye, these sites are most affected in individuals with Marfan syndrome. Many affected individuals have ocular abnormalities and myopia (near-sightedness) and abnormalities in their aorta. They also have long limbs and long digits, tall stature, scoliosis (side-to-side or front-to-back spinal curvature) or kyphosis (curvature of the upper spine), abnormal joint mobility, and hyperextensibility of hands, feet, elbows, and knees.

5. **α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency:** Also related to elastin is α_1-antitrypsin deficiency. In this condition, inappropriate destruction of the lung elastin is catalyzed by the protease elastase. Affected individuals are predisposed to emphysema. In the lungs of all individuals, the alveoli are chronically exposed to low levels of neutrophil elastase, released from activated neutrophils. This destructive enzyme is, however, normally inhibited by α_1-antitrypsin, also called α_1-protease inhibitor and α_1-antiprotease, the most important physiological inhibitor of neutrophil elastase. Individuals deficient in α_1-antitrypsin have reduced ability to inhibit elastase in the lung. Because the lung tissue cannot regenerate, the destruction of the connective tissues of alveolar walls is not repaired and disease results (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 4).

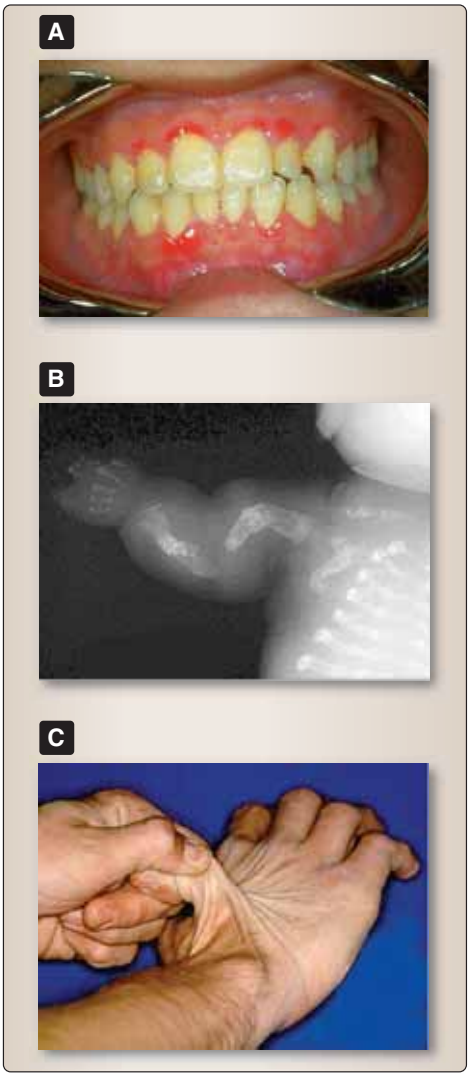


Figure 2.9
Signs of conditions with abnormal fibrous proteins. **A.** Bleeding gums of a patient with scurvy. **B.** Fractured bone of a patient with osteogenesis imperfecta. **C.** Stretchy skin of an individual with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.

D. Adhesive proteins

The last category of ECM components consists of proteins that join together and organize the ECM and also link cells to the ECM.

Table 2.2
OSTEOGENESIS IMPERFECTA TYPES AND CHARACTERISTICS

Type	Inheritance	Collagen	Features
I	Autosomal dominant	Normal structure Low concentration	Bones fracture easily, most before puberty Normal stature Loose joints, weak muscles Blue/gray-tinted sclera Bone deformity absent Triangular face Brittle teeth possible Hearing loss possible in 20s and 30s
II	Autosomal dominant	Abnormal structure Collagen I mutation	Lethal at or shortly after birth Numerous fractures Small stature Severe bone deformity Respiratory problems Underdeveloped lungs
III	Autosomal dominant	Abnormal structure Collagen I mutation	Bones fracture easily Fractures often present at birth Short stature Blue/gray-tinted sclera Loose joints and poor muscle development Barrel-shaped rib cage Triangular face Spinal curvature Respiratory problems Brittle teeth Hearing loss possible
IV	Autosomal dominant	Abnormal structure Collagen I mutation	Bones fracture easily, most before puberty Shorter-than-average stature Sclera normal in color Mild-to-moderate bone deformity Tendency toward spinal curvature Triangular face Brittle teeth possible Hearing loss possible
V	Autosomal dominant	Abnormal structure Normal collagen I Unknown mutation	Clinically similar to type IV Histologically, bone is “mesh-like”
VI	Unknown autosomal Eight reported cases	Abnormal structure Normal collagen I Unknown mutation	Clinically similar to type IV Histologically, bone has “fish-scale” appearance
VII	Recessive	Abnormal collagen *CRTAP* gene mutation	Resembles type IV or lethal type II
VIII	Recessive	Abnormal collagen *LEPRE1* gene mutation	Resembles lethal type II or type III Severe growth deficiency Extreme skeletal undermineralization

Fibronectin and **laminin** are adhesive glycoproteins secreted by cells into the extracellular space. Fibronectin is the principal adhesive protein in connective tissues, while laminin is the principal adhesive protein in epithelial tissues. Both are considered multifunctional proteins because they contain three different binding domains that link them to cell surfaces and to other components of the ECM, including proteoglycans and collagen (Figure 2.10). Through their interactions with fibronectin or laminin, proteoglycans and collagen are linked to each other and to a cell's surface. Thus, adhesive proteins join ECM components to each other and link cells to the ECM.

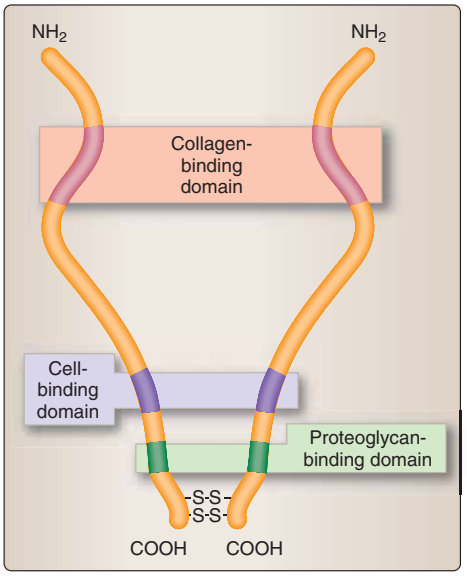


Figure 2.10
Structure of a fibronectin dimer.

III. CELL ADHESION

Cell-to-ECM and cell-to-cell adhesions are additionally mediated by plasma membrane–anchored proteins called **cell adhesion molecules.** Collections of adhesion molecules form **cell junctions** that join cells together within tissues. There is an increasing recognition that adhesion is involved in the pathogenesis of many different diseases including viral infections, cardiovascular disease, and bone and joint disease. Development of a more complete understanding of the fundamental process of cell adhesion will likely lead us to a better understanding of such diverse pathologies.

A. Adhesion in developing tissues

Many tissues, including most epithelial tissues, develop from a precursor, the founder cell that divides to produce copies of itself. These newly produced cells remain attached to the ECM and/or to other cells owing to cell adhesion (Figure 2.11). A growing tissue is able to form because the member cells remain attached and do not travel elsewhere. Selective adhesion is essential for the development of tissues that have complex origins. Migration of cells is also needed in these situations. One population of cells invades another and selectively adheres to them and, possibly, to other cell types to assemble the tissue.

B. Cell junctions

Even in mature tissues, structure and stability are actively maintained by selective cell adhesions. These adhesions are formed by the cells and fine-tuning and adjustment of them are ongoing. Cells in tissues adhere to other cells at specialized regions known as **cell junctions** which are classified according to their function (Figure 2.12). For example, physical barriers between individual cells are formed with **tight or occluding junctions** (also called zonulae occludentes). **Desmosomes or anchoring junctions** (also called maculae adherentes) as well as **adherens junctions** (also called zonulae adherentes) function to couple neighboring cells to each other by interacting with components of the cytoskeleton (intermediate filaments and actin), the inner framework or scaffolding within cells (see Chapter 4). **Hemidesmosomes** link cytoskeletal intermediate filaments to the basal lamina. And finally, **gap or communicating junctions** (also called nexus) allow for the transfer of signals between cells. Cell junctions are important in maintaining the structure of a tissue as well as its integrity. They are composed of a collection of individual cell adhesion molecules.

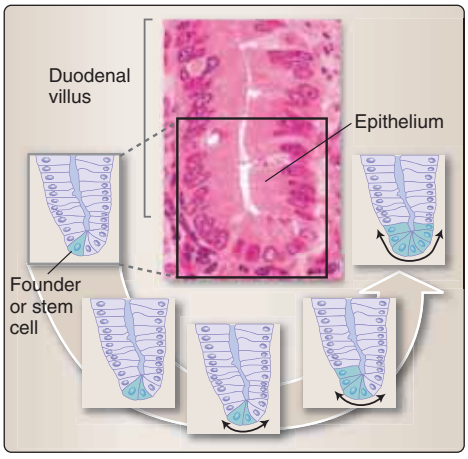


Figure 2.11
Cell adhesion during epithelial tissue development.

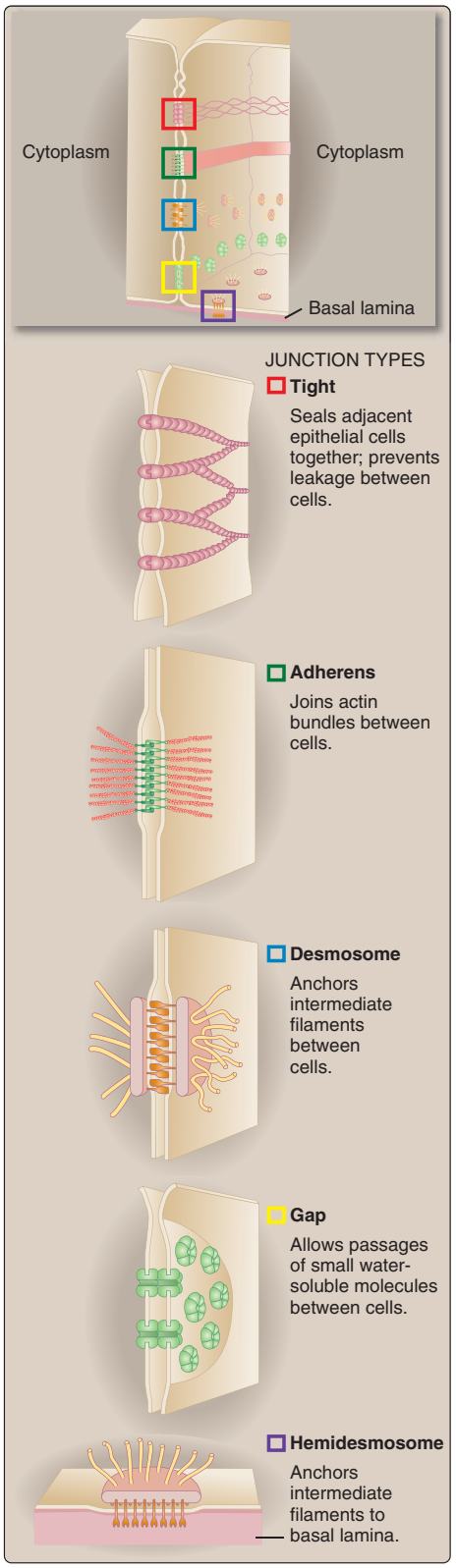


Figure 2.12
Types of cell junctions.

C. Cell adhesion molecules

Cell adhesion molecules mediate selective cell-to-cell and cell-to-ECM adhesion. These are all **transmembrane proteins** that are embedded within the plasma membranes of cells. They extend from the cytoplasm through the plasma membrane to the extracellular space. In the extracellular space, they bind specifically to their ligands. The ligands may be cell adhesion molecules on other cells, certain molecules on the surface of other cells, or components of the ECM. Interactions between individual adhesion molecules are important in adhesion during development and also mediate for cell migration. Four families of adhesion molecules function in cell-cell adhesion: the **cadherins**, the **selectins**, **the immunoglobulin superfamily**, and the **integrins** (Table 2.3). The integrins also function in cell-to-ECM adhesion (see *LIR Immunology*, Chapter 13).

1. **Cadherins:** The cell adhesion molecules that are important in holding cells together to maintain the integrity of a tissue are called the cadherins (Figure 2.13A). These transmembrane linker proteins contain extracellular domains that bind to a cadherin on another cell. Cadherins also have intracellular domains that bind to linker proteins of the **catenin** family that bind to the actin cytoskeleton, the internal scaffolding in the cytoplasm (see Chapter 4). Therefore, when two cells are linked together via cadherins, their actin cytoskeletons are indirectly linked as well. **Calcium** is required for cadherin binding to another cadherin. Adhesion mediated by cadherins is long-lasting and important in maintaining the tissue structure.

2. **Selectins:** Some other adhesion molecules mediate more transient cell-to-cell adhesions. For example, selectins are particularly important in the immune system in mediating white blood cell migration to sites of inflammation. Selectins are named for their "**lectin**" or carbohydrate-binding domain in the extracellular portion of their structure (Figure 2.13B). A selectin on one cell interacts with a carbohydrate-containing ligand on another cell.

3. **Immunoglobulin superfamily:** Another family of cell-to-cell adhesion molecules is named because they share certain structural characteristics of immunoglobulins (antibodies). These members of the immunoglobulin superfamily of adhesion molecules fine-tune and regulate cell-to-cell adhesions (Figure 2.13C). Some immunoglobulin superfamily members facilitate adhesion of leukocytes to endothelial cells lining the blood vessels during injury and stress. Ligands for this family of adhesion molecules include other members of the immunoglobulin superfamily as well as integrins.

4. **Integrins:** Both cell-to-cell and cell-to-ECM adhesions are mediated by integrins. Members of this family of homologous transmembrane, heterodimeric proteins bind to their ligands with relatively low affinity; multiple weak adhesive interactions characterize integrin binding and function. Integrins consist of two transmembrane chains, α and β (Figure 2.13D). At least 19 α and 8 β chains are known at present. Different α and β chains combine to give integrins with distinct binding properties. The β_2-type subunit is expressed exclusively by leukocytes (white blood cells).

Table 2.3
ADHESION MOLECULES AND LIGANDS

Family	Name	Synonym(S)	Expressed By	Ligand(S)
Cadherins	**Classical**			
	E-Cadherin	CDH1	Epithelial tissue	E-Cadherin
	N-Cadherin	CDH2	Neurons	N-Cadherin
	P-Cadherin	CDH3	Placenta	P-Cadherin
	Desmosomal			
	Desmocollins	DSC1, 2, 3	Epithelial tissue	Desmocollins
	Desmogleins	DSG1, 2, 3	Epithelial tissue	Desmogleins
Selectins	E-selectin	CD62E	Activated endothelium	Sialyl Lewis X
	L-selectin	CD62L	Leukocytes	CD34 GlyCAM-1 MadCAM-1 Sulfated sialyl Lewis X
	P-selectin	CD62P	Platelets, activated endothelium	Sialyl Lewis X, PSGL-1
Immunoglobulin superfamily	CD2	LFA-2	T cells	LFA-3
	ICAM-1	CD54	Activated endothelium, lymphocytes, dendritic cells	LFA-1 Mac-1
	ICAM-2	CD102	Dendritic cells	LFA-1
	ICAM-3	CD50	Lymphocytes	LFA-1
	LFA-3	CD58	Antigen-presenting cells, lymphocytes	CD2
	VCAM-1	CD106	Activated endothelium	VLA-4
Integrins	LFA-1	CD11a:CD18	Phagocytes, neutrophils, T cells	ICAM-1, -2, -3
	Mac-1	CD11b:CD18	Neutrophils, macrophages, monocytes	ICAM-1 iC3b Fibrinogen
	CR4	CD11c:CD18	Dendritic cells, neutrophils, macrophages	iC3b
	VLA-4	CD49d:CD29	Lymphocytes, macrophages, monocytes	VCAM-1

a. Ligands: When integrins mediate cell-to-cell adhesions, their ligands are members of the immunoglobulin superfamily. When integrins join a cell to the ECM, collagen and fibronectin commonly serve as their ligands. The cell-binding domain of a fibronectin molecule is its integrin-binding site. The extracellular domains of integrins bind to components of the ECM through recognition of a group of three amino acid residues: arginine, glycine, and aspartic acid, known as an **RGD tripeptide** (based on the one-letter abbreviations for each of the three amino acids). This binding triggers changes in the intracellular cytoplasmic domains of integrins, altering their interaction with cytoskeletal and/or other proteins that regulate cell adhesion, growth, and migration. The intracellular portions of most

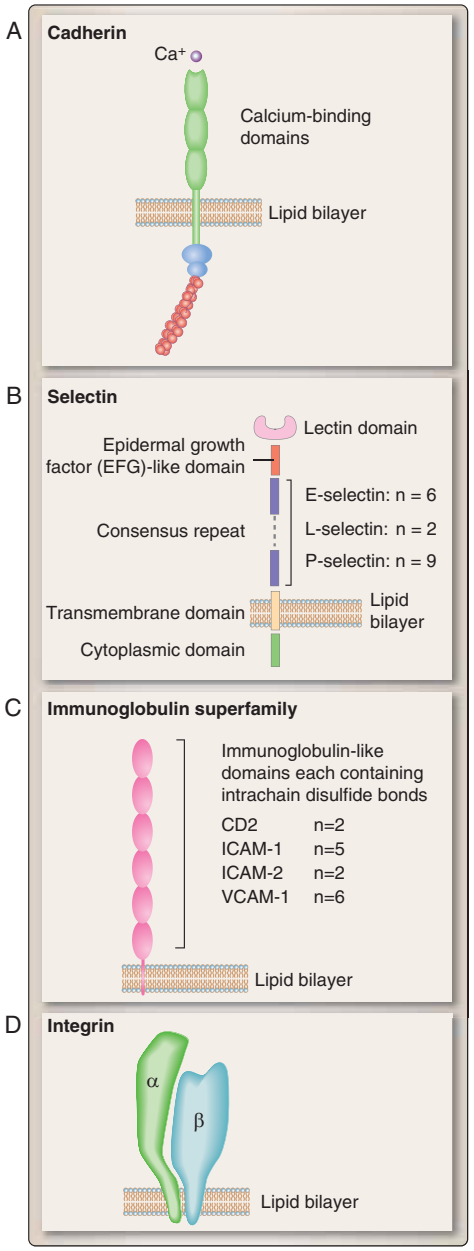


Figure 2.13
Adhesion molecule structure. **A.** Cadherin, **B.** Selectin, **C.** Immunoglobulin superfamily, **D.** Integrin.

integrins are joined to bundles of cytoskeletal actin filaments. Thus, integrins mediate interactions between the cytoskeleton within the cell and the ECM surrounding the cell.

b. Signaling: Signals generated inside the cell can alter the activation state of some integrins, affecting their affinity for their extracellular ligands. Thus, integrins have a unique ability to send signals across the plasma membrane in both directions, a process referred to as **inside-out and outside-in signaling**.

D. Adhesion and disease

Normal expression and function of adhesion molecules are required to maintain health and to defend against disease. When these normal cell-to-cell and/or cell-to-matrix interactions are interrupted or altered, disease processes can be triggered. Trafficking or movement of immune cells to a site of inflammation within a tissue depends upon adhesion molecules on leukocytes as well as on the endothelium. Impaired adhesion molecule expression causes an interruption in this process. However, adhesion molecules can also be exploited by infectious agents and disease processes. Increased adhesion-molecule expression can contribute to inflammatory conditions including asthma and rheumatoid arthritis.

1. Extravasation—cell migration from circulation to tissue: When a leukocyte from the immune system responds to an infectious agent in a tissue, its adhesion molecules must encounter their ligands and facilitate that cell's movement from blood into tissue (see also *LIR Immunology*, Figure 13.3).

a. Steps: In this process, a selectin on the leukocyte binds to its ligand, often a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily on the surface of an endothelial cell. "**Rolling**" of the leukocyte along the endothelium of the blood vessel then ensues (Figure 2.14). **Activation** of an integrin on the same leukocyte occurs, in an inside-out fashion, owing to signaling set off by the selectin interacting with its ligand. The activated integrin can then bind to its ligand on the endothelium, causing a **firm arrest** of the leukocyte. This is followed by **diapedesis**, or movement through the endothelial layer, and **extravasation,** or entry of the leukocyte into the tissue. Understanding of these traditional three steps of rolling, activation, and firm binding has recently been augmented and refined. Slow rolling, adhesion strengthening, intraluminal crawling, and paracellular and transcellular migration are now recognized as separate, additional steps.

b. Fatty streak formation: This same general process that allows cells from the immune system to reach a tissue site of infection also occurs in **fatty streak formation**, one of the first pathological changes in cardiovascular disease. The atherosclerotic process begins with an injury to the inner lining of the blood vessel, the endothelium. Monocytes bind to the injured endothelium in an adhesion-molecule dependent manner and then undergo diapedesis and extravasation into the subendothelium. There they engulf excess lipids to become foam cells. The foam cells

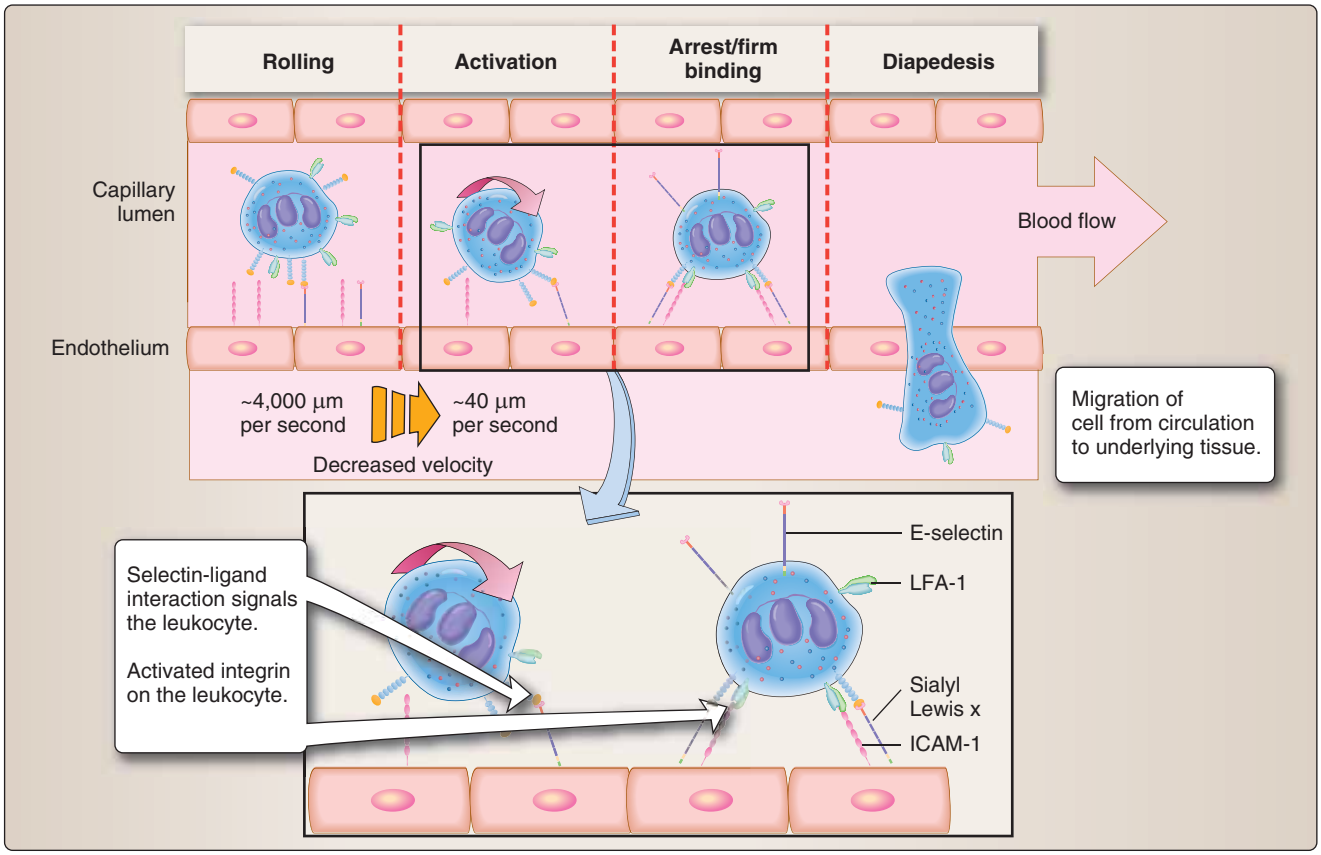


Figure 2.14
Extravasation.

accumulate in the wall of the blood vessel–forming plaque that becomes calcified. Restriction of blood flow can occur as a consequence (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, p. 235).

2. **Adhesion molecule defects:** Impaired expression of particular adhesion molecules can inhibit leukocyte trafficking to the sites of infection. Abnormal expression of other adhesion molecules can result in the disruption of normal tissue structure. In both situations, the health of the individual is compromised.

   a. **Cancer:** Changes in the expression or function of adhesion molecules are thought to be involved in the progression of cancer. Most cancers originate from epithelial tissue and E-cadherin is critically important in organizing the epithelium. The function of E-cadherin is altered in most epithelial tumors. Studies have shown that this loss of E-cadherin–mediated cell-to-cell adhesion occurs during tumor progression and is also required for subsequent tumor spreading or metastasis. Since the primary cause of death in persons with cancer is metastatic dissemination of tumor cells, much research is focused on understanding the molecular mechanisms of cell adhesion and signaling in this process.

   b. **Leukocyte adhesion deficiency:** The importance of functional adhesion molecules to health is highlighted by **leukocyte**

adhesion deficiency I (LAD), a rare but significant immunodeficiency. In contrast to changes in adhesion molecules later in life that may occur in cancer progression, LAD is an inherited defect in the β_2 **subunit of integrins**, which is normally exclusively expressed on leukocytes. Therefore, their leukocytes have an impaired ability to traffic to the sites of infection and recurrent bacterial infections result. Persons with LAD generally do not survive beyond two years of age.

c. Pemphigus: Another disease involving adhesion molecule defects is pemphigus, in which blisters develop as a result of failed cell-to-cell adhesion. Pemphigus is an autoimmune condition characterized by the disruption of cadherin-mediated cell adhesions. There are three types of pemphigus, which vary in severity. All forms are caused by autoantibodies that bind to the proteins in a subfamily of the cadherins, known as the **desmogleins**. Antibody binding to desmogleins prevents their function in cell adhesion. Therefore, adjacent epidermal cells are unable to adhere to each other and blisters develop. (**Pemphigoid** is a related group of blistering conditions in which autoantibodies to proteins of hemidesmosomes impair cell attachment to the underlying basal lamina.)

Forms of pemphigus

Of the three forms of pemphigus, pemphigus vulgaris is the most common and is characterized by mouth sores. Pemphigus foliaceus is the least severe. It is characterized by crusty sores on the scalp, chest, back, and face and is often misdiagnosed as eczema or dermatitis. The least common and most severe form of pemphigus is the malignant variety, known as paraneoplastic pemphigus. It is usually found in conjunction with another malignancy. Very painful sores appear on the mouth, lips, and esophagus. Fatal destruction of alveoli in lung tissue may also occur in this form.

3. Increased adhesion molecule expression and inflammation: Expression of more than the usual number of adhesion molecules per cell can result in enhanced migration of cells to a region and can lead to inappropriate inflammation.

a. Asthma: If inappropriate inflammation becomes chronic, as in asthma, discovering the source of the ongoing inflammation is an important step in prevention. In asthma, the airway constricts and becomes inflamed. Attacks are often triggered by viral infections. ICAM-1, a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily that normally facilitates adhesion between endothelial cells and leukocytes after injury or stress, has been implicated in the pathogenesis of asthma. Increased ICAM-1 expression is observed in the respiratory tract of individuals with asthma. This may permit an inappropriately large number of immune cells to migrate there, stimulating chronic inflammation.

b. Rheumatoid arthritis: The pathogenesis of another inflammatory condition, rheumatoid arthritis, may also include increased

expression of adhesion molecules. In this autoimmune disease, bone cells may have increased expression of adhesion molecules. In rheumatoid arthritis, synovial inflammation is associated with increased leukocyte adhesion. Selective involvement of the integrin LFA-1 and of ICAM-2 has been demonstrated. Inhibition of certain adhesion molecules is a potential therapy for rheumatoid arthritis.

4. **Adhesion molecules as receptors for infectious agents:** Adhesion molecules may assist in inflammation and in infection in yet another way. Because adhesion molecules are widely expressed on human cells and because viruses need a host binding protein to initiate infection, adhesion molecules may sometimes serve in this role. The same ICAM-1 molecule that mediates attachment of leukocytes to endothelial cells is also used as a receptor by the major group of rhinoviruses, the most important etiologic agent of common colds. Rhinovirus infections are also a major cause of exacerbations in asthma. Blocking ICAM-1 may be a therapeutic method of inhibiting rhinovirus infections.

Chapter Summary

- Tissues are not composed exclusively of cells. A substantial portion of their volume is filled by ECM.
- ECM contains proteoglycans, fibrous proteins, and adhesive proteins.
- Proteoglycans are composed of glycosaminoglycans and small, link proteins. They provide resilience and resistance to compressive forces.
- Fibrous proteins include collagen and elastin. Collagen forms tough fibers resistant to shearing stress. Elastin enables tissues to stretch and recoil without tearing.

Abnormalities in fibrous proteins result in disease:

- Scurvy—impaired collagen production caused by lack of dietary vitamin C.
- Osteogenesis imperfecta—inherited disorders of collagen characterized by weak bones.
- Ehlers-Danlos syndrome—characterized by hyperextendible joints and stretchy skin.
- Marfan syndrome—defective fibrillin-1 impairs the maintenance of elastin and results in defects in the aorta, eye, and skeleton.
- α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency—predisposes individuals to emphysema. Proteolytic effects of elastase on elastin are unopposed when insufficient α_1-antitrypsin is present.

- Cell adhesion is required for normal tissue structure.
- Cell junctions are composed of adhesion molecules that mediate cell-to-cell and cell-to-ECM adhesion. **Families of cell adhesion** molecules include

- Cadherins—bind to cadherins on other cells to provide long-lasting adhesion between cells in tissues.
- Selectins—bind to carbohydrate-containing ligands on other cells and mediate movement of leukocytes.
- Immunoglobulin superfamily members—fine-tune and regulate cell-to-cell adhesions.
- Integrins—mediate both cell-to-cell and cell-to-ECM adhesions.

- Disruptions in cell adhesion can result in disease.
- Extravasation—the normal process of movement of a leukocyte into a tissue site of infection can also be used by monocytes in fatty streak formation.
- Changes in adhesion molecule expression may be involved in the progression of cancer.
- Deficiency of β_2 integrin subunits results in leukocyte adhesion deficiency and death from infection at an early age.
- Increased adhesion molecule expression may enhance inflammation and play a role in the pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis.
- Adhesion molecules can be exploited by viruses, including rhinovirus, that use an adhesion molecule as their receptor to initiate infections in humans.

Study Questions

2.1 Which of the following is a component of the extracellular matrix that is correctly matched with its function?

A. Collagen forms tough protein fibers that are resistant to shearing forces.
B. Elastin is the principal adhesive glycoprotein in connective tissue.
C. Fibronectin forms a hydrated gel to allow the ECM to resist compressive forces.
D. Glycosaminoglycans allow skin and lungs to stretch without tearing.
E. Laminin imparts resilience to tissues such as cartilage.

2.1: Correct answer = A. Collagen forms tough fibers that impart strength and resistance to shearing forces in tissues that contain it. Elastin is a fibrous protein that imparts rubbery properties to tissues. Fibronectin is a multifunctional adhesive protein. Glycosaminoglycans form hydrated gels and impart resilience to tissues. Laminin, similar in structure to fibronectin, is an adhesive protein.

2.2 A 32-year-old woman with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) experiences joint pain and swelling that is accompanied by impaired compression/deformation abilities of her cartilage. Which of the following best describes the impaired extracellular matrix component and the impact it has on cartilage in this patient with SLE?

A. Collagen of SLE cartilage lacks hydroxylysine and is less stable.
B. Elastin of SLE cartilage is unable to stretch so cartilage cannot expand.
C. Excess collagen in SLE cartilage causes joint stiffening.
D. Laminin-mediated adhesion is interrupted, making SLE cartilage more diffuse.
E. Reduced proteoglycan leads to impaired resilience of SLE cartilage.

2.2: Correct answer = E. Reduced levels of proteoglycans in cartilage would impair the resilience of cartilage. Neither collagen, elastin, nor laminin contributes largely to the property known as resilience of cartilage, which results from the hydrate gels formed by the proteoglycans.

2.3 Which of the following properties is unique to cell adhesion mediated by selectins?

A. Selectins are transmembrane proteins; other adhesion molecules are intracellular.
B. Selectins mediate cell-to-matrix adhesion, not cell-to-cell adhesions.
C. Selectins have homophilic binding, with other selectins serving as their ligands.
D. Selectins mediate bidirectional signaling between the cytoskeleton and the ECM.
E. Selectins on one cell bind to the glycosylated ligands on another cell.

2.3: Correct answer = E. The unique characteristic of selectins is that they bind to carbohydrate-containing ligands. All adhesion molecules are transmembrane proteins that can mediate cell-to-cell adhesions. Integrins facilitate cell-to-cell and cell-to-ECM adhesions and have inside-out and outside-in signaling. Cadherins have hemophilic binding and use other cadherins as ligands.

2.4 Fibronectin is the ligand of a particular adhesion molecule. Therefore, that adhesion molecule most likely belongs to which family?

A. Cadherins
B. Collagens
C. Immunoglobulin superfamily
D. Integrins
E. Selectins

2.4: Correct answer = D. Fibronectin is a component of the ECM and integrins are the type of adhesion molecule that can mediate cell-to-ECM adhesions. Cadherins, immunoglobulin superfamily members, and selectins mediate cell-to-cell adhesion only. Collagen is not an adhesion molecule but a fibrous protein within the ECM.

2.5 Therapies that block binding to which of the following types of adhesion molecules may have potential benefit in preventing rhinovirus infection?

A. ICAM-1
B. ICAM-2
C. L-Selectin
D. P-Cadherin
E. VLA-4

2.5: Correct answer = A. Rhinovirus uses ICAM-1 adhesion molecules on endothelial cells of the host's respiratory tract. None of the other adhesion molecules listed are used by rhinovirus in this manner.

Biological Membranes

3

I. OVERVIEW

Membranes are the outer boundary of individual cells and of certain organelles. **Plasma membranes** are the selectively permeable outermost structures of cells that separate the interior of the cell from the environment. Certain molecules are permitted to enter and exit the cell through transport across the plasma membrane.

Cell membranes contain lipids and proteins that form their structure and also facilitate cellular function. For example, cell adhesion and cell signaling are cellular processes initiated by the plasma membrane. Plasma membranes also serve as attachment points for intracellular cytoskeletal proteins and for components of the extracellular matrix outside of cells.

The basic structure of cell membranes is a **phospholipid bilayer** (Figure 3.1). Two antiparallel sheets of phospholipids form the membrane that surrounds the contents of the cell. The layer closest to the cytosol is the **inner leaflet** while the layer closest to the exterior environment is the **outer leaflet**. Cholesterol fits between phospholipid molecules. Proteins also associate with the membrane to enable the biological functions according to the need of the particular cell. All these membrane components are important in creating the membrane and establishing a stable yet dynamic barrier to maintain the internal environment of the cell while facilitating the biological function of the cell.

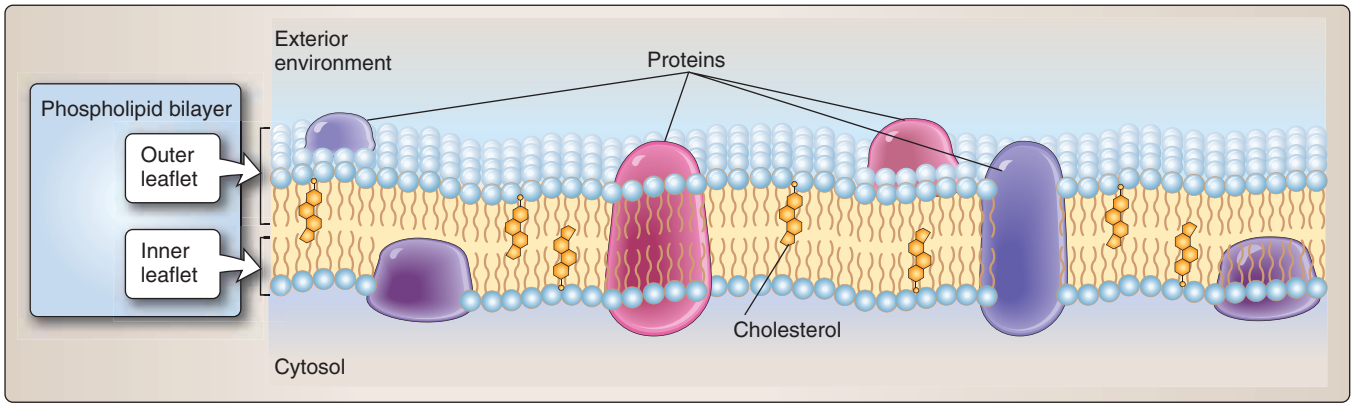


Figure 3.1
Plasma membrane structure.

II. COMPONENTS

All cell membranes, including plasma membranes, organelle membranes, and intracellular vesicles (membrane enclosed structures), are composed of the same materials. The major components of all cellular membranes are lipids and proteins. Several forms of lipids exist to provide structure, support, and function for the membrane. Membrane proteins also play both structural and functional roles.

A. Lipids

In most cell membranes, lipids are the most abundant type of macromolecule present. Plasma and organelle membranes contain between 40% and 80% lipid. These lipids provide both the basic structure and the framework of the membrane and also regulate its function. Three types of lipids are found in cell membranes: phospholipids, cholesterol, and glycolipids.

1. **Phospholipids:** The most abundant of the membrane lipids are the phospholipids. They are polar, ionic compounds that are **amphipathic** in nature. That is, they have both hydrophilic and hydrophobic components. The hydrophilic or polar portion is in the "head group" (Figure 3.2). Within the head group is the phosphate and an alcohol that is attached to it. The alcohol can be serine, ethanolamine, inositol, or choline. Names of phospholipids then include **phosphatidylserine, phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylinositol**, and **phosphatidylcholine.** While all these phospholipids contain a molecule called glycerol, the membrane phospholipid **sphingomyelin** has the alcohol choline in its head group and contains sphingosine instead of glycerol (Figure 3.3).

   The hydrophobic portion of the phospholipid is a long, hydrocarbon (structure of carbons and hydrogens) fatty acid tail. While the polar head groups of the outer leaflet extend outward toward the environment, the fatty acid tails extend inward. Fatty acids may be saturated, containing the maximum number of hydrogen atoms bound to carbon atoms, or unsaturated with one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds. (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 17). The length of the fatty acid chains and their degree of saturation impact the membrane structure. The fatty acid chains normally undergo motions such as flexion (bending or flexing), rotation, and lateral movement (Figure 3.4). Whenever a carbon-to-carbon double bond exists, there is a kink in the chain, reducing some types of motions and preventing the fatty acids from packing tightly together. Phospholipids in plasma membranes of healthy cells do not migrate or flip-flop from one leaflet to the other. (However, during the process of programmed cell death, enzymes catalyze the movement of phosphatidylserine from the inner leaflet to the outer leaflet [see also Chapter 23].)

2. **Cholesterol:** Another major component of cell membranes is cholesterol. An amphipathic molecule, cholesterol contains a polar hydroxyl group as well as a hydrophobic steroid ring and attached hydrocarbon (Figure 3.5). Cholesterol is dispersed throughout

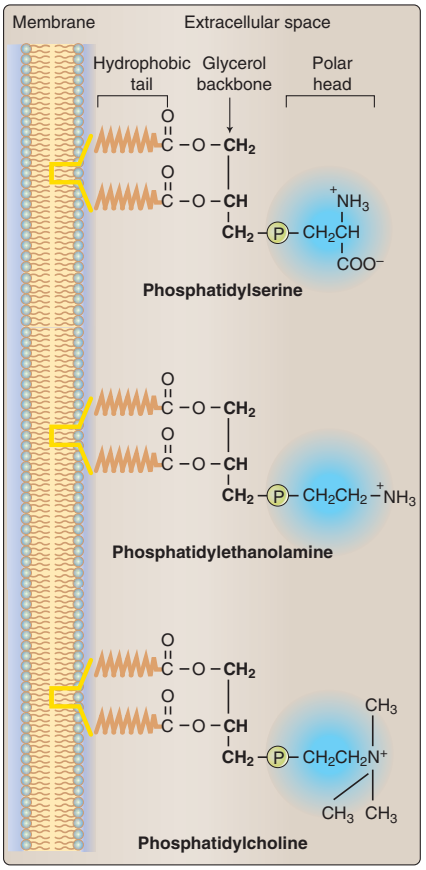


Figure 3.2
Structures of some phospholipids.

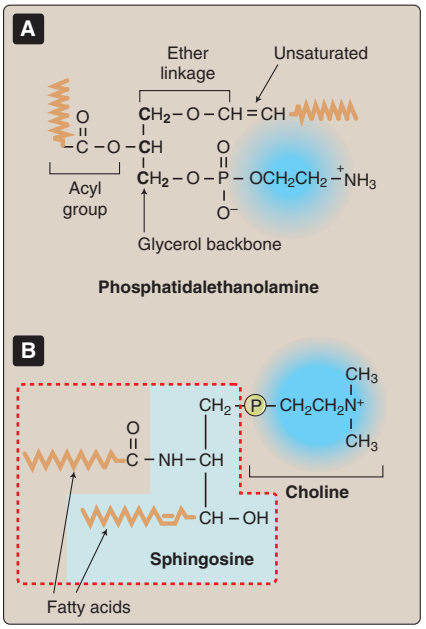


Figure 3.3
Glycerol (A) and sphingosine (B) backbones in phospholipids.

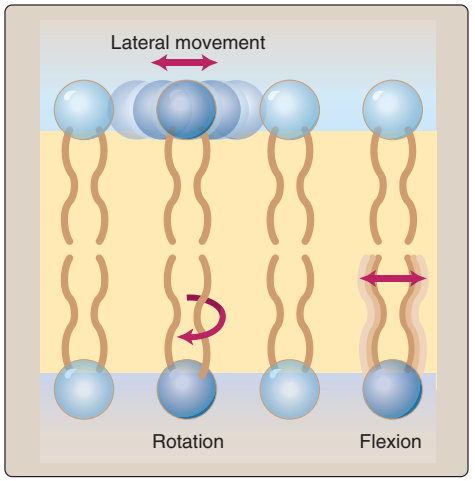


Figure 3.4
Types of motions of membrane phospholipids.

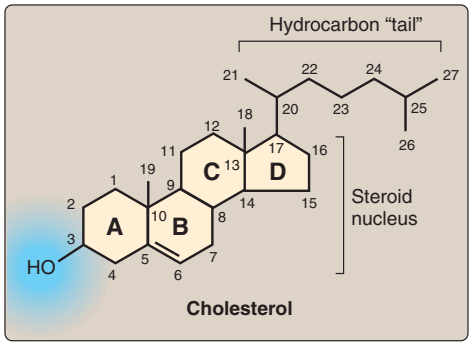


Figure 3.5
Structure of cholesterol.

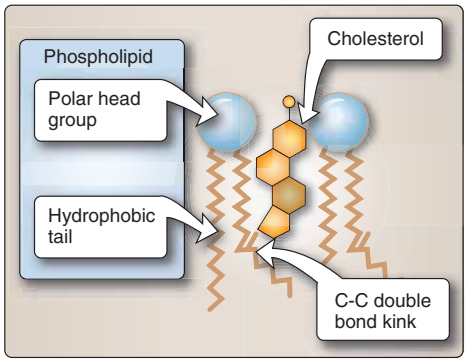


Figure 3.6
Cholesterol and phospholipids in membranes.

cell membranes, intercalating between phospholipids. Its polar hydroxyl group is near the polar head groups of the phospholipids while the steroid ring and hydrocarbon tails of cholesterol are oriented parallel to those of the phospholipids (Figure 3.6). Cholesterol fits into the spaces created by the kinks of the unsaturated fatty acid tails, decreasing the ability of the fatty acids to undergo motion and therefore causing stiffening and strengthening of the membrane.

3. **Glycolipids:** Lipids with attached carbohydrate (sugars), glycolipids are found in cell membranes in lower concentration than phospholipids and cholesterol. The carbohydrate portion is always oriented toward the outside of the cell, projecting into the environment. Glycolipids help to form the carbohydrate coat observed on cells and are involved in cell-to-cell interactions. They are a source of blood group antigens and also can act as receptors for toxins including those from cholera and tetanus.

B. Proteins

While lipids form the main structure of the membrane, proteins are largely responsible for many biological functions of the membrane. For example, some membrane proteins function in transport of materials into and out of cells (see Unit III). Others serve as receptors for hormones or growth factors (see Unit IV). The types of proteins within a plasma membrane vary depending on the cell type. However, all membrane proteins are associated with membrane in one of three main ways.

1. **Membrane associations of proteins:** While some proteins span the membrane with structures that cross from one side to the other, others are anchored to membrane lipids and still others are only peripherally associated with the cytosolic side of a plasma membrane (Figure 3.7).

   a. **Transmembrane proteins:** The first category of membrane proteins is transmembrane proteins that are embedded within the lipid bilayer of the membrane with structures that extend from the environment into the cytosol. Some transmembrane proteins contain one transmembrane region while others contain several. Some hormone receptors are proteins with seven distinct membrane-spanning regions (7-pass or 7-loop transmembrane receptors). All transmembrane proteins contain both hydrophilic and hydrophobic components. These proteins are oriented with their hydrophilic portions in contact with the aqueous exterior environment and with the cytosol and their hydrophobic portions in contact with the fatty acid tails of the phospholipids. It is usually the case that proteins cross cellular membranes by adopting a structure containing one or more **α helices** (see *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 2 for a discussion of protein structure).

   b. **Lipid-anchored proteins:** Members of the second category of membrane proteins are **lipid-anchored proteins** that are attached covalently to a portion of a lipid without entering the core portion of the bilayer of the membrane.

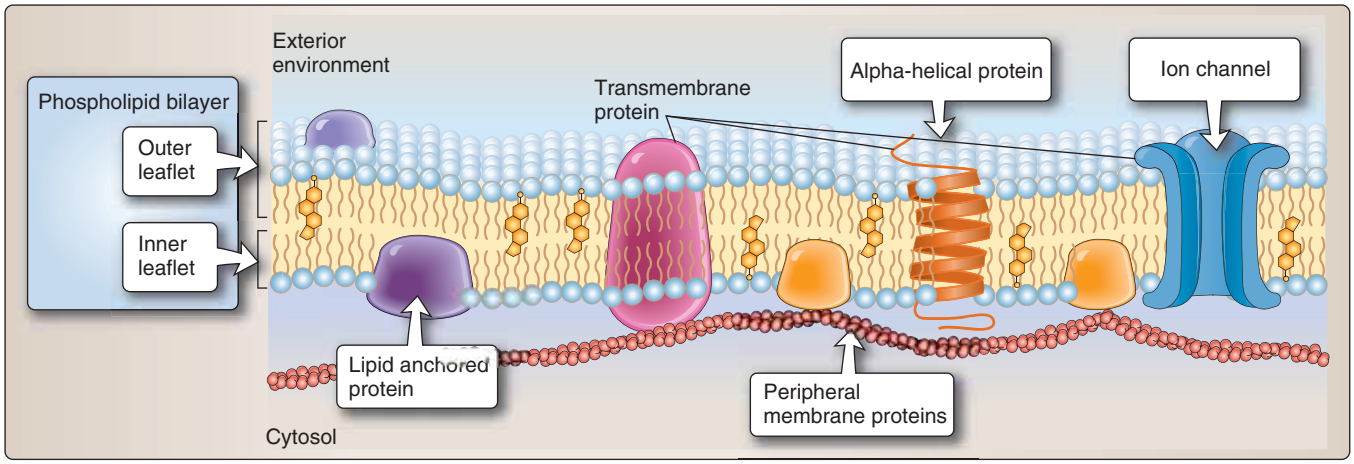


Figure 3.7
Protein associations with membranes.

Both transmembrane and lipid-anchored proteins are **integral membrane proteins** since they can only be removed from a membrane by disrupting the entire membrane structure.

c. **Peripheral membrane proteins:** Proteins in the third category are **peripheral membrane proteins.** These proteins are located on the cytosolic side of the membrane and are only indirectly attached to the lipid of the membrane; they bind to other proteins that are attached to the lipids. Cytoskeletal proteins, such as those involved in the spectrin membrane skeleton of erythrocytes, are examples of peripheral membrane proteins (see Chapter 4).

2. **Membrane protein functions:** Membrane proteins enable cells to function as members of a tissue (Figure 3.8). For example, **cell adhesion molecules** are proteins that extend to the surface of cells and enable cell-to-cell contact (see Chapter 2). Other membrane proteins function as **ion channels** and **transport proteins** to enable molecules to enter and exit a cell (see Unit III). Membrane proteins that are **ligand receptors** enable cells to respond to hormones and other signaling molecules (see Unit IV). The preceding examples of membrane proteins are of integral, transmembrane proteins whose structures span the bilayer. Lipid-anchored membrane proteins include the **G proteins**, which are named for their ability to bind to guanosine triphosphate (GTP) and participate in cell signaling in response to certain hormones (see Chapter 17). Peripheral membrane proteins include **cytoskeletal proteins** that attach to the membrane and regulate its shape and stabilize its structure (see Chapter 4). Some other peripheral membrane proteins are also involved in cell signaling and include enzymes attached to the inner membrane leaflet that are activated after a hormone binds to a protein receptor (see Chapter 17).

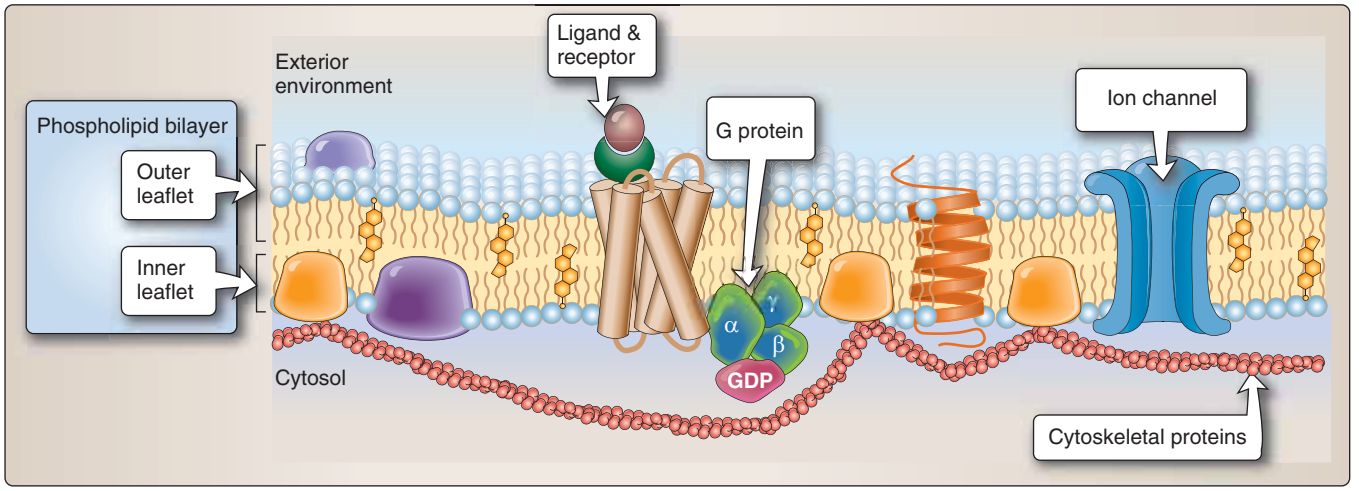


Figure 3.8
Functions of membrane proteins.

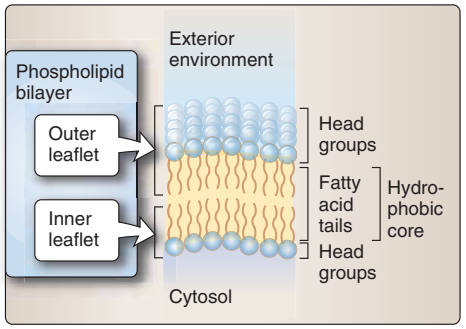


Figure 3.9
Arrangements of membrane phospholipids in a bilayer.

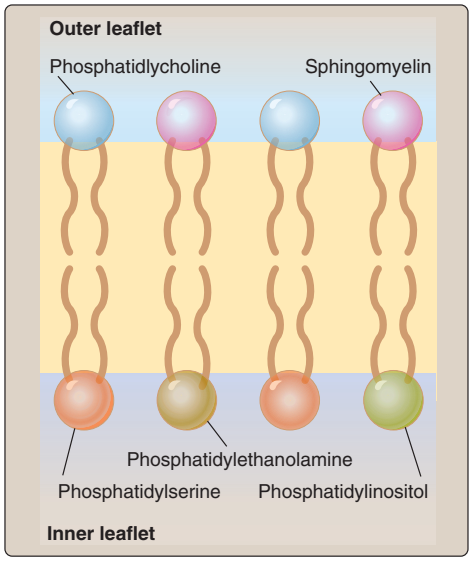


Figure 3.10
Asymmetry of membranes.

III. STRUCTURE

The proteins and lipids of a cellular membrane are arranged in a certain way to form a stable outer structure of the cell. The membrane components, including lipids and proteins, are not fixed rigidly into a particular location. Both can exhibit several types of motions as described previously for phospholipids (see Figure 3.4). Membrane proteins can also move laterally and can rotate. Owing to the composition and dynamic nature of membrane components, the membrane is largely fluid in nature, as opposed to solid or rigid. Despite its fluidity, the membrane structure is very stable and supportive for the cell. The arrangement of the phospholipids provides the basic structure which is then augmented by cholesterol, with functional roles played by proteins.

A. Bilayer arrangement

Membrane phospholipids are oriented with their hydrophobic fatty acid tails facing away from the polar, aqueous fluids of both the cytosol and the environment (such as blood or other cellular fluids including lymph). The hydrophilic portions of the phospholipids are oriented toward the polar environment. Two layers of phospholipids are required to achieve this structure (Figure 3.9). The phospholipids of each layer are found in opposite orientation to each other. While the polar head groups of one layer (outer leaflet) of phospholipids face the exterior, those of the other layer (inner leaflet) face the interior. A nonpolar or hydrophobic central region results where the fatty acid tails of the two layers are in contact with each other.

B. Asymmetry

The fatty acid tails of all the phospholipids are structurally very similar to each other, and the identity of an individual phospholipid molecule is determined by the alcohol within its head group, as mentioned previously (Section II.A.1 above). Some phospholipids are found on the outer leaflet while others are more commonly seen on the inner leaflet. In plasma membranes of most human cells, phosphatidylcholine

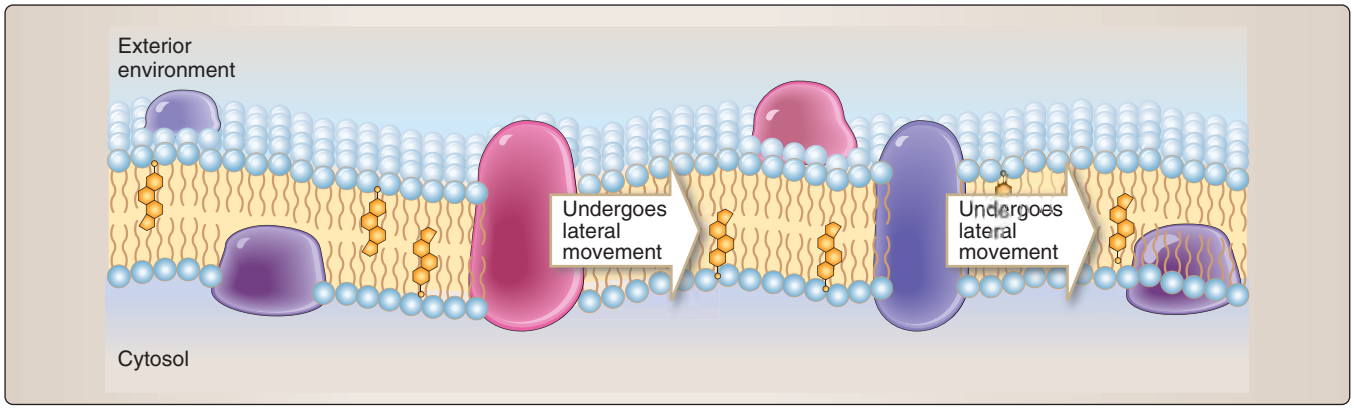


Figure 3.11
Fluid mosaic model.

and sphingomyelin are in the outer leaflet oriented toward the environment, while phosphatidylserine, phosphatidylethanolamine, and phosphatidylinositol are in the inner leaflet oriented toward the cytosol (Figure 3.10). As also mentioned previously (Section II.A.1 above), during the process of programmed cell death, phosphatidylserine is transferred enzymatically from the inner leaflet to the outer leaflet of the membrane. The presence of phosphatidylserine on the outer leaflet then triggers phagocytic removal of the dying cells, emphasizing further that the maintenance of membrane asymmetry is important for normal cell function.

In addition to an asymmetric distribution of phospholipids between the membrane leaflets, glycolipids are differentially arranged as well and are always on the outer leaflet with their attached carbohydrate projecting away from the cell. Glycoproteins (proteins with attached carbohydrates) are similarly oriented on the outer leaflet with carbohydrates projecting into the environment. Peripheral membrane proteins are attached only to the inner membrane leaflet, facing the cytoplasm. Therefore, the inner and outer membrane leaflets have different compositions and each is able to have functions distinct from those of the other. Cholesterol however can readily flip-flop or move from one leaflet to the other and is distributed on both sides of the membrane bilayer.

C. Fluid mosaic model

For several decades, the membrane model proposed by Singer and Nicholson in 1972 has been used to describe plasma membranes. The membrane is described as a fluid, owing to the ability of lipids to diffuse laterally within the plane of the membrane. The overall structure is likened to a flowing sea. And, like a mosaic, membrane proteins are dispersed throughout the membrane. Many of the membrane proteins retain the ability to undergo lateral motion and are likened to icebergs floating within the sea of lipids (Figure 3.11).

D. Lipid rafts

Specialized cholesterol-enriched microdomains within cell membranes are known as **lipid rafts** (Figure 3.12). Fatty acid chains of

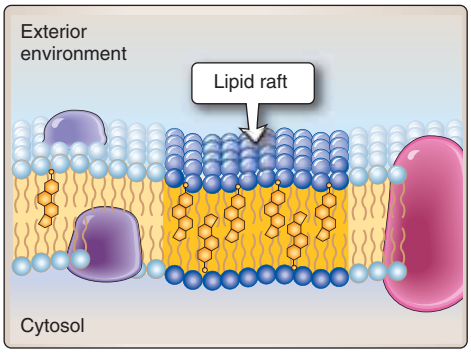


Figure 3.12
Lipid raft.

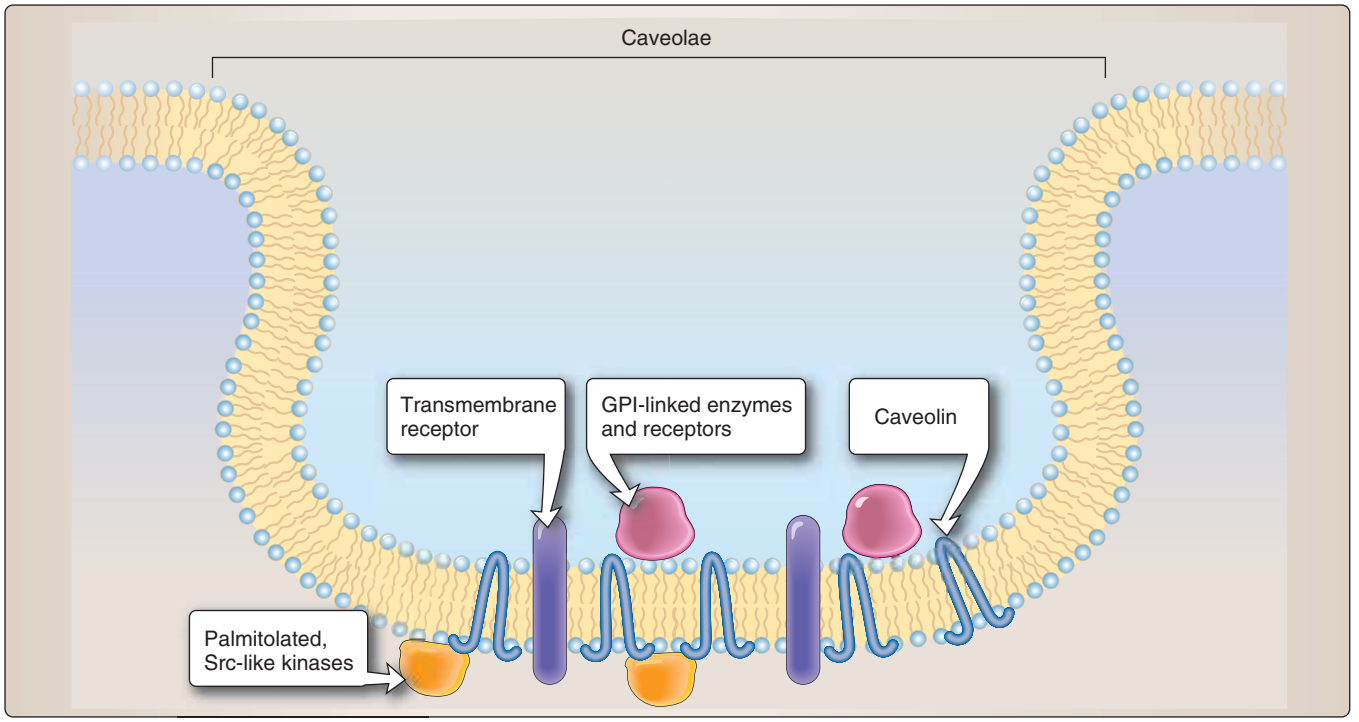


Figure 3.13
Caveolae.

phospholipids within the rafts are extended and more tightly packed. The lipid rafts are described as floating within the fluid created by the poorly ordered lipids of the surrounding portions of the membrane. Phospholipids with straight acyl chains, including glycosphingolipids, are found in lipid rafts. Functions of lipid rafts include cholesterol transport, endocytosis, and signal transduction. Three types of lipid rafts have been described including glycosphingolipid-enriched membranes (GEM), polyphosphoinositol-rich rafts, and **caveolae**. The caveolae are flask-shaped invaginations of cell membranes containing the protein **caveolin**, whose presence causes a local change in morphology of the membrane (Figure 3.13).

Chapter Summary

- Plasma membranes are selectively permeable outermost structures of eukaryotic cells.
- All biological membranes have the same basic structure.
- Lipids are generally the most abundant type of macromolecule within cell membranes.
- Phospholipids and cholesterol are amphipathic lipids that form the basic structure of cell membranes.
- Proteins associated with membranes may be transmembrane, lipid anchored, or peripheral to the membrane.

- Membrane proteins function as ion channels, transport proteins, ligand receptors, and components of the cytoskeleton.
- The basic membrane structure is that of a phospholipid bilayer.
- An asymmetric distribution of phospholipids results in each side or leaflet of the membrane having distinctive characteristics.
- Lipids and proteins in the membrane are not static but retain the ability to undergo motion within the membrane.
- The fluid mosaic model describes the fluid phospholipid "sea" in which proteins appear to be distributed in a mosaic pattern and to float within the sea of the lipids.
- Membrane microdomains known as lipid rafts are membrane regions enriched in specialized lipids that function in cholesterol transport, endocytosis, and signal transduction.

Study Questions

3.1 Sphingomyelin is a molecule identified in a plasma membrane. Which of the following describes its location in that membrane?

A. The outer membrane leaflet
B. In a transmembrane arrangement
C. Intercalated between phospholipids
D. Anchored to lipids facing the cytosol
E. Extending into the environment

3.1: Correct answer = A. Sphingomyelin is a phospholipid found on the outer membrane lipid. Since phospholipids form the bilayer structure, it cannot be in a transmembrane arrangement or intercalated between phospholipids. Sphingomyelin is a phospholipid so it is not anchored to lipids and does not extend into the environment.

3.2 A particular molecule of phosphatidylcholine is being studied within a plasma membrane of a living cell. Which of the following characteristics is this molecule likely to possess?

A. A stable, fixed arrangement of its structural components
B. Continuous flip-flop from one leaflet to the other
C. Fatty acid tails that undergo flexion
D. Binding sites to cytoskeletal components
E. Equal distribution on both sides of the bilayer

3.2: Correct answer = C. Phosphatidylcholine is a phospholipid and fatty acid tails of phospholipids within plasma membranes undergo flexion along with rotation around the phospholipid head and have the ability to move laterally within the plane of the membrane. Membrane phospholipids are not fixed in place but undergo the motions described. However, they do not flip-flop from one membrane leaflet to the other. Phosphatidylcholine is found only on the outer leaflet, not on both sides of the bilayer. It is oriented toward the environment, and not on the inner leaflet toward the cytosol where cytoskeletal components are located.

3.3 A ligand receptor is identified in a plasma membrane of a living cell. The arrangement of that ligand receptor within the membrane is best described as a/an

A. Peripheral protein
B. Lipid-anchored protein
C. Integral membrane protein
D. Lipid raft
E. Glycolipid

3.3: Correct answer = C. Ligand receptors are proteins that are transmembrane and therefore integral membrane proteins. They are not peripheral membrane proteins or lipid-anchored proteins. Since ligand receptors are proteins, they are not glycolipids and are not lipid rafts.

3.4 A glycoprotein within a plasma membrane has which of the following characteristics?

A. Attaches to cytoskeletal proteins
B. Oriented toward the environment
C. Peripherally attached to the membrane
D. Found on both the membrane leaflets
E. Ability to undergo flexion

3.5 A plasma membrane is observed to have caveolae. These structures are

A. Components of phospholipids
B. Intercalated between cholesterol molecules
C. Composed of disorderly phospholipids
D. Regions with high carbohydrate content
E. Cholesterol-enriched membrane invaginations

3.4: Correct answer = B. The carbohydrate portions of glycoproteins (and glycolipids) are oriented toward the exterior environment. They are found on the outer leaflet and therefore not on both leaflets or in association with cytoskeletal proteins. Peripheral membrane proteins attach to the inner leaflet. Membrane proteins can move laterally and can rotate but do not possess structures like fatty acid tails that can flex in relation to each other.

3.5: Correct answer = E. Caveolae are types of lipid rafts which are orderly cholesterol and lipid-enriched microdomains. Caveolae appear as membrane invaginations, caused by the presence of caveolin. They are not components of phospholipids nor composed of disorderly phospholipids. Caveolae do not intercalate between cholesterol molecules but are regions with high cholesterol, but not carbohydrate content.

4 Cytoskeleton

I. OVERVIEW

The **cytoskeleton** is a complex network of protein filaments that establish a supportive scaffolding system within the cell (Figure 4.1). Cytoskeletal proteins are located throughout the interior of the cell, anchored to the plasma membrane, the outer boundary of the cell, and traversing the **cytoplasm** (the interior contents of the cell bound by the plasma membrane). Organelles reside within the framework established by the cytoskeleton. The cytoskeleton is not simply a passive internal skeleton but is a dynamic regulatory feature of the cell. **Microtubules** are one type of cytoskeletal protein. They organize the cytoplasm and interact with organelles to induce their movement. In addition to microtubules, **actin filaments** and **intermediate filaments** constitute the cytoskeleton. These components of the cytoskeleton work together as an integrated network of support within the cytoplasm.

Each type of cytoskeletal filament is formed from a specific association of protein monomer subunits. Actin filaments and microtubules are

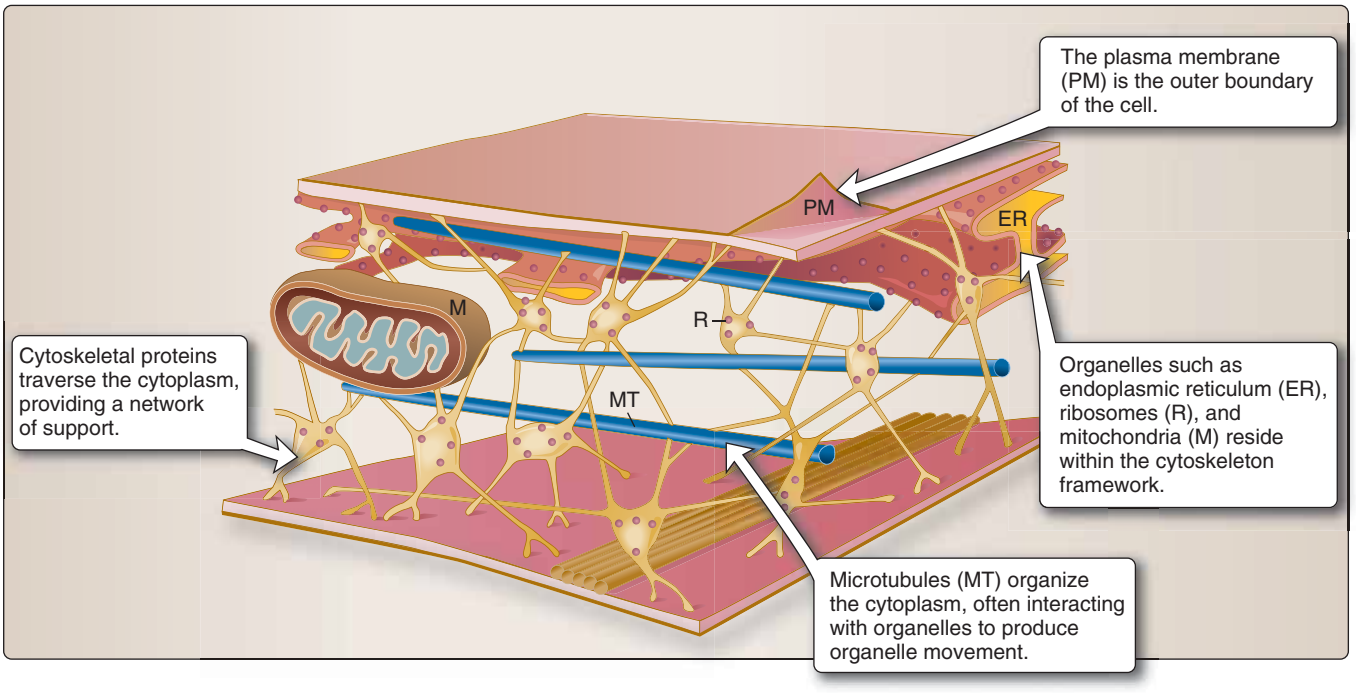


Figure 4.1
The cytoskeleton as intracellular scaffolding.

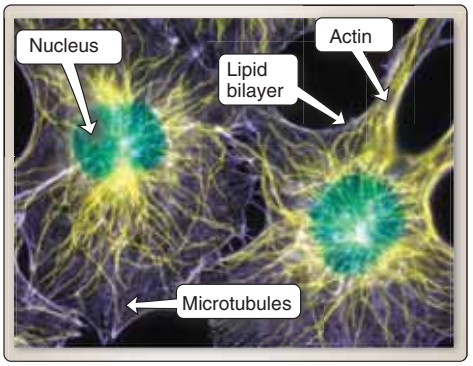


Figure 4.2
Localization of cytoskeletal components.

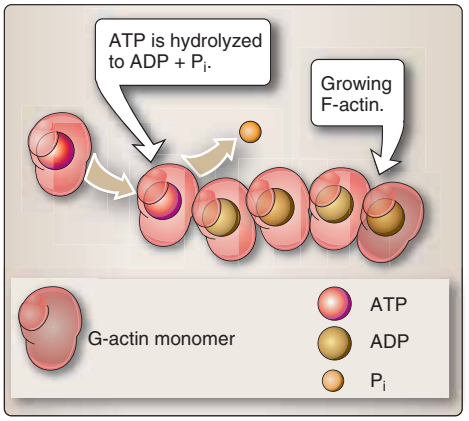


Figure 4.3
ATP hydrolysis in actin polymerization.

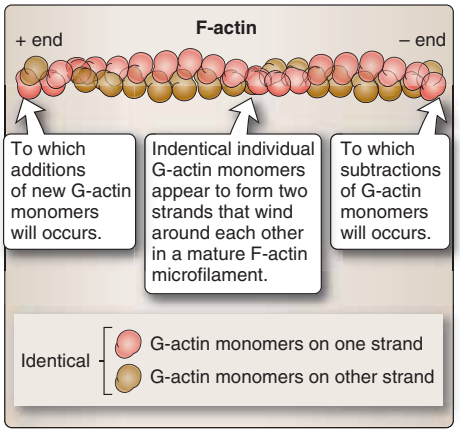


Figure 4.4
Structure of F-actin.

formed from globular protein subunits (more compact), while intermediate filaments contain fibrous protein subunits (more extended). Accessory proteins regulate the filament length, position, and association with organelles and the plasma membrane.

II. ACTIN

First isolated from skeletal muscle, actin was originally believed to be a protein found exclusively in muscle tissues. Some forms of actin (four of the six known forms) are found only in muscle cells, while other forms of actin are found within the cytoplasm of most cell types. Actin is now also believed to be present within the nucleus of most cells. Actin has a diameter of approximately 8 nm and forms structures known as microfilaments. Along with microtubules, actin helps to establish a cytoplasmic protein framework that can be visualized radiating out from the nucleus to the lipid bilayer of the plasma membrane (Figure 4.2). Actin is often localized to regions near the plasma membrane referred to as the **cell cortex**.

Actin is important in inducing contraction in muscle cells. Functions of actin in the cytoplasm of nonmuscle cells include regulation of the physical state of the **cytosol** (the liquid portion of the cytoplasm without organelles), cell movement, and formation of contractile rings in cell division. Changes in the structure of actin from globular subunits to elongated polymerized microfilament structures regulate such functions in the cell. Within the nucleus, actin is important for chromatin and nuclear structure and is believed to be involved in the regulation of gene transcription.

A. Polymerization

Actin microfilaments in the cytoplasm are filamentous or F-actin structures that are polymers formed from individual monomers of G (globular) actin. The polymerization of G-actin subunits into an F-actin molecule is an energy-dependent process.

1. **Overview:** Energy in the form of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) is needed for the addition of each G-actin monomer onto a growing F-actin molecule. Each individual G-actin monomer added to a growing F-actin molecule has an ATP molecule bound to it. After the G-actin monomer has polymerized onto the F-actin polymer, ATP is hydrolyzed to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) with the release of inorganic phosphate (Pi) (Figure 4.3). The ADP remains bound to individual G-actin monomers within F-actin polymers. An F-actin filament is composed of two strands of identical G-actin monomers with a structure reminiscent of two strands of beads wound around each other in a regular pattern (Figure 4.4). The ends of F-actin filaments are nonidentical. The plus (+) end is where the G-actin monomers bound by ATP add to a growing filament and the minus (–) end is where the subtraction of ADP-bound G-actin monomers occurs in a shrinking filament.

2. **Steps:** The F-actin microfilament structure is generated in three phases: (i) lag, (ii) polymerization, and (iii) steady state (Figure 4.5). For the lag phase, three G-actin monomers with bound ATP join together to form a nucleation site onto which the growing F-actin filament is built. During the polymerization phase, new

G-actin monomers are added to the growing chain, adding preferentially to the + end. ATP is hydrolyzed to ADP + Pi. A steady state is reached when addition of G-actin monomers to the + end occurs at the same rate as other G-actin monomers are removed from the – end, and the length of the F-actin polymer is maintained. The G-actin monomers that leave an F-actin polymer rejoin the cytoplasmic pool of unpolymerized G-actins. The process of addition and subtraction of G-actin monomers is described as "**treadmilling**." If one observes a certain G-actin monomer during the polymerization process, it will appear to be moving along the length of the F-actin polymer (Figure 4.6). As additional G-actin monomers add onto the polymer, they seem to push the G-actin. Over time, the G-actin monomer of interest appears to have moved farther and farther along the F-actin polymer before falling off the other end.

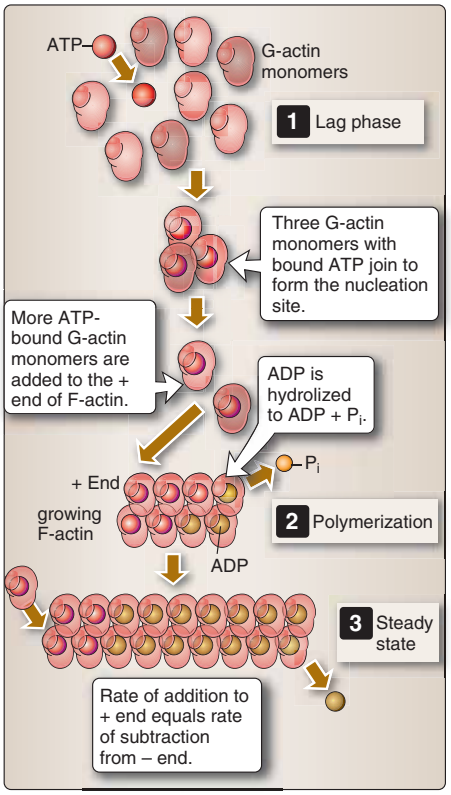


Figure 4.5
Polymerization of actin.

Fungal products and actin

Some products produced by fungi are known to influence actin polymerization. **Phalloidin** is the toxin from the poisonous mushrooms *Amanita phalloides*. These mushrooms are often called "death caps" or "angels of death" owing to the toxic effects on persons who consume them. Early symptoms are gastrointestinal in nature and are followed by a latency period during which the individual feels better. However, between the fourth and eighth day after the consumption of a mushroom of this type, the person will experience liver and kidney failure and death. Early intervention and detoxification are sometimes helpful but liver transplantation may still be needed. Phalloidin functions by disrupting the normal function of actin. It binds to F-actin polymers much more tightly than to G-actin monomers and promotes excessive polymerization while preventing filament depolymerization. It also inhibits the hydrolysis of ATP bound to G-actin monomers that have polymerized onto an F-actin polymer. Phalloidin is known to inhibit cell movement due to its inhibition of actin. Phalloidin can be used in the laboratory as an imaging tool to identify actin (see Figure 4.2). The **cytochalasins** are other fungal products that are useful laboratory tools. Because they are known to block polymerization of actin and cause changes in cell morphology, they can be used to inhibit cell movement and cell division and to induce programmed cell death.

B. Actin-binding proteins

Actin-binding proteins regulate the structure of actin within the cell, controlling the polymerization of G-actin monomers, bundling of microfilaments, and breakdown into smaller fragments as needed by the cell. Some actin-binding proteins interact with individual G-actin monomers and prevent their polymerization onto an F-actin polymer. Others bind to the assembled microfilaments and cause them either to bundle or cross-link with other microfilament chains or to fragment and disassemble. The complexity of actin-based structures within the cytoplasm regulates certain cell characteristics.

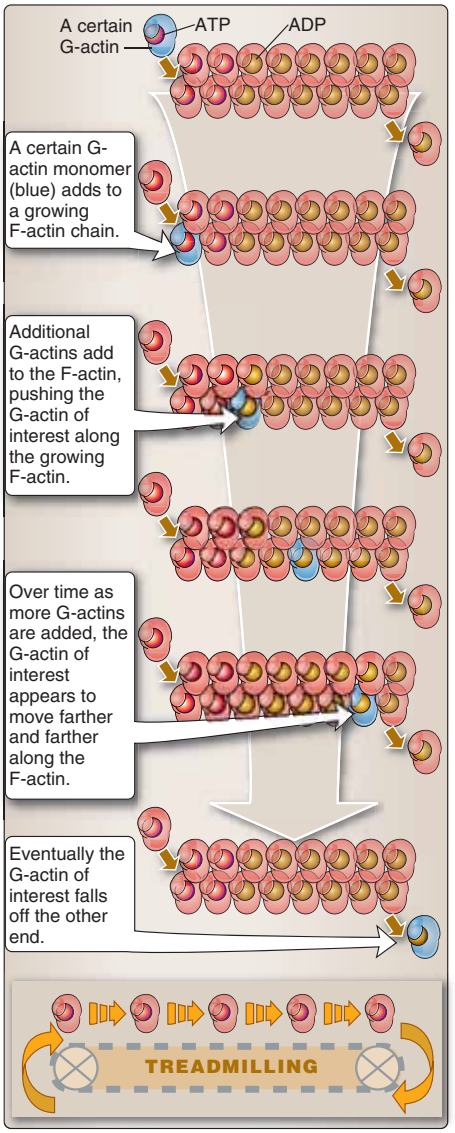


Figure 4.6
Treadmilling of F-actin.

1. **Regulators of the gel/sol of the cytosol:** One characteristic of a cell is the physical nature of its cytosol. It can be described either as **gel**, a more firm state, or **sol**, a more soluble state. The more structured the actin, the firmer (gel) the cytosol. The less structured (more fragmented) the actin, the more soluble (sol) the cytosol. Actin is continuously treadmilling in both the gel and sol states, contributing to the character of the cytoplasm. In addition, actin-binding proteins regulate the structures of actin and therefore the state of the cytosol (Figure 4.7). A pool of G-actin monomers is in equilibrium with F-actin polymers and also with G-actin monomers bound to a sequestering protein that inhibits the ability of G-actin monomers to polymerize. F-actin can be broken into smaller sized fragments by the twisting action of the protein **cofilin** that also prevents further lengthening. F-actin polymers can also be made into more complex structures by the actions of bundling and cross-linking proteins. Those complex structures can be fragmented when needed, by actin-severing proteins such as **gelsolin**, resulting in a more sol state of the cytosol. Calcium is required for the function of actin-binding proteins that fragment actin polymers, and higher levels of calcium are found in the cytosol where the sol state is developing. For example, the cytosol of a phagocytic cell, such as a macrophage, may need to become less structured with more solubilized cortical actin in order to engulf an invading organism. And, a migrating cell such as a fibroblast moving along a substrate must polymerize the actin at the leading end to pull the cell forward. At the same time, it must solubilize its cortical actin to allow for the flow of contents behind the leading end (Figure 4.8).

2. **Spectrin:** Stability along with strength and support is imparted to cells by actin-binding proteins of the spectrin family. Particularly important in erythrocytes (red blood cells), spectrin has a long, flexible rod-like shape and exists in dimers. On the cytosolic side of the plasma membrane, spectrin dimers bind to F-actin filaments in an ATP-dependent manner to strengthen and support the erythrocyte membrane. A lattice-like arrangement of actin and spectrin exists with other proteins including ankyrin and protein 4.1 facilitating their interaction. The spectrin-actin association is important in maintaining the characteristic biconcave shape of erythrocytes that is important for maximizing the hemoglobin and oxygen carried by each red blood cell (Figure 4.9) (see *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 3). Spectrin deficiency results in a condition known as **hereditary spherocytosis** (Figure 4.10) with spherical erythrocytes that are fragile and susceptible to lysis. Erythrocytes of affected individuals lack the central pallor characteristic of normal, biconcave erythrocytes. Instead, their erythrocytes are spherical and are susceptible to lysis, resulting in hemolytic anemia.

3. **Dystrophin:** Alterations in other actin-binding proteins, such as dystrophin, can also result in disease. In skeletal muscle cells, dystrophin and related proteins form the dystrophin-glycoprotein complex that links actin to the basal lamina (see Chapter 2). This association between dystrophin and actin provides tensile strength to muscle fibers and also appears to act as a framework for signaling molecules. Defects in dystrophin result in **muscular dystrophy** (MD), a group of genetic disorders whose major symptom is muscle wasting.

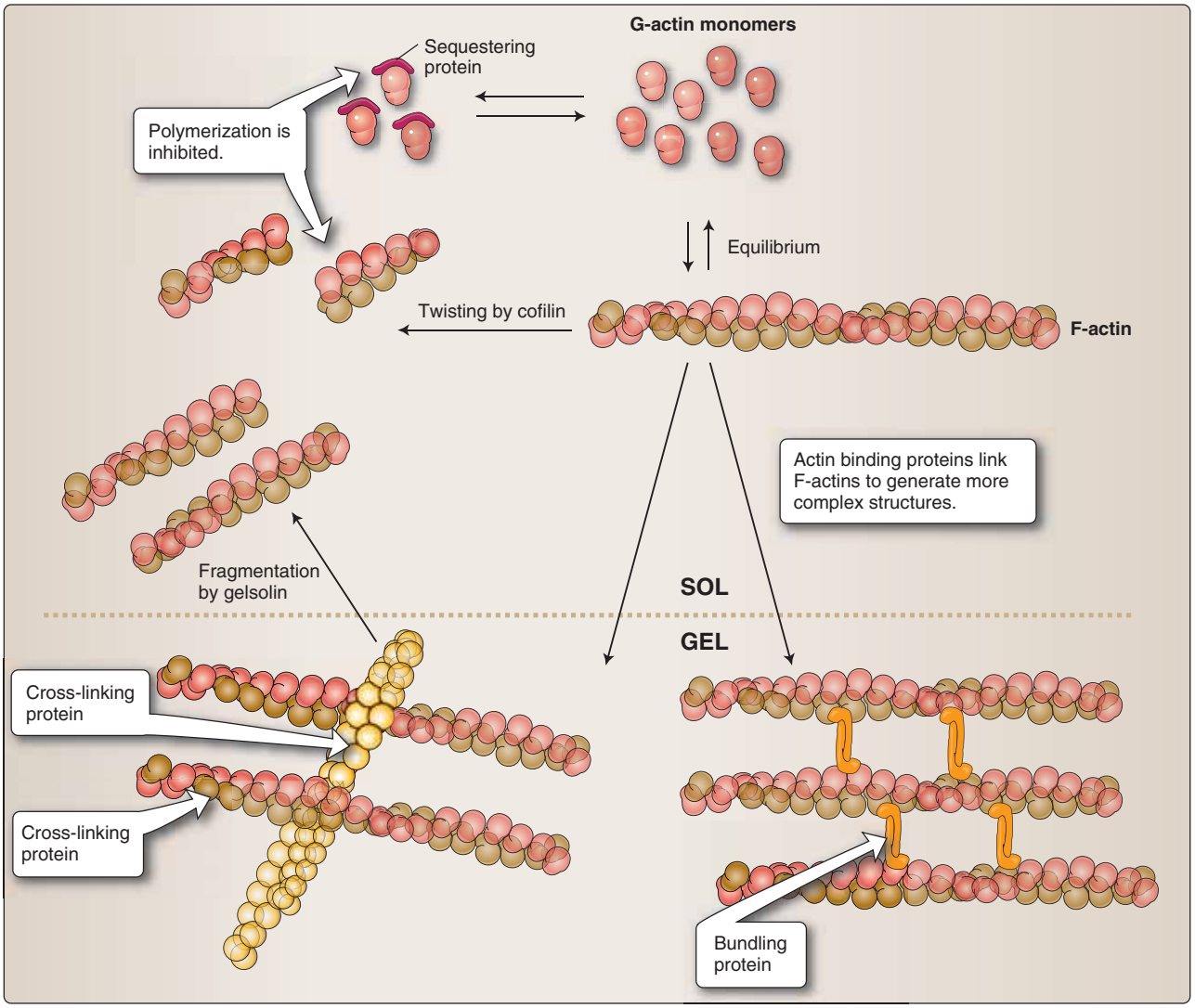


Figure 4.7
Actin and the gel-sol transition.

C. Contractile functions in nonmuscle cells

While actin polymerization helps to propel a cell forward (see Figure 4.8), contraction is needed to pull the plasma membrane of the lagging end away from the substrate to enable forward progress. In fact, contraction or tightening and shortening to produce a pulling force is needed to maintain cell structure and to carry out normal cellular functions. Actin participates in such contractions owing to the effects of an ATP-hydrolyzing motor protein of the **myosin** family.

1. **Myosin:** As is true for actin, myosin was first discovered in muscle but is found in all cell types. Actin-myosin interactions in muscle are well studied (see *LIR Physiology*). It is believed that similar mechanisms function to produce contractions in nonmuscle cells. Myosin molecules have a head domain that interacts with F-actin and a tail containing an ATP-binding site. They hydrolyze ATP when they

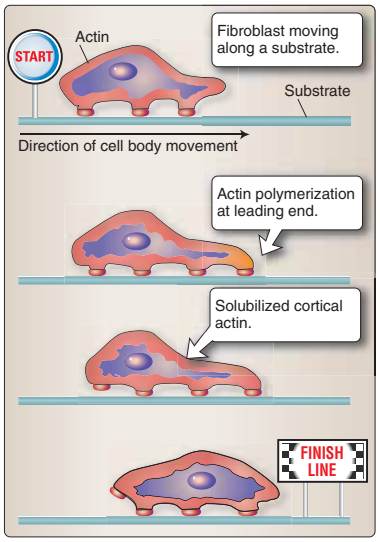


Figure 4.8
Actin polymerization and cell movement.

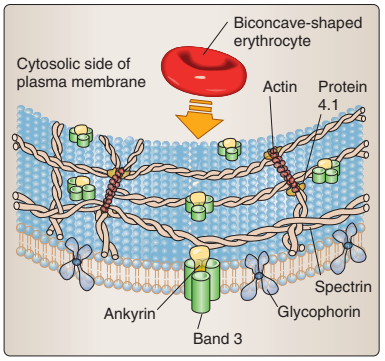


Figure 4.9
The spectrin membrane skeleton in an erythrocyte.

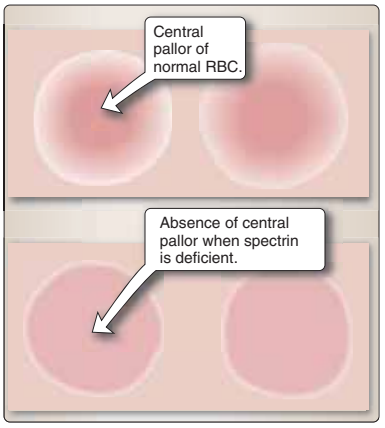


Figure 4.10
Spectrin and erythrocyte shape.

Forms of muscular dystrophy

When the dystrophin protein is absent or is present in a nonfunctional form, degeneration of muscle tissue results. Muscle wasting then follows when the ability to regenerate the muscle is exhausted. **Duchenne MD** (DMD) and **Becker MD** are both caused by mutations in the dystrophin (dys) gene, a large (2.6 Mbp) gene with 97 exons. Additionally, both are inherited as X-linked recessive traits, with male individuals expressing the disease when their only X chromosome carries the mutated ***dys***. These forms of MD differ in age of onset and in severity. Symptoms of DMD are noticeable in early childhood and quickly become debilitating. Becker MD is characterized by slowly progressive muscle weakness in the pelvis and legs. It has a later age of onset than DMD and less severe symptoms. Several large deletions in the ***dys*** gene are found in individuals with Becker MD. These deletions, however, do not result in a frameshift (see Chapter 9). Instead, internal portions of the gene are missing but transcription and translation of the remainder of the gene occur. A partially functional dystrophin protein is therefore synthesized, causing less severe muscle wasting. In contrast, in DMD, several smaller deletions are found in the ***dys*** gene. In DMD, however, there is a frameshift, resulting in early termination of the protein (see Chapter 9). No functional dystrophin is produced and more severe muscle degeneration occurs.

bind to actin. Myosin's interactions with actin are cyclic. Myosin binds to actin, detaches, and then binds again. The myosin tail can also attach to cellular structures and pull them along the actin filament. Several forms of myosin exist. In nonmuscle cells, myosin II is important for many examples of contraction as it slides actin filaments over each other to mediate local contractions (Figure 4.11A). Myosins I and V are involved in moving cellular cargo along the tracks provided by F-actin.

2. **Structural and functional needs for contraction:** Providing stability to cell structure is an important reason for actin-myosin–based contractions to occur. Myosin II interacts with F-actin in the cell cortex to stiffen it and help prevent deformation of the plasma membrane. In addition, actin bundles that encircle the inner portion of epithelial cells form a tension cable, known as a circumferential belt that can regulate cell shape. This type of contraction is important in wound-healing because the gap of the wound can be sealed via contraction of the existing cells. Cell division in all cell types also depends on contraction. Actin-myosin structures are important during cytokinesis, or the cytoplasmic division following nuclear division of mitosis (see Chapter 20). Here, an actin-myosin–based structure, called a **contractile ring**, is formed. The diameter of the contractile ring progressively decreases, deepening the cleavage furrow in order to pinch the cell into two daughter cells. The ATP hydrolysis by myosin attached to actin causes pulling on the actin and pinching and separation of the membrane (Figure 4.11B).

III. INTERMEDIATE FILAMENTS

With a 10-nm diameter, the appropriately named intermediate filaments are larger than actin microfilaments and smaller than microtubules. Most intermediate filaments are located in the cytosol between the nuclear envelope and the plasma membrane. They provide structural stability to the cytoplasm, somewhat reminiscent of the way that steel rods can reinforce concrete. Some other intermediate filaments, the nuclear lamins, provide strength and support to the nucleus. There are six categories of intermediate filaments, grouped by their location. All have structural characteristics in common (Table 4.1).

A. Structure

Intermediate filaments are formed by α-helical rod-like protein subunits that have globular domains at their amino-terminal and carboxy-terminal ends. Two rod-like subunits combine to form dimers, known as **coiled coils** (Figure 4.12). One coiled-coil dimer self associates with another coiled-coil dimer, in a staggered pattern, to form a tetramer. Because the carboxy-terminal end of one coiled coil is in close proximity to the amino-terminal end of the other coiled coil, tetramers have an antiparallel orientation. Tetramers attach to each other in a side-to-side, staggered array of eight tetramers that wind together to form the ropelike structure of the mature intermediate filament. No energy is required for the assembly of intermediate filaments. Subunits of intermediate filaments are always found incorporated into stable structures. They lack polarity and therefore do not have a + or a – end. The amino- and carboxy-terminal regions are specific to each class of intermediate filaments.

B. Types of intermediate filaments

Six categories of intermediate filaments have been defined, based on their similarities in structure and on the location in which they function. Types I and II are the **keratins**, with the first being acidic keratins and the second basic. Acidic and basic keratins bind to each other to form functional keratins found in epithelial cells. Type III contains four members, including **vimentin**, the most widely distributed intermediate filament protein. Type IV is found in neurons and type V is nuclear lamina found in all nucleated cells to provide structural support in the nucleus.

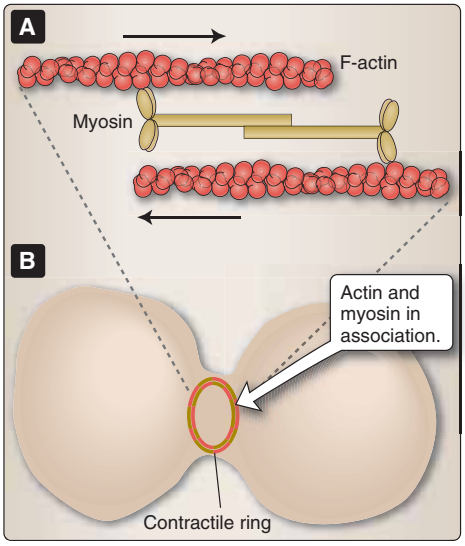


Figure 4.11
Contractile functions of actin in nonmuscle cells. (A) Myosin II slides actin filaments over each other to mediate local contractions (B) A contractile ring pinches a dividing cell into two daughter cells.

Table 4.1
TYPES OF INTERMEDIATE FILAMENTS

Type	Names	Functions
I and II	Acidic (I) and basic (II) keratins	Form complex network from nucleus to plasma membrane in epithelial cells
III	Desmin, vimentin	Support and structure
IV	Neurofilaments, synemin, syncoilin	Protect from mechanical stress and maintain structural integrity in various cell types
V	Nuclear lamina	Structural role in the nucleus of all cells
VI	Nestin	Expressed mainly in the nerve cells and is implicated in their growth

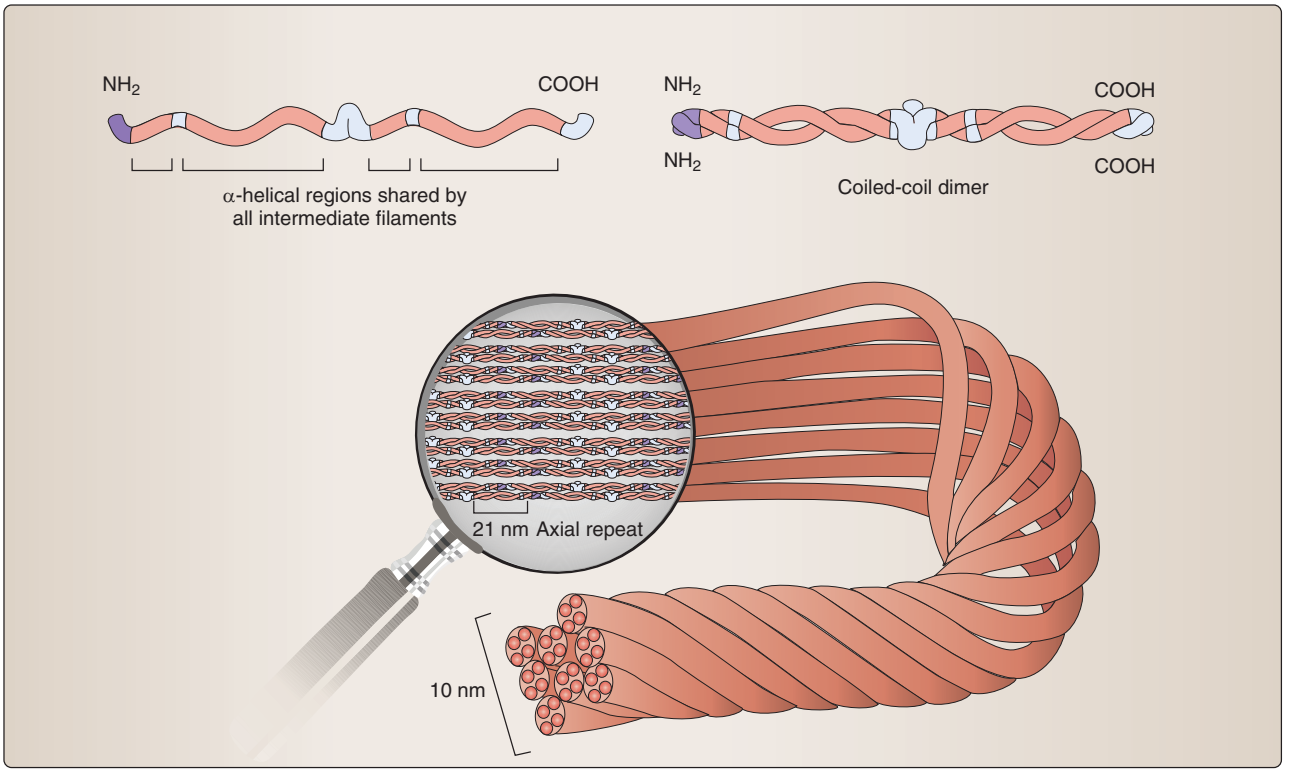


Figure 4.12
Structure of intermediate filaments.

IV. MICROTUBULES

Microtubules are the last type of predominant structure observed in the cytoskeleton. They are involved in chromosomal movements during nuclear divisions (mitosis and meiosis), in formation of cilia and flagella in certain cell types, and in intracellular transport. Similarities are seen between actin and microtubules with regard to an energy requirement for their assembly and their ability to undergo structural changes according to the needs of the cell.

To coordinate and regulate microtubules based on cellular requirements, cells contain a structure called a **centrosome**. Present on one side of the nucleus when the cell is not in mitosis, centrosomes organize microtubules by regulating their number, location, and cytoplasmic orientation. Microtubules are seen to radiate outward from the centrosome with some growing in length while others are shrinking or disappearing all together. Although microtubules function independently from other microtubules, each one has the same basic structure.

A. Structure

The structure of a microtubule resembles a hollow cylindrical tube. Its basic structural component is a protein heterodimer, composed of an α and a β **tubulin** molecule. Linear chains of αβ tubulin heterodimers self assemble into structures called **protofilaments**. A ring of 13 tubulin molecules, which is 24 nm in diameter and embedded in the centrosome, forms the nucleation site onto which the microtubule is

built. The β tubulin end of the αβ tubulin heterodimer appears to be oriented away from the centrosome. Thirteen protofilaments then form the outer wall of the cylindrical microtubule structure, which will vary greatly in length depending on the polymerization status and the function of the microtubule (Figure 4.13).

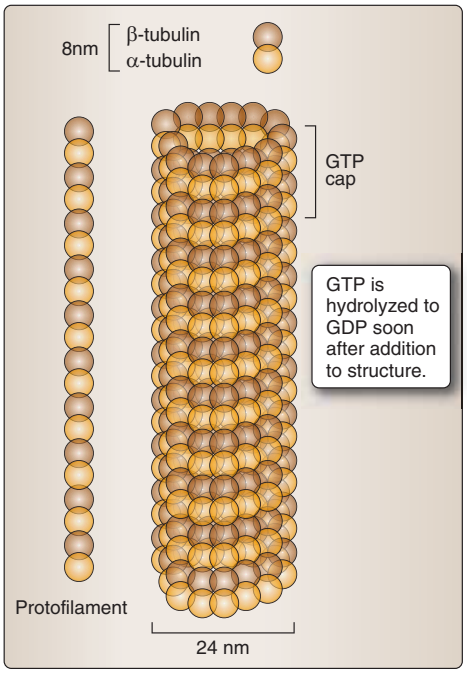


Figure 4.13
Structure of microtubules.

B. Assembly

The polymerization or assembly of individual microtubules is a complex process because microtubules continuously switch back and forth between growing and shrinking phases. Because of their ever-changing growth status, microtubules are described as having "**dynamic instability**." In the assembly process, tubulin heterodimers bound to guanosine triphosphate (**GTP**) are able to interact with other GTP-bound tubulin heterodimers to form protofilaments. Soon after their polymerization onto a growing microtubule, the GTP on the tubulin is hydrolyzed to guanosine diphosphate (GDP), in a manner similar to the ATP-to-ADP hydrolysis seen in actin protofilaments. A **GTP cap** is described on the + or leading end (opposite end of the one anchored in the centrosome) of the microtubule, representing the newly added tubulin heterodimers on which the GTP has not been hydrolyzed to GDP. The microtubule continues to extend its length, in search of cellular structures, such as organelles or chromosomes, to which it can bind. Growth of the microtubule continues until it either binds to such a structure or until it loses a critical mass of GTP-bound tubulins from the leading end.

C. Disassembly

When addition of GTP-bound tubulins to the protofilaments slows down, hydrolysis of GTP to GDP catches up and the GTP cap is lost. New tubulin heterodimers cannot bind to GDP-containing tubulin heterodimers. In addition to stopping microtubule growth, lack of a GTP cap destabilizes the structure. Individual protofilaments peel back and curve away from the center of the cylindrical tube (Figure 4.14). Tubulin heterodimers containing GDP dissociate from the protofilament and the microtubule is disassembled very rapidly. It may disappear completely or it may start growing again if GTP replaces GDP bound to tubulin heterodimers. New microtubules quickly form to replace those that have been disassembled.

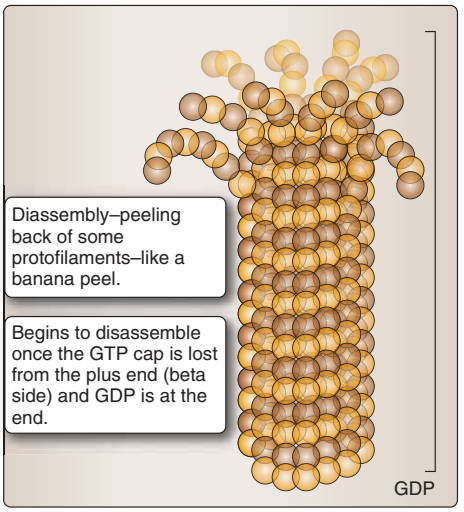


Figure 4.14
Microtubule disassembly.

D. Functions

While new microtubules that are generated radiate out from their centrosome, other microtubules are disassembling. However, if a growing microtubule can bind stably to a cellular structure, depolymerization is prevented. Proteins can bind to and stabilize microtubules to inhibit their disassembly. Stabilized microtubules can then assist in organizing the cytosol and facilitating chromosomal movements, cellular movements, and transport along the microtubular network.

1. **Chromosomal movements:** Microtubules pull and push chromosomes in dividing cells to enable the segregation of genetic material into newly formed cells (see Chapter 20). In mitosis, where one parent cell is duplicated to generate two identical daughter cells, the nuclear envelope surrounding the nucleus must break down. Cytoplasmic microtubules disassemble. Then, microtubules reassemble into an

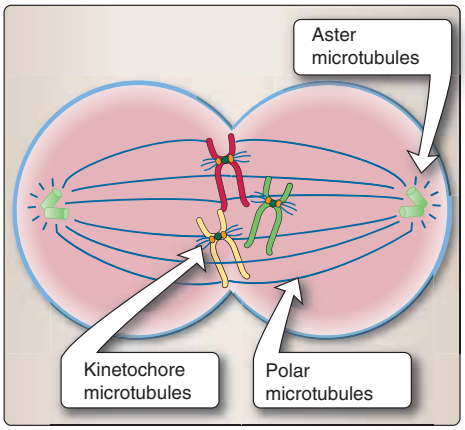


Figure 4.15
Mitotic spindle.

organized structure called the **mitotic spindle** (Figure 4.15). This structure is stable but dynamic, as there is a continual exchange between unpolymerized tubulin heterodimers and tubulin molecules polymerized onto microtubules. Because the barrier of the nuclear envelope is gone, the microtubules can gain access to the chromosomes. Microtubules are stabilized by this binding and their assembly and disassembly cease in order for them to carry out this function. They align the chromosomes (at metaphase), pull them apart (at anaphase), and move them toward opposite poles of the cell (in telophase). Microtubules within a mitotic spindle have specified roles. Polar microtubules push the spindle apart while kinetochore microtubules attach to the kinetochore structures of the duplicated chromosomes (see Chapter 20). Astral microtubules that radiate out from the centrosomes are believed to position the spindle.

Mitotic spindle poisons

Certain compounds can inhibit or halt cell division by interfering with microtubules. **Colchicine**, for example, binds to the unpolymerized tubulin molecules and prevents their polymerization onto a growing microtubule. If colchicine is given to cells undergoing division, their mitotic spindle breaks down. Abnormally dividing cells are unable to survive. Thus, compounds related to colchicines, such as vinca alkaloids vinblastine and vincristine, are often used to treat uncontrolled cell growth in cancer (see Chapter 23). Another anticancer drug, **Taxol**, also binds to tubulin. However, it preferentially binds to tubulin within assembled microtubules and prevents disassembly. The inability of microtubules to undergo structural changes within the mitotic spindle leads to an arrest of the dividing cells in mitosis.

2. **Formation of cilia and flagella:** Some microtubules form stable structures of cilia and flagella, according to the specific needs of the cell. **Cilia** (singular "cilium") are important in movement of fluids, such as mucus, across epithelial cells of the respiratory tract. They move in a cyclic manner, taking strokes through the fluid. **Flagella** (singular "flagellum") are generally longer than cilia and are important in moving an entire cell, such as sperm, through fluids. Both cilia and flagella have structures dependent upon microtubules. Nine specialized pairs of microtubules form a ring and surround two additional microtubules (Figure 4.16). Microtubules within these structures bend and slide against each other, producing movement. **Dynein** is a microtubule-binding protein that generates the sliding forces between microtubules in cilia, catalyzing their movement.

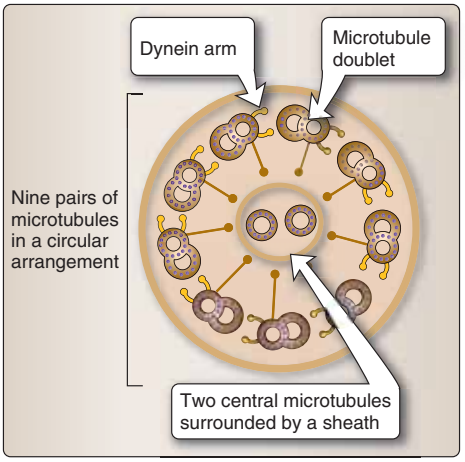


Figure 4.16
9 + 2 arrangement of microtubules in cilia and flagella.

E. Microtubule motor proteins

Some other types of movement within cells are also dependent upon microtubules. For example, organelles as well as vesicles can be observed to travel along microtubules within cells. **Dynein** and another microtubule-binding protein, **kinesin**, facilitate movement of intracellular cargo that can include membrane-bound organelles and transport vesicles. Dynein and kinesin are actually families of proteins called microtubule motor proteins that have ATP-binding heads and tails that bind stably with their intracellular cargo. Dyneins move along microtubules toward

the centrosome (toward the – end of the microtubules) while kinesins travel along microtubules away from the centrosome (toward the + end of the microtubules). Both types of proteins hydrolyze ATP to catalyze their own movement along microtubules, while pulling their cargo along the network provided by the microtubules (Figure 4.17).

Chapter Summary

- The **cytoskeleton** is a complex network of protein filaments found throughout the interior of cells.
- The three principal types of protein filaments of the cytoskeleton are **actin** filaments, **microtubules**, and **intermediate filaments**.
- Accessory proteins bind to and regulate the function of cytoskeletal proteins.

Actin:

- Functions of actin in nonmuscle cells include regulation of the physical state of the **cytosol**, cell movement, and formation of contractile rings in cell division.
- Actin polymerization occurs by the addition of G-actin monomers onto F-actin polymers, in an ATP-dependent manner.
- **Treadmilling** is the dynamic process of addition of a new G-actin monomer to a growing chain followed by its displacement along the F-actin polymer and its removal from the chain as new G-actin monomers join the chain in front of it.

Intermediate filaments are stable, rope-like cytoskeletal structures that provide strength and support.

Microtubules:

- Microtubules are involved in chromosomal movements during nuclear division, in formation of cilia and flagella, and in intracellular transport.
- Composed of **tubulin** heterodimers, microtubules have a **dynamic instability** and continue to assemble and disassemble according to the needs of the cell.

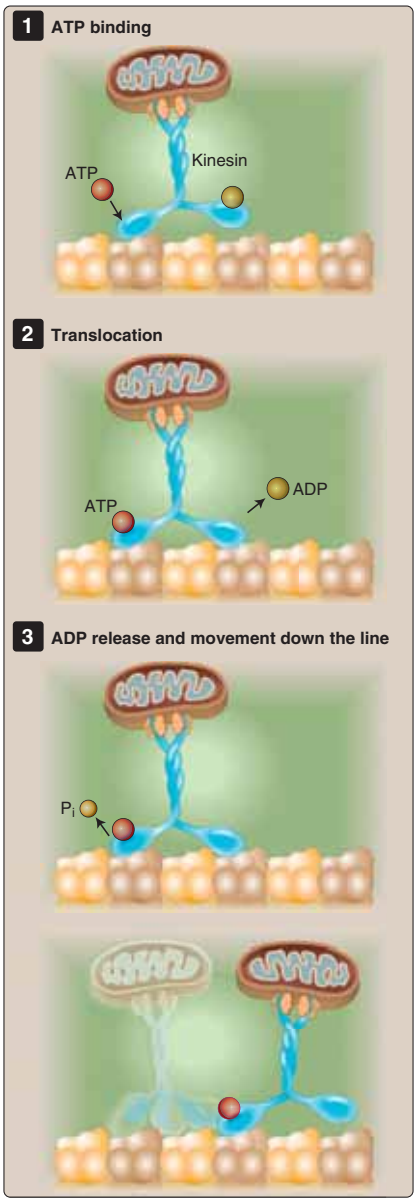


Figure 4.17
Microtubule motors and organelle transport.

Study Questions

4.1 A cytoskeletal component requires ATP for its polymerization and contains subunits that are observed to undergo treadmilling. That cytoskeletal component is a/an:

A. Actin filament
B. Intermediate filament
C. Keratin
D. Microtubule
E. Tubulin

4.1: Correct answer = A. Actin filaments require ATP for polymerization and subunits undergo treadmilling as they make their way through an F-actin polymer. Intermediate filaments have stable structures and do not undergo dynamic assembly or disassembly processes. Keratin is a type of intermediate filament. Microtubules are composed of tubulin heterodimers. They require GTP for their polymerization. Additions and subtractions of tubulins from microtubules occur from the same end of the structure.

4.2 A 4-year-old boy presents in clinic with signs and symptoms of muscular dystrophy. Testing reveals a small deletion in the *dys* gene and no functional dystrophin protein. Owing to this defect, which of the following cytoskeletal components is unable to stably bind to the basal lamina in skeletal muscle cells?

A. Actin filaments
B. Intermediate filaments
C. Microtubules
D. Myosin
E. Vimentin

4.2: Correct answer = A. Dystrophin facilitates actin binding to the basal lamina of the skeletal muscle cells. Neither intermediate filaments nor microtubules bind in this manner. Myosin is another actin-binding protein that facilitates contraction of F-actin. Vimentin is a type of intermediate filament.

4.3 A microtubule is observed to disassemble quickly after a period of rapid growth. Which of the following most likely occurred to this particular microtubule to stimulate its breakdown?

A. Binding by dynein
B. Formation of its ATP cap
C. Loss of its GTP cap
D. Severing by gelsolin
E. Twisting by cofilin

4.3: Correct answer = C. Loss of the GTP cap results in rapid disassembly of microtubules. Dynein is a microtubule motor protein that enables microtubules to facilitate movement of cilia and flagella and of intracellular cargo. ATP is not part of a microtubule structure. Gelsolin and cofilin are actin-binding proteins that stimulate breakdown of complex actin structures.

4.4 Rapidly dividing cells are grown in the laboratory in the presence of Taxol. Which of the following effects may be observed in the cytoskeleton of these cells?

A. Continued growth of microtubules
B. Conversion from gel to sol state of cytosol
C. Halt in treadmilling of F-actin
D. Intermediate filament disassembly
E. Tubulin depolymerization

4.4: Correct answer = A. In the presence of Taxol, the disassembly of microtubules is prevented and microtubules will continue to grow in length. The status of cortical actin regulates the gel-to-sol transition in cells. Taxol binds to tubulins within microtubules and does not affect actin or intermediate filaments. Depolymerization of microtubules is prevented by Taxol binding.

4.5 A vesicle within a cell must be transported to another region of the cell along the microtubules. Which of the following proteins may be involved in catalyzing this transport?

A. Dystrophin
B. Kinesin
C. Myosin
D. Spectrin
E. Vimentin

4.5: Correct answer = B. Kinesin and dynein are families of microtubule motor proteins that facilitate intracellular transport along microtubules. Dystrophin, myosin, and spectrin are actin-binding proteins. Vimentin is a type of intermediate filament.

5 Organelles

I. OVERVIEW

Organelles are complex intracellular locations where processes necessary for eukaryotic cellular life occur. Most organelles are membrane-enclosed structures. Their membranes are composed of the same components as plasma membranes that form the outer boundaries of cells (see Chapter 3). Together with the **cytosol** (liquid portion of the cytoskeleton), the organelles help to form the **cytoplasm**, composed of all materials contained within the boundaries of the plasma membrane. Organelles do not float freely within the cytosol (liquid portion of cytoplasm) but are interconnected and joined by the framework established by proteins of the cytoskeleton (see Chapter 4).

Each organelle carries out a specific function although the activities of organelles can also sometimes be united. Cooperation between organelles is necessary for the expression of genes within nuclear DNA as proteins that function in various intracellular and extracellular locations. Organelles in this group include the **nucleus, ribosomes**, the **endoplasmic reticulum (ER)**, and the **Golgi complex**. Members of this collection of organelles have a characteristic arrangement within the cell and proximity to each other that allows them to carry out their function in protein processing (Figure 5.1). Starting with the nucleus and working outward toward the plasma membrane, the ER with attached ribosomes is found next, followed by the Golgi complex which is in close proximity to the plasma membrane.

Other organelles are found in various locations within the cytoplasm and have functions equally important to those involved in protein processing. The main function of mitochondria is to harvest energy to power cells' metabolic processes. Some other organelles are involved in digestion and detoxification. **Lysosomes** contain potent enzymes that break down macromolecules at the end of their lifespan while **peroxisomes** are responsible for detoxification of peroxides that would otherwise damage the cell.

II. ORGANELLES IN PROTEIN PROCESSING

The processes involved in the expression of DNA as functional proteins require cooperative actions by the nucleus, ribosomes, the ER, and the Golgi complex. The details of protein processing and trafficking or movement between organelles will be discussed in Chapter 11. The structure and function of each of these organelles are our present focus.

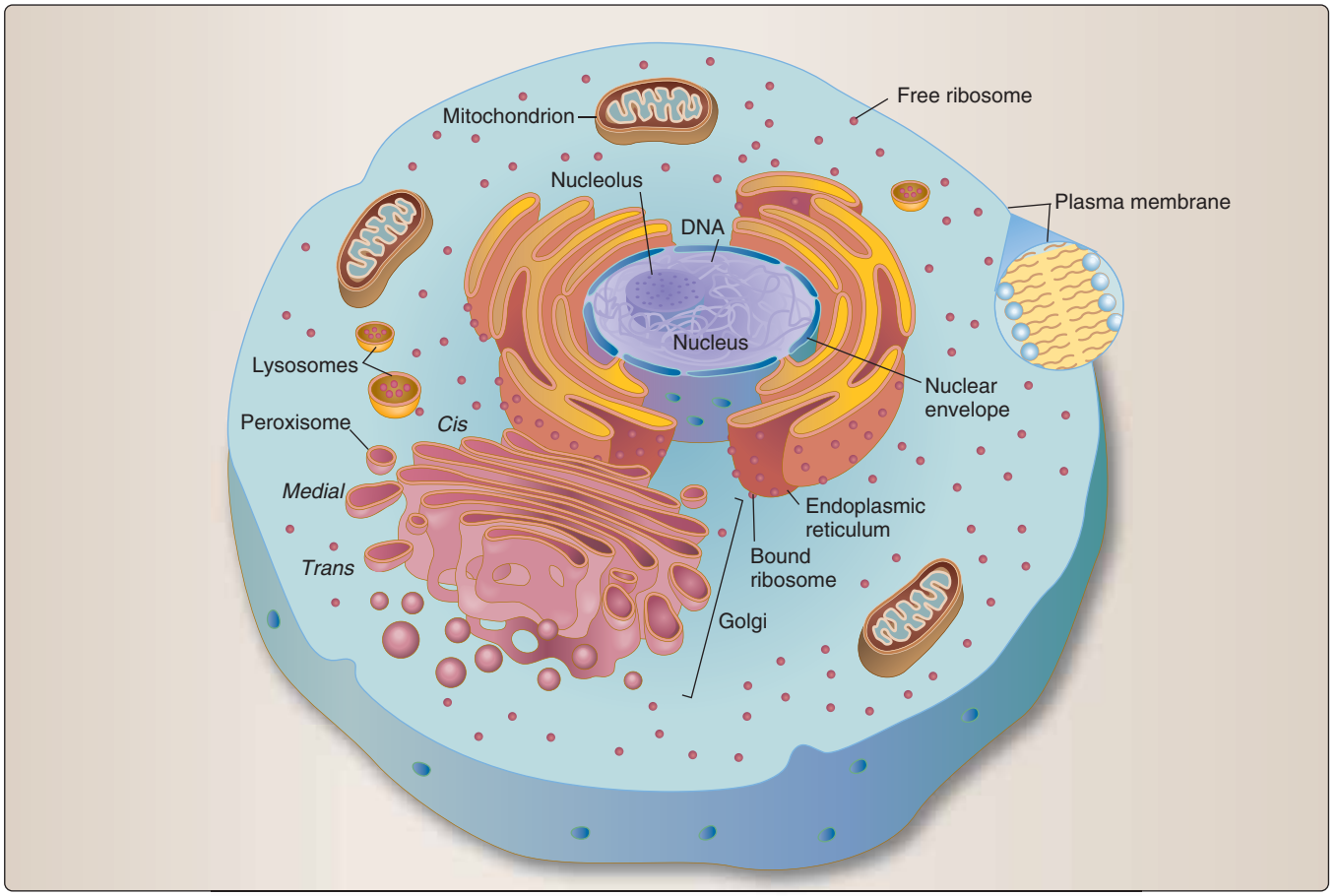


Figure 5.1
Diagram of a eukaryotic cell showing characteristic features and arrangements of organelles.

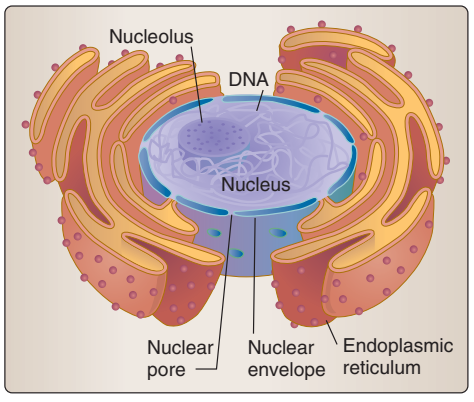


Figure 5.2
Structure of a cell's nucleus.

A. Nucleus

All eukaryotic cells except mature erythrocytes (red blood cells) contain a nucleus (plural = nuclei) where the cell's genomic DNA resides. In cells that are not actively dividing, the DNA is contained within chromosomes (see also Chapter 22). Every normal human cell contains 23 pairs of chromosomes within the nucleus of every cell. The outermost structure of the nucleus is the **nuclear envelope** (Figure 5.2). This is a double-layered phospholipid membrane with **nuclear pores** to permit transfer of materials between the nucleus and the cytosol. The interior of the nucleus contains the **nucleoplasm**, the fluid in which the chromosomes are found. It is organized by the **nuclear lamina**, the protein scaffolding of the nucleoplasm that is composed mainly of intermediate filaments (see also Chapter 4). The nuclear lamina forms associations between the DNA and the inner nuclear membrane. A prominent structure within the nucleus is a suborganelle called the **nucleolus**. The nucleolus is the site of **ribosome** production.

B. Ribosomes

Ribosomes are the cellular machinery for protein synthesis (see also Chapter 9). They are composed of proteins and ribosomal RNA (rRNA)

(Figure 5.3) with approximately 40% being protein and 60% rRNA. A complete ribosome has two subunits, one large and the other small. The large subunit contains three rRNA molecules and close to 50 proteins while the small subunit has one rRNA and approximately 30 proteins. Ribosomes assemble when needed for translation or protein synthesis from messenger RNA. They disassemble after completing the translation of a particular mRNA. Ribosomes are found within the cytosol either free or else bound to the ER.

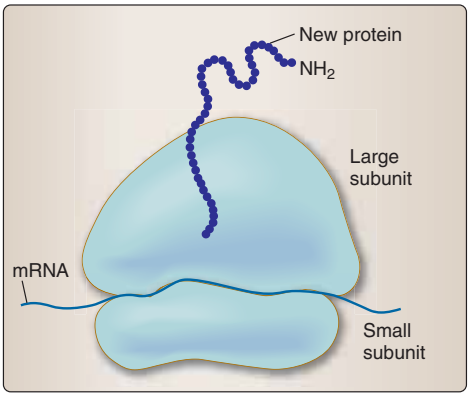


Figure 5.3
A ribosome synthesizing protein from mRNA.

C. Endoplasmic reticulum

Appearing like a series of interconnected, flattened tubes, the **ER** is often observed to surround the nucleus (Figure 5.4). The outer layer of the nuclear envelope is actually contiguous with the ER. In muscle cells, this organelle is known as the sarcoplasmic reticulum. The ER forms a maze of membrane-enclosed, interconnected spaces that constitute the ER **lumen**, which sometimes expand into sacs or **cisternae.** Regions of ER where ribosomes are bound to the outer membrane are called **rough endoplasmic reticulum** (rough ER or rER). Bound ribosomes and the associated ER are involved in the production and modification of proteins that will be inserted into the plasma membrane, function within lysosomes, Golgi complex, or ER, or else will be secreted outside the cell (see also Chapter 11). **Smooth endoplasmic reticulum** (sER) refers to the regions of ER without attached ribosomes. Both rER and sER function in the glycosylation (addition of carbohydrate) of proteins and in the synthesis of lipids.

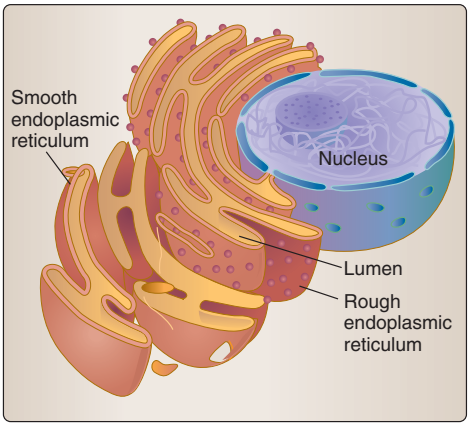


Figure 5.4
ER forming a contiguous membrane structure with the nucleus.

D. Golgi complex

Working outward from the nucleus and the ER, the next organelle encountered is the Golgi complex. This organelle appears as flat, stacked, membranous sacs (Figure 5.5). Three regions are described within the Golgi complex: the **cis**, which is closest to the ER; the **medial**; and the **trans** Golgi, which is near the plasma membrane. Each region is responsible for performing distinct modifications, such as glycosylations (addition of carbohydrate), phosphorylations (addition of phosphate), or proteolysis (enzyme-mediated breakdown of protein), to the newly synthesized proteins being processed and converted into mature, functional proteins. The trans Golgi network sorts and packages the newly synthesized and modified proteins into distinct regions within the trans Golgi. These regions bud off from the main body of the Golgi complex and form structures called transport vesicles. Movement of these new proteins toward their final cellular or extracellular destination is facilitated in this manner.

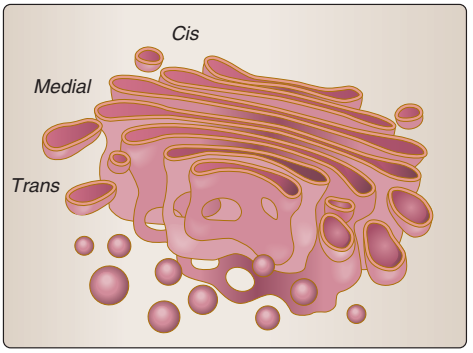


Figure 5.5
Golgi complex.

III. MITOCHONDRIA

Complex organelles, mitochondria (singular = mitochondrion) have several important functions in eukaryotic cells. Their unique membranes are used to generate ATP, greatly increasing the energy yield from the breakdown of carbohydrates and lipids. Mitochondria can self replicate and also contain their own DNA. Owing to these properties, mitochondria are believed to have bacterial origins. The very survival of individual cells depends on the integrity of their mitochondria. Programmed cell

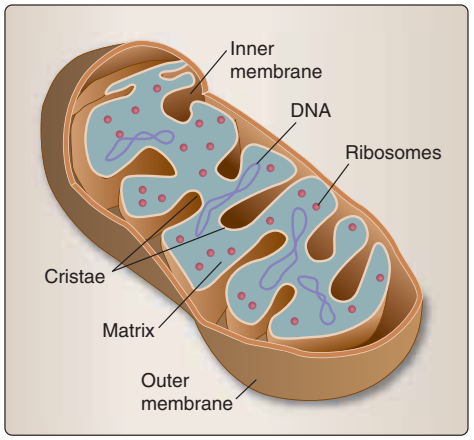


Figure 5.6
A mitochondrion.

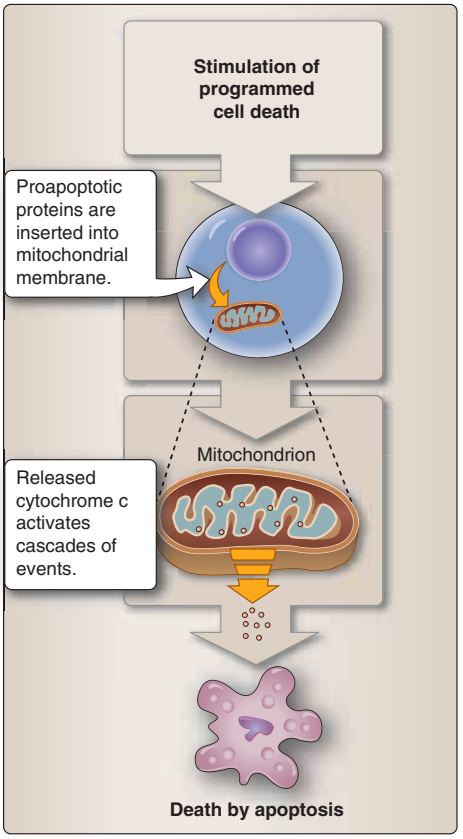


Figure 5.7
Mitochondria in apoptosis.

death or apoptosis occurs when pores are formed in the mitochondrial membrane allowing for the release of proteins that facilitate the apoptotic death process (see also Chapter 23). The unique structure of mitochondria is important in allowing them to perform these necessary cellular functions.

A. Function in energy production

One characteristic feature of mitochondria is the double phospholipid bilayer membranes that form the outer boundary of the organelle (Figure 5.6). The inner mitochondrial membrane forms folded structures called **cristae** that protrude into the mitochondrial lumen (space) known as the mitochondrial **matrix**. Protons (H^+) are pumped out of the mitochondrial matrix, creating an electrochemical gradient of protons. The flow of protons back into the matrix drives the formation of ATP from carbohydrates and lipids in the process of **oxidative phosphorylation** (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, pp. 77–80). The presence of mitochondria within a cell enhances the amount of ATP produced from each glucose molecule that is broken down, as evidenced by human red blood cells that lack mitochondria. In red blood cells, only 2 ATP molecules are generated per glucose molecule. In contrast, in human cells with mitochondria, the yield of ATP is as high as 32 per glucose molecule.

B. Role as independent units within the eukaryotic cells

Mitochondria also contain DNA (mtDNA) and ribosomes for the production of RNA and some mitochondrial proteins. mtDNA is approximately 1% of total cellular DNA and exists in a circular arrangement within the mitochondrial matrix. Mutations or errors in some mitochondrial genes can result in disease. Most mitochondrial proteins, however, are encoded by the genomic DNA of the cell's nucleus. Mitochondria self replicate or divide by fission, as do bacteria. Mitochondria are actually believed to have arisen from bacteria that were engulfed by ancestral eukaryotic cells.

C. Function in cell survival

Survival of eukaryotic cells depends on intact mitochondria. At times, the death of an individual cell is important for the benefit of the organism. During development, some cells must die to allow for proper tissue and organ formation. Death of abnormal cells, such as virally infected cells or cancerous cells, is also for the good of the organism. In all these cases, mitochondrial involvement is important to ensure cell survival when it is appropriate and also to facilitate programmed cell death when necessary. When the process of programmed cell death or apoptosis is stimulated in a cell, proapoptotic proteins insert into the mitochondrial membrane, forming pores. A protein known as cytochrome *c* can then leave the intermembrane space of the mitochondria through the pores, entering the cytosol (Figure 5.7). Cytochrome *c* in the cytosol stimulates a cascade of biochemical events resulting in apoptotic death of the cell (see also Chapter 23).

Mitochondrial diseases

Mitochondrial cytopathies are disorders that result in an inability of mitochondria to properly produce ATP. These disorders may result from mutations in mtDNA or from mutations in genomic genes that encode mitochondrial proteins and enzymes. Because mitochondria from sperm cells do not enter a fertilized egg, mitochondria are inherited exclusively from the mother. Therefore, disorders of mtDNA are also inherited from the mother only. Siblings share mitochondria with each other and with their mother, causing mitochondrial disorders that arise from mtDNA mutations to occur within families. Some individuals may be affected more or less severely even within a family. It is estimated that 1 in 4,000 children in the United States will develop a mitochondrial disorder by age 10. Some diseases of aging (type 2 diabetes, Parkinson disease, Alzheimer disease, atherosclerosis, etc.) may also result in part from decreased mitochondrial function.

More than 40 different mitochondrial disorders are described. They share the common feature of a reduced ability of mitochondria to completely oxidize or breakdown fuel sources such as carbohydrates. The buildup of intermediates can further damage mitochondria and mtDNA, which does not have an efficient repair mechanism. Mitochondrial diseases are categorized by the organ that is affected. Defects in oxidative phosphorylation will affect tissues with the greatest need for ATP. Brain, heart, liver, skeletal muscles, and eyes are examples of organs often affected in some mitochondrial cytopathies. Developmental delays, poor growth, loss of muscle coordination, and loss of vision are various signs of these disorders.

Kearns-Sayre syndrome is an example of a mitochondrial disorder caused by defective mtDNA. It is rare and results in paralysis of eye muscles and degeneration of the retina. A single large deletion of mtDNA is responsible for the development of this syndrome. Leber hereditary optic neuropathy results in blindness, primarily in young men. A single change (point mutation) in mtDNA causes this disorder. Deletions in mtDNA can result in Pearson syndrome, where there are bone marrow and pancreas dysfunctions. Cures are not presently available for mitochondrial cytopathies and treatments are designed to reduce symptoms or to prevent progression of disease.

IV. LYSOSOMES

Lysosomes are membrane-enclosed organelles of various sizes that have an acidic internal pH (pH 5) (Figure 5.8). They are formed from regions of the Golgi complex that pinch off when proteins destined for the lysosome reach the trans Golgi (see also Chapter 11). Lysosomes contain potent enzymes known collectively as **acid hydrolases**. These enzymes are synthesized on ribosomes bound to the ER. They function within the acidic environment of lysosomes to hydrolyze or break down macromolecules (proteins, nucleic acids, carbohydrates, and lipids). Lysosomes play a critical role in the normal turnover of macromolecules that have

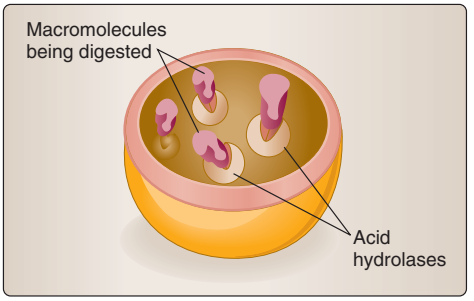


Figure 5.8
Lysosome structure and function.

Lysosomal storage diseases

Lysosomal storage diseases are caused by defects in acid hydrolases. (An exception is I cell disease, in which acid hydrolases do not traffic properly to the lysosomes.) Over 40 different acid hydrolases exist within normal, healthy lysosomes. The absence of particular acid hydrolases can lead to the accumulation of particular macromolecule substrates within the lysosomes. Therefore, the lysosomes store these substances instead of degrading and recycling them. These diseases are categorized by the type of compound that builds up to toxic levels within the lysosomes. For example, mucopolysaccharides (also known as glycosaminoglycans) accumulate in mucopolysaccharidoses such as Hurler and Hunter syndromes. Both are severe, with hearing loss and damage to the central nervous system. Children with Hurler syndrome usually stop developing between 2 and 4 years of age. In Farber disease, ceramide accumulates as a result of acid ceramidase deficiency and is fatal within the first year of life. Tay Sachs disease is characterized by the accumulation of gangliosides in the brain. The infantile form is the most common variant of Tay Sachs disease and is seen in approximately 1/3,600 births to Ashkenazi Jewish couples, but it is rare in the general population. Symptoms appear at about 6 months of age and death occurs by age 4. Some other lysosomal storage diseases do not become evident until much later in life. The adult-onset form of Gaucher syndrome (type I) is the most common lysosomal storage disease. This disease results from a deficiency of glucosylceramidase and results in glucosylceramide lipidosis (excess of this particular type of lipid). Splenomegaly (enlargement of the spleen) and bone pain are characteristics. The infantile form of Gaucher syndrome (type II) is much more severe, with neurological impairment and death by age 3.

reached the end of their functional life. Nonfunctional macromolecules build up to toxic levels if they are not degraded within lysosomes and properly recycled for reuse within the cell. This is exemplified by diseases known as lysosomal storage diseases. Such diseases are caused by defective acid hydrolases, resulting in accumulation of substrates of the defective acid hydrolases. Most are fatal at an early age. In infantile Tay Sachs disease, gangliosides accumulate in the brain and death occurs by age 4. In addition to degrading cellular macromolecules at the end of their lifespan, lysosomal enzymes also degrade materials that have been taken up by the cell through endocytosis or phagocytosis.

V. PEROXISOMES

Peroxisomes resemble lysosomes in size and in structure. They have single membranes enclosing them and contain hydrolytic enzymes. However, they are formed from regions of the ER as opposed to regions of the Golgi complex. Enzymes that function in peroxisomes are synthesized on

free ribosomes and are not modified in the ER or Golgi complex. Within peroxisomes, fatty acids and purines (AMP and GMP) are broken down (see also Chapter 7 and *LIR Biochemistry*, p. 195). Hydrogen peroxide, a toxic by-product of many metabolic reactions, is detoxified in peroxisomes. Within liver cells (hepatocytes), peroxisomes participate in cholesterol and bile acid synthesis (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, pp. 220–224). Peroxisomes are also involved in the synthesis of **myelin**, the substance that forms a protective sheath around many neurons. Some rare inherited diseases are caused by impaired peroxisome function. They exert their effects from birth onward and life expectancy is short. For example, X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy (the disease of the young boy in the 1992 film, *Lorenzo's Oil*) is characterized by the deterioration of myelin sheaths of neurons, owing to the failure of proper fatty acid metabolism. Zellweger syndrome is caused by a defect in the transporting of peroxisomal enzymes into the peroxisomes in liver, kidneys, and brain. Affected individuals do not usually survive beyond 6 months of age.

Chapter Summary

- Organelles are intracellular structures within eukaryotic cells that are responsible for carrying out specific functions necessary for normal cellular life.
- The nucleus, ribosomes, and endoplasmic reticulum function together in processing proteins that will function outside of the cell or within lysosomes.
- The nucleus is enclosed by a double membrane layer and houses the genomic DNA of the cell within the chromosomes.
- The nucleolus within the nucleus is the site of ribosome manufacture.
- Ribosomes function in protein translation and may be free or else bound to the endoplasmic reticulum.
- The endoplasmic reticulum is contiguous with the nuclear envelope and a series of membrane-enclosed spaces in which protein processing can occur.
- Rough endoplasmic reticulum has attached ribosomes while smooth endoplasmic reticulum does not.
- The Golgi complex appears like a series of flat, membrane-enclosed sacs with three distinct regions (cis, medial, and trans). It is involved in modifying and packaging the newly produced proteins.
- Mitochondria have double membranes that form folded cristae and surround a matrix.
- ATP is generated using an electrochemical gradient that exists across the matrix.
- Mitochondria can self replicate and contain their own DNA and ribosomes. They are believed to have arisen from bacteria engulfed by ancestral eukaryotic cells.
- Cell survival depends on the integrity of the mitochondrial membrane. When pores are placed in the membrane, cytochrome

c is released into the cytosol, setting off a cascade of reactions that lead to programmed cell death.

- Lysosomes contain powerful digestive enzymes known as acid hydrolases that function within their acidic environment.
- Defects in lysosomal acid hydrolases can result in lysosomal storage diseases where accumulation of nonfunctional macromolecules causes cellular damage and can result in death at an early age.
- Peroxisomes contain hydrolytic enzymes, detoxify hydrogen peroxide, and participate in the breakdown of fatty acids. They are involved in liver synthesis of cholesterol and in the production of myelin sheaths that protect neurons.

Study Questions

5.1 A cytosolic cellular structure with two subunits is observed to assemble and disassemble and to bind to mRNA and to associate, at times, with endoplasmic reticulum. The most likely identity of this structure is a/an

A. Golgi complex
B. Lysosome
C. Nucleus
D. Peroxisome
E. Ribosome

5.1: Correct answer = E. Ribosomes are composed of two subunits and exist within the cytosol, often bound to endoplasmic reticulum. They participate in protein translation from mRNA and bind to mRNA during the process. Golgi, lysosomes, nuclei, and peroxisomes are not formed of subunits that assemble and disassemble. None bind to mRNA or to endoplasmic reticulum.

5.2 A single membrane-enclosed organelle is observed to be in close proximity to the plasma membrane. It appears to surround newly modified proteins in membrane-enclosed structures. The most likely identity of this organelle is

A. Golgi complex
B. Lysosome
C. Mitochondria
D. Nucleus
E. Peroxisome

5.2: Correct answer = A. The Golgi complex is a series of membrane enclosed tubules involved in protein processing. It is localized near the plasma membrane and places newly modified proteins within the vesicles that bud off from the Golgi. Mitochondria and nuclei have double membranes. Lysosomes and peroxisomes do have single membranes but are not involved in protein processing. Lysosomes are produced from the Golgi and peroxisomes from the endoplasmic reticulum.

5.3 A membrane-enclosed intracellular structure is observed to release a protein through a pore into the cytosol. Following this release, biochemical reactions take place and result in the cell's death by apoptosis. The most likely identity of this intracellular structure is

A. Golgi complex
B. Lysosome
C. Mitochondria
D. Nucleus
E. Peroxisome

5.3: Correct answer = C. Mitochondria release cytochrome *c* into the cytosol, initiating a cascade of biochemical events that result in apoptotic cell death. The nucleus contains the cell's DNA. The Golgi complex participates in modifying and sorting newly produced proteins. Lysosomes and peroxisomes are distinct from each other but are both involved in digestion.

5.4 A 7-month-old girl who previously had a normal development now exhibits signs and symptoms of Tay Sachs disease. Which of the following organelles is affected in this disorder?

A. Endoplasmic reticulum
B. Golgi
C. Lysosomes
D. Mitochondria
E. Peroxisomes

5.4: Correct answer = C. Tay Sachs disease is a lysosomal storage disease. A mutant lysosomal hydrolase prevents the breakdown of certain macromolecules. In Tay Sachs disease, gangliosides accumulate in the brain, causing the signs and symptoms. The other organelles listed are unaffected in Tay Sachs disease.

5.5 A previously healthy 24-year-old male develops optic neuropathy and becomes blind. His mother's brother has the same condition. The patient is told that while his condition is inherited, there is no chance that he will pass his mutant gene to any of his future children. What type of disorder most likely affects this patient?

A. Autosomal recessive disorder
B. Disease of aging
C. Lysosomal storage disease
D. Mitochondrial disease
E. Peroxisomal disorder

5.5: Correct answer = D. This patient most likely has a mitochondrial disease. (He may have Leber hereditary optic neuropathy.) Mitochondrial diseases are inherited exclusively from the mother. Since sperms do not enter fertilized eggs, a male individual cannot pass on a defective mitochondrial gene to his children. This is the only type of condition that a male has no chance of passing on to any of his children. Autosomal recessive genes require both parents to pass on a mutant gene in order for a child to be affected. In autosomal conditions though, an affected person would have a 50% chance of passing on a mutant gene to his children. A 24-year-old man is not old enough to exhibit signs and symptoms of a disease of aging. Lysosomal storage diseases are often autosomal recessive. Peroxisomal disorders are generally present at birth and affected individuals have a very short life expectancy.

UNIT II
Organization of the Eukaryotic Genome and Gene Expression

They are in you and me; they created us, body and mind; and their preservation is the ultimate rationale for our existence… they go by the name of genes, and we are their survival machines.
—Richard Dawkins (English biologist, 1941–)
In: *The Selfish Gene* (1976)

Human genetic information, collectively known as the genome, exists as deoxyribonucleic acid or DNA within every nucleated somatic cell of the body. The DNA in each cell contains all instructions necessary to direct the growth and development of cells into an organism and to maintain cellular function throughout the individual's lifespan. Replication or copying of DNA, during development and also during growth and repair, must ensure that the instructions within DNA are faithfully passed from cellular generation to generation. This requirement ensures the preservation of both the individual organism and the species. Neither human DNA nor human cells can exist without the other, in a symbiotic type of relationship. Cells provide the framework and machinery to ensure that the genetic instructions within the DNA are reproduced and followed with fidelity.

Within DNA are nucleotide bases that are arranged in specific sequences to form genes. Genes exist to code for proteins that carry out functions of the cells and, therefore, of the organism. Yet, while this basic genetic blueprint is identical within all somatic cells of an individual, proteins within cells differ according to the cell type. While liver cells, for example, require an array of protein enzymes to carry out metabolic functions, bone cells require more protein support structures. Through transcription, instructions of DNA are converted into mRNA and the nucleic acid language is then translated into a protein. By regulating the regions of DNA that are transcribed, specific cell types are able to dictate the proteins that are produced. After their manufacture, the proteins are trafficked or moved to functional locations within or outside their cell or origin. A careful balance is needed between protein synthesis and degradation to enable cell function and survival and, therefore, also the continued existence of the DNA that instructs its formation.

The Eukaryotic Genome

6

I. OVERVIEW

Every nucleated eukaryotic somatic cell contains essentially the same blueprint—a set of genetic information collectively known as the **genome**. The tremendous potential for understanding the genetic basis for human development and disease led to the successful worldwide effort to sequence the entire human genome. We still need to understand how the human genome is organized and how to decipher the meaning of much of the human deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequence.

Some parts of the genome contain instructions used daily by the cell. But other genetic instructions are useful to a cell only when it is stressed. Still other genetic instructions are never used by the cell. Because of the vast amount of genetic information, it is critical for a cell to retrieve this information in a timely manner. Knowledge of how genetic information is stored and retrieved is essential for an understanding of the functioning of the eukaryotic genome. We will first examine the physical organization of the genome and then proceed to the biochemical processes required to maintain and manage the genome. Just as the page you are reading contains letters that are arranged in discrete information units known as words and words are combined into sentences, paragraphs, chapters, and so on, DNA contains nucleotides arranged into genes, chromosomes, and so on (Figure 6.1). This chapter will describe both the physical and the informational organization of the genome.

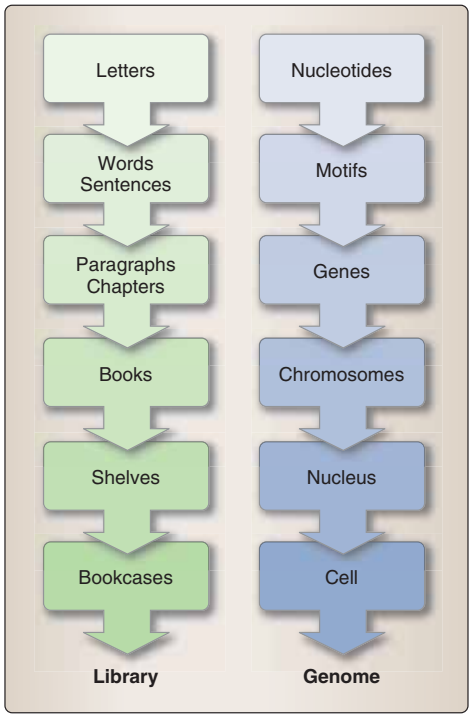


Figure 6.1
Data storage analogy.

II. PHYSICAL ORGANIZATION

The human genome is contained within two distinct compartments: the nucleus and the mitochondria. The bulk of the genome, containing about 20,000 to 25,000 genes encoded by DNA, is contained within a set of linear chromosomes within the cell nucleus and contains genetic material of both maternal and paternal origin. In contrast, mitochondrial DNA contains 37 genes that are essential for normal mitochondrial function and is exclusively of maternal origin. This chapter addresses the organization of nuclear DNA. Eukaryotic nuclear DNA is associated with a variety of proteins, which together form a complex structure, **chromatin**, that allows for numerous configurations of the DNA molecule and types of control unique to the eukaryotic organism.

A. DNA building blocks

DNA contains the structural blueprint for all genetic instructions. The genetic code contained within the DNA is composed of four "letters" or bases. Two of the bases are heterocyclic compounds or purines—adenine (A) and guanine (G)—and two are six-member rings known as pyrimidines—cytosine (C) and thymidine (T). The famous double-helix structure of DNA derives from its phosphate-deoxyribose backbone (Figure 6.2). The backbone comprises five-carbon sugar (pentose) molecules bound to a nucleoside (A, G, C, or T). The pentose molecules are also asymmetrically joined to phosphate groups by phosphodiester bonds. Hydrogen bonds between complementary (G:C or A:T) nucleotides (a nucleoside linked to a sugar and one or more phosphate groups) interact to stabilize and form the double-helix structure.

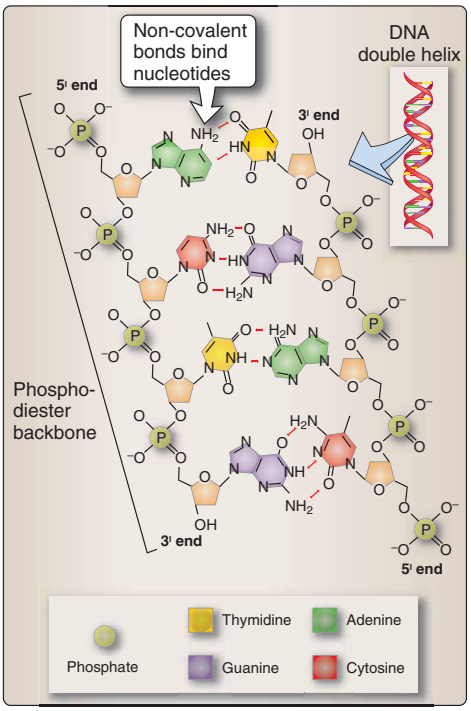


Figure 6.2
Nuclear structure of eukaryotic DNA.

B. Histones

Chromatin consists of very long double-stranded DNA molecules, nearly an equal mass of rather small basic proteins termed **histones**, as well as smaller amounts of nonhistone proteins, and a small quantity of ribonucleic acid (RNA). Histones are a heterogeneous group of closely related arginine- and lysine-rich basic proteins, which together make up one fourth of amino acid residues. These positively charged amino acids help histones to bind tightly to the negatively charged sugar phosphate backbone of DNA. Functionally, histones provide for the compaction of chromatin.

Just how much DNA is there?

The human haploid genome contains approximately 3×10^8 base pairs packaged into 23 chromosomes. Total uncoiled DNA within a single human cell would stretch to more than a meter. Uncoiled individual chromosomes would measure 1.7 to 8.5 cm in length.

C. DNA packaging

The nucleus of a human cell is typically 6 μm in diameter but contains DNA which at its maximum stages of condensation is only about 1/50,000th of its linear length. At least four levels of packaging of DNA take place in order that DNA in individual chromosomes fits into the 1.4 μm chromosome seen at metaphase (a stage in mitosis in the cell cycle where the DNA is most condensed).

Nucleosomes are the fundamental organization upon which the higher order packing of chromatin is built. Each nucleosome core consists of a complex of eight histone proteins (two molecules each of histone H2A, H2B, H3, and H4) with double-stranded DNA wound around it. 146 base pairs (bp) of DNA are associated with the nucleosome particle and a 50 to 70 bp span of linker DNA bound by a linker histone H1 separates each nucleosome (Figure 6.3).

In addition to their role in packaging DNA, nucleosomes also regulate gene expression, or activity, by determining whether the DNA sequences can be accessed by transcription factors, allowing the factors to regulate expression of a nearby gene (Chapter 10).

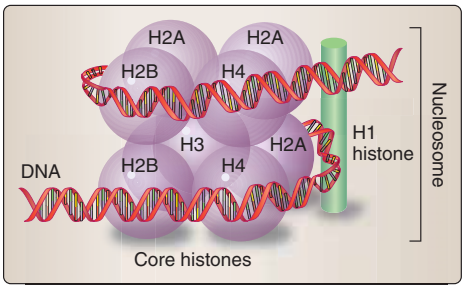


Figure 6.3
Structure of a nucleosome.

Nucleosomes are in turn successively packed into higher order structures by coiling and looping (Figure 6.4).

D. Histone modification

Each core histone has a structured domain and an unstructured amino-terminal "tail" of 25 to 40 amino acid residues. Enzymatic modification of the amino-terminal tails (e.g., by acetylation, methylation, or

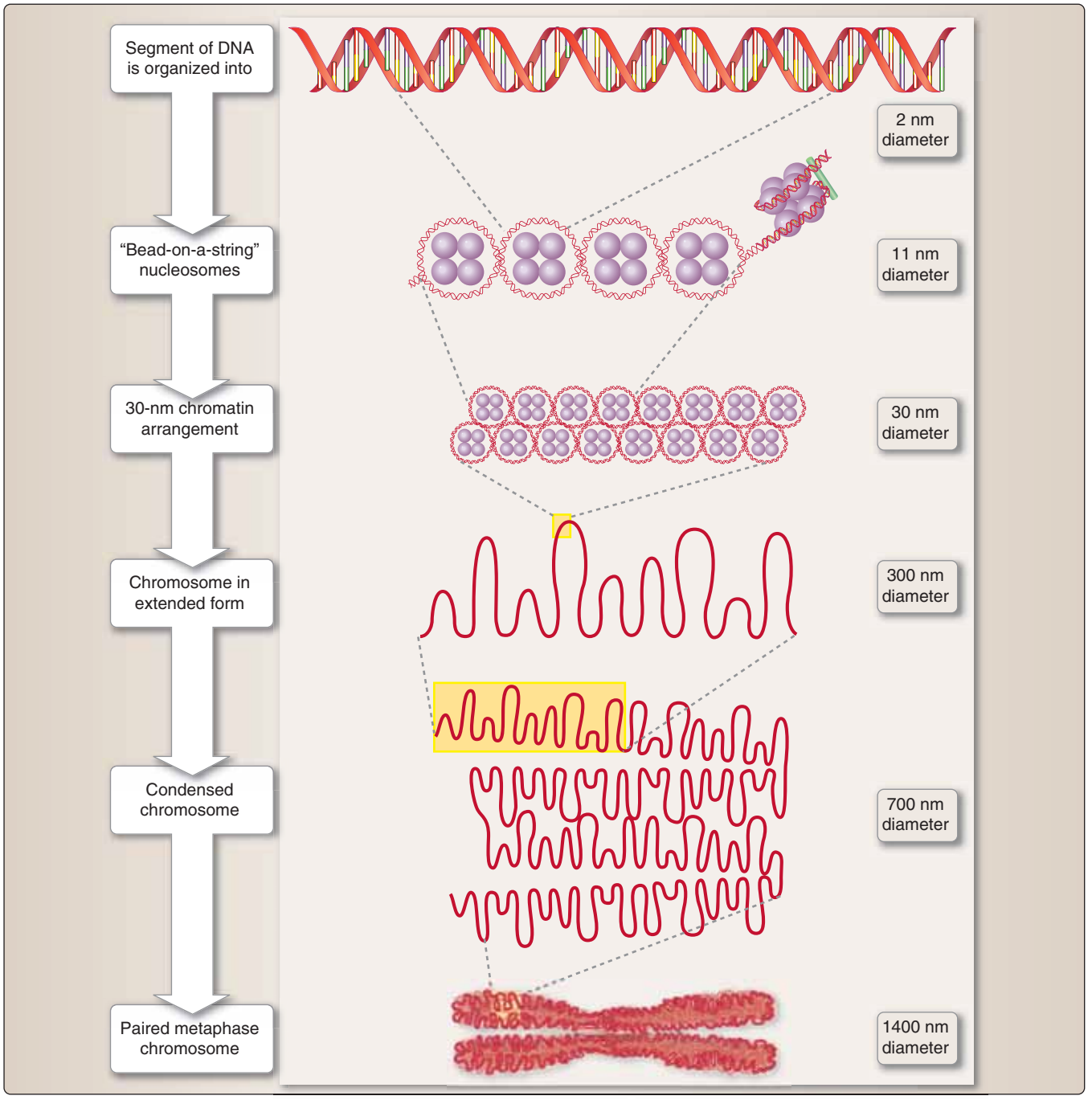


Figure 6.4
Higher order structures formed during progressive compaction of chromatin.

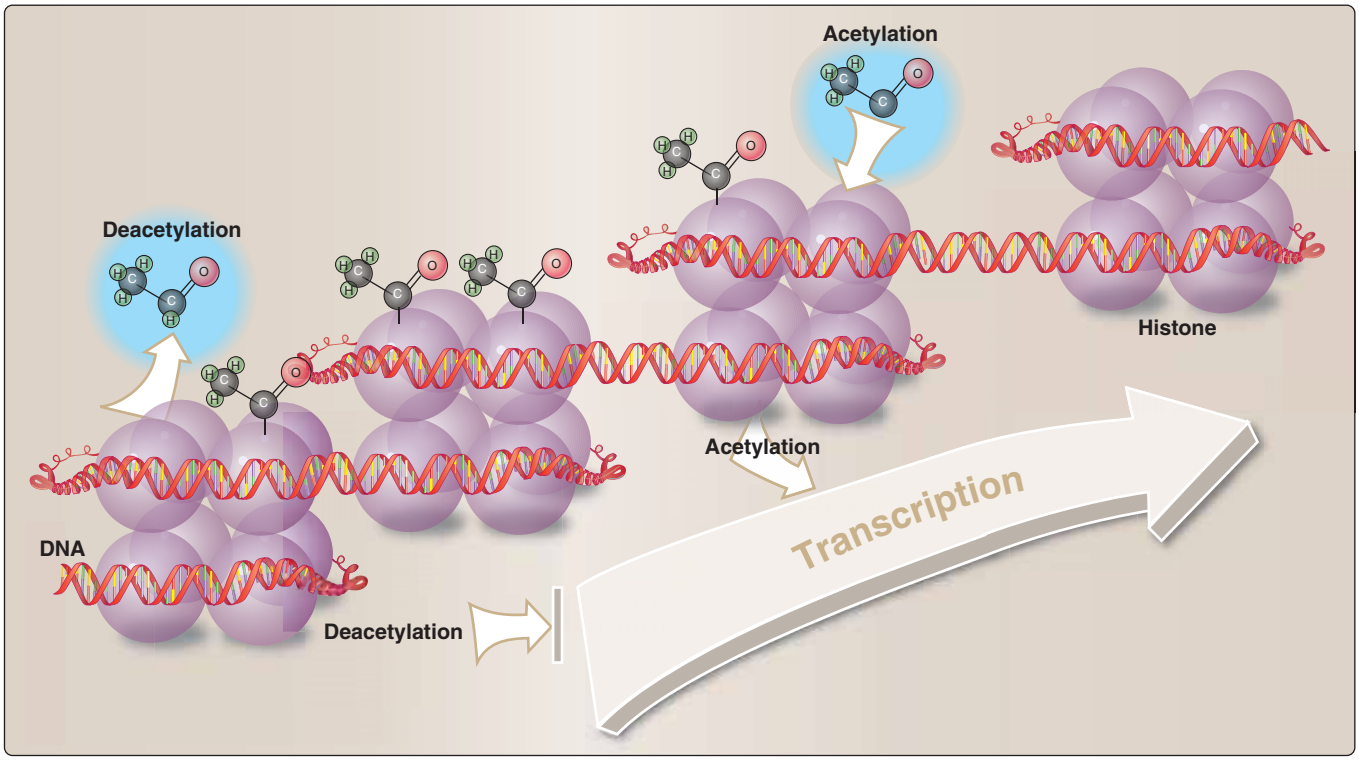


Figure 6.5
Histone (de)acetylation controls chromatin compaction and decompaction.

phosphorylation) modifies the histones' net electric charge and shape. These modifications are physiologically reversible and are thought to prepare the chromatin for DNA replication and transcription.

1. **Acetylation and deacetylation of lysine residues:** These processes are important in making DNA more or less accessible to transcription factors (proteins that regulate gene expression by direct binding to DNA). Lysine residue acetylation weakens the DNA-histone interactions and makes the DNA more accessible to factors needed for transcription (Figure 6.5). Therefore, **histone acetylation** (catalyzed by **h**istone **a**cetyl **t**ransferases or **HAT**s) is generally associated with **transcriptional activation**. On the other hand, **histone deacetylation** (catalyzed by **h**istone **de**a**c**etylase or **HDAC**) is associated with gene **silencing**. The interplay of acetylase and deacetylase activities defines the transcriptional activity of a given chromatin region.

2. **Euchromatin and heterochromatin:** These terms describe the compaction of DNA in the chromosome and are used to further classify chromatin. Densely packed or compacted regions of chromatin are termed **heterochromatin** and, for the most part, are genetically inactive (Figure 6.6). Transcription is inhibited in heterochromatin because the DNA is packaged so tightly that it is inaccessible to the proteins responsible for RNA transcription.

3. **Transcriptionally active nucleus:** Less densely compacted chromatin regions in a transcriptionally active nucleus are called

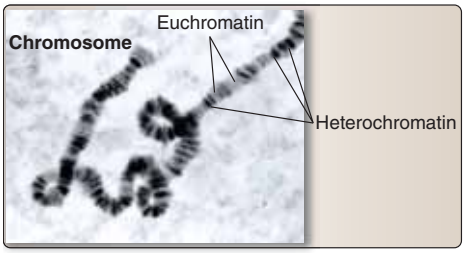


Figure 6.6
Euchromatin and heterochromatin.

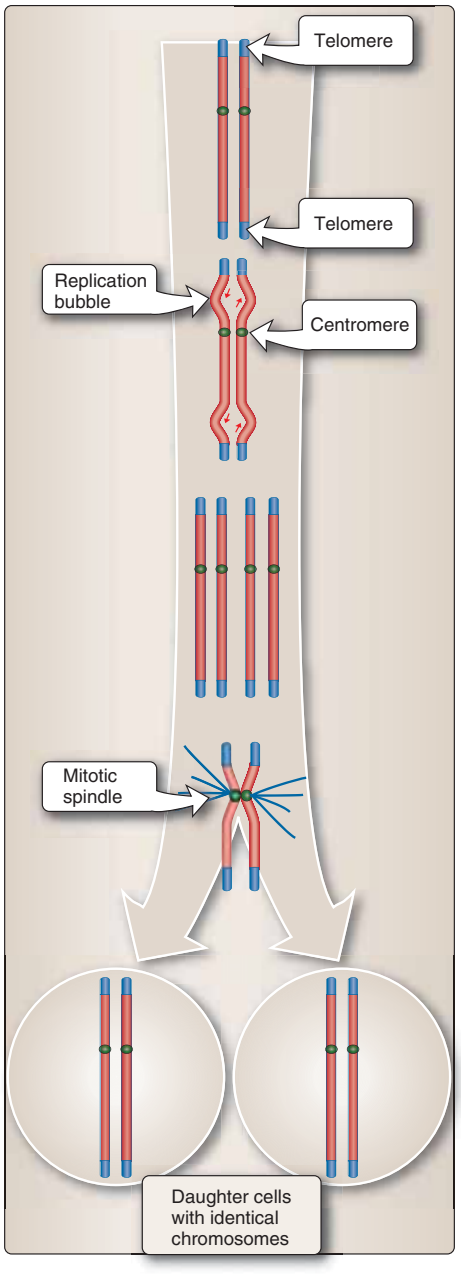


Figure 6.7
Chromosome structure.

euchromatin (Figure 6.6) and are commonly undergoing, or preparing for, or have just completed transcription. For a gene to be transcribed, its gene sequence must become available to the RNA polymerases and regulatory proteins that influence the rate at which the gene is transcribed. Euchromatin represents uncoiled chromatin structures that allow RNA polymerases' and regulatory proteins' access to DNA. During cell division, the chromatin becomes highly compact and coiled and condenses into the familiar structure of the mitotic chromosome.

E. Chromosome structure

Individual chromosomes are composed of both a noncovalent complex of one very long, linear duplex DNA and associated histone proteins. Chromosome structure varies with the cell cycle, from the loose threadlike appearance in G_1 phase to the tightly compacted state observed during M phase (see Chapter 20). Chromosomes require three sequence elements for their propagation and maintenance as individual units. **Telomeres** are hexameric DNA repeats [$(TTAGGG)_n$] found at the ends of chromosomes that serve to protect the chromosome from degradation (Figure 6.7). Sequence elements known as **centromeres** serve as "handles," which allow mitotic spindles to attach to the chromosome during cell division. As the cell progresses through the mitotic or M phase of the cell cycle, the nuclear envelope breaks down, and chromosomes segregate into the opposite poles of the cells (to form daughter cells), while a **kinetochore** forms consisting of the centromere and mitotic spindles. The centromere also serves as a boundary that separates the two arms (short, or **p**, from the French *petite*, and long, or **q**, because "q" follows "p" in the alphabet) of the chromosome (placement varies for different chromosome types). We discuss more about the mechanism of the cell cycle in Chapter 20.

In order for DNA in chromosomes to replicate, a specific nucleotide sequence acts as a DNA replication origin. Each chromosome contains **multiple origins of replication**, dispersed throughout its length. At the origin of replication, there is an association of sequence-specific, double-stranded DNA binding proteins with a series of direct repeat DNA sequences.

Karyotype analysis

Metaphase chromosomes can be visualized microscopically to allow geneticists to detect and identify chromosome abnormalities. Karyotype analysis is an important diagnostic tool in the prenatal diagnosis of chromosomal abnormalities such as Down syndrome (trisomy 21), the staging of tumor progression (tumors often have abnormal number of chromosomes), determining infertility, and even to prevent males from performing as athletes in female sports events.

III. INFORMATION ORGANIZATION

Collectively, **ploidy** refers to the number of chromosome copies within a cell. Most of the somatic cells within the body are **diploid**, meaning that each nucleus has two copies of each chromosome, one deriving from

the mother and other from the father. Germ cells are the exception to this rule, which contain a single copy of each chromosome and are known as haploid.

The haploid genome of each human cell consists of 3.0×10^9 bp of DNA, divided into 23 (22 somatic and 1 sex) chromosomes. The entire haploid genome contains sufficient DNA to code for nearly 1.5 million pairs of genes. Surprisingly, the human genome project has shown humans to have only about 20,000 to 25,000 genes. Our genome has approximately the same number of genes as a fruit fly, yet considerably more complex than that organism. Our protein-coding genes appear to produce more than one protein product by alternative splicing (Chapter 7). The human **proteome**, or total number of protein species, is five to ten times larger than that of the fruit fly.

A new class of genes, **microRNA**s, has recently been discovered and appears to regulate at least 30% of all proteins within the human proteome (see Chapter 7). MicroRNAs are involved in many human diseases, ranging from diabetes, obesity, and viral diseases to various types of cancer (see Chapter 22).

Genomic, eukaryotic DNA may be further classified as either unique or single copy or as a repetitive sequence DNA (Figure 6.8).

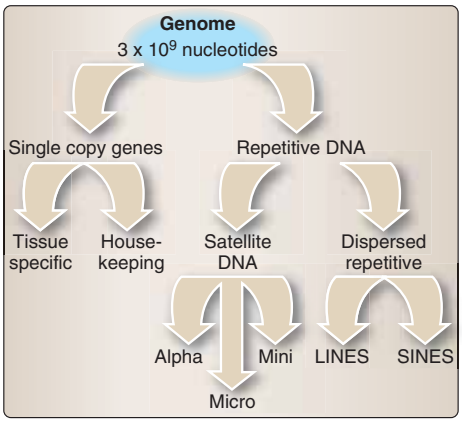


Figure 6.8
Organization of the genome.

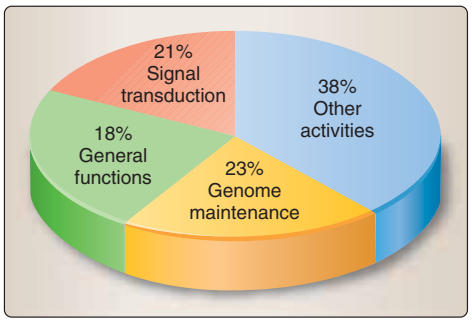


Figure 6.9
Unique (nonrepetitive) DNA distribution with the genome.

A. Unique DNA sequences

Single copy DNA or genes generally encode information for specific protein products. The 20,000 to 25,000 genes within the human genome can be divided into four general categories. Approximately 5,000 genes are involved with genome maintenance; nearly 5,000 with signal transduction; and 4,000 with general biochemical functions; the largest portion, 9,000 genes, is involved in other activities (Figure 6.9).

B. Repeat sequences

Although repeat sequences do not encode proteins, they make up at least 50% of the human genome. These sequences do not appear to have direct functions but are important for chromosome structure and dynamics. These sequences fall into two main classes: Satellite DNA and LINES and SINES.

1. **Satellite DNA:** These highly repetitive sequences tend to be clustered and repeated many times in tandem (a head-to-toe arrangement). They are generally not transcribed and are present in 1 to 10 million copies per haploid genome. These sequences are also associated with the centromeres and telomeres of chromosomes.

   Satellite DNA sequences are categorized according to the number of base pairs within the repeat sequence:

   - alpha satellite—171 bp sequence that extends several million base pairs or more in length
   - minisatellite—20 to 70 bp in length and a total length of a few thousand base pairs
   - microsatellite—repeat units only 2, 3, or 4 bp in length and a total length of a few hundred

Microsatellites and minisatellites and genetic mapping

Repeat DNA sequences are widespread throughout the human genome and are polymorphic (a common genetic variation in nucleotide sequence). Consequently, they have found application as genetic markers for identity testing and disease diagnosis. Short tandem repeats (STRs) are microsatellites of 2 to 6 bp in length and are important for forensic laboratories because these sequences can be readily amplified with the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) from small amounts of suboptimal quality DNA. Formerly, minisatellite sequences were identified by restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) analyses, a more cumbersome technique requiring larger amounts of moderately good quality DNA to successfully amplify DNA.

In the United States, a core set of 13 STR markers is currently used to generate a nationwide DNA database called the FBI Combined DNA Index System (CODIS). The CODIS and similar DNA databases have successfully linked DNA profiles from repeat offenders and crime scene evidence. STR typing has also found application in the resolution of paternity disputes.

Trinucleotide repeats are microsatellite sequences that are normally present in certain genes and can undergo expansion. Several human diseases have been shown to result from the expansion of the number of repeats above the normal number resulting in an unstable and defective gene (Table 6.1).

2. **LINES and SINES:** These unclustered sequences are found interspersed with unique sequences. These are also present at less than 10^6 copies per haploid genome. They are transcribed into RNA and can be grouped according to their size.

- LINES (**l**ong **in**terspersed **e**lements) 7,000 bp (20 to 50,000 copies)
- SINES (**s**hort **in**terspersed **e**lements) 90 to 500 bp (about 100,000 copies)

Table 6.1
TRINUCLEOTIDE REPEATS AND DISEASE

Disease	Repeat Sequence	Normal Number	Disease-State Number	Location
Kennedy	CAG	11–33	40–62	Protein-coding region
Huntington	CAG	11–34	42–100	Protein-coding region
Fragile X	CGG	6–54	250–4,000	5′ untranslated region
Myotonic dystrophy	CTG	5–30	>50	5′ untranslated region

IV. FUNCTIONAL ORGANIZATION

Functions within the cell are usually encoded by genes. Genes are present on the chromosomes and in the mitochondria. Not all genes are active in all tissues and specific alterations to these genes are necessary for tissue-specific gene expression.

A. Genes

A **gene** is the complete sequence region necessary for generating a functional product. This encompasses promoters and control regions necessary for the transcription, processing, and, if applicable, translation of a gene. About 2% of the genome encodes instructions for the synthesis of proteins. Genes appear to be concentrated in random areas along the genome, with vast expanses of noncoding DNA between them (Figure 6.10).

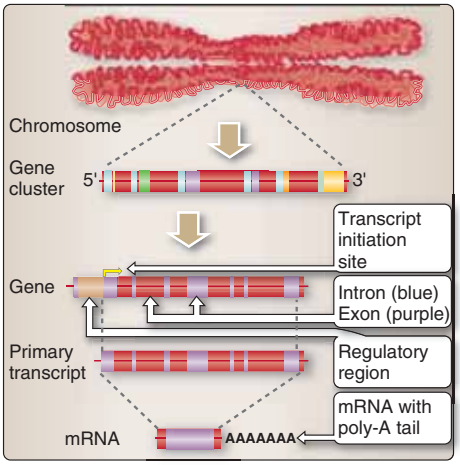


Figure 6.10
Gene organization.

B. Alterations to the genome

Aside from mutation, all cells in an individual have identical DNA content and sequence. However, different tissues and cells require a specific set of genes to carry out their functions. Structural modification that differs among cell types plays an important role in the control of gene expression during development and differentiation. These changes do not affect the DNA sequence of the genome and are termed **epigenetic.** These changes commonly occur in concert and help explain alterations in gene expression that are stably inherited. The following represent epigenetic mechanisms operative in eukaryotic cells.

1. **Methylation of cytosines:** Specific cytosine methylation correlates with gene expression and is achieved through processes of adding or removing methyl groups from nucleotides in DNA. DNA methylation is involved in a wide variety of fundamental cellular processes. The major site of DNA methylation in mammals is on a cytosine base in DNA—especially the 5′ cytosine adjacent to a guanosine base (5′-CG-3′) (Figure 6.11).

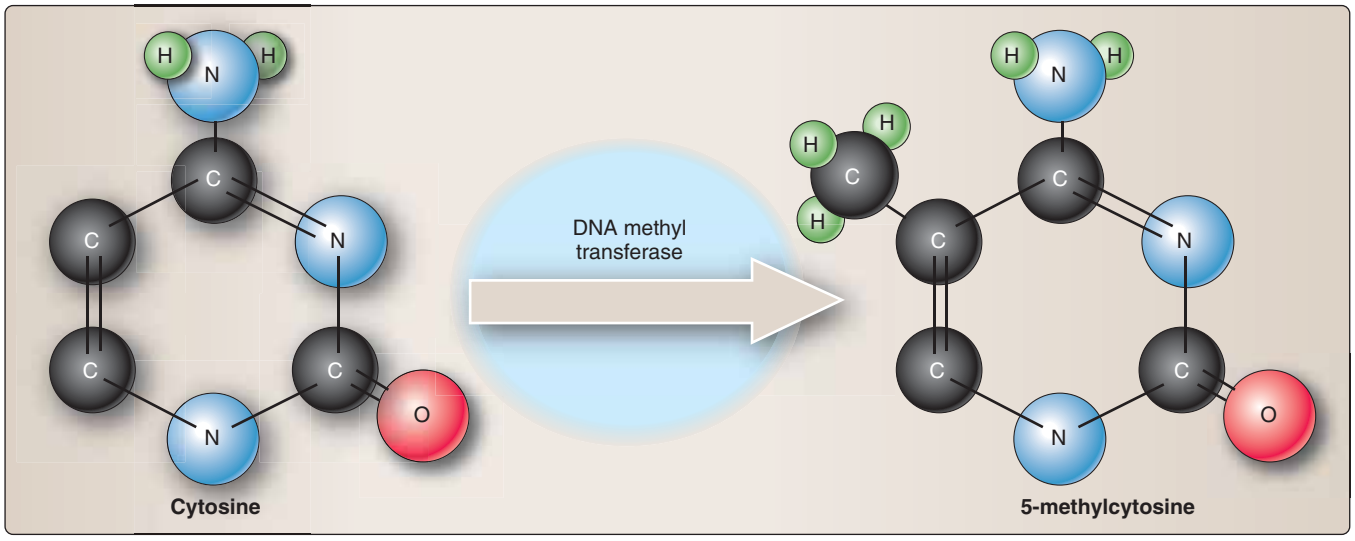


Figure 6.11
Methylation of specific cytosines in DNA.

Gene methylation

5′-CG-3′ residues tend to cluster in the promoter regions of genes. Sometimes they are constitutively hypomethylated and active in all cell types and referred to as housekeeping genes. Tissue-specific genes tend to be preferentially methylated in cells/tissues where they are not needed. One example is the globin gene. The globin gene is actively synthesized in hematopoietic cells (cells that give rise to the different blood types) that give rise to reticulocytes (newly formed red blood cells) while the same gene is methylated and silenced in tissues that are not required to synthesize globin protein. Methylation of 5′-CG-3′ residues in DNA is thought to cause steric hindrance to the binding of proteins that influences gene expression.

Genomic imprinting

Although most genes have equal representation from both parents, some genes appear to be expressed exclusively from the chromosome contributed from either the mother or the father. The silencing of genes on these chromosomes is a result of gene methylation. These genes are said to be "imprinted" or have the ability to be turned on or off depending on which parent contributed the gene. The deletion of a certain region of chromosome 15 produces different outcomes depending on which parent contributed it. A deletion of this region derived from the father causes Prader-Willi syndrome, while deletion of the same region from the mother's chromosome produces Angelman syndrome. These conditions have very little in common in terms of pathology, even though the same area of the chromosome undergoes deletion in both. In the case of Prader-Willi syndrome, the failure to express several genes from the paternal chromosome causes the disease, while it is the failure of the maternal chromosome to express a different gene that results in Angelman syndrome.

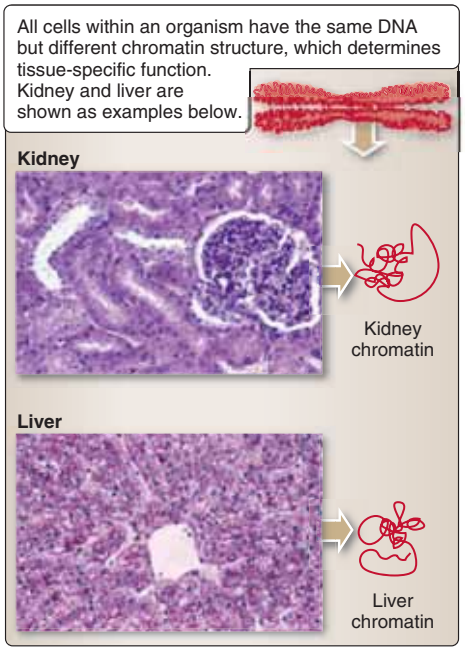


Figure 6.12
Chromatin structure is tissue specific.

2. **Tissue-specific chromatin alterations:** Tissue-specific chromatin alterations refer to differences in the chromatin structure within tissues (euchromatin and heterochromatin). These are stably inherited changes in the chromatin structure and specific to a given tissue. Different tissues, therefore, have a different chromatin structure dependent on the functions carried out by the tissue. Tissue-specific chromatin alterations are maintained with each cell division (Figure 6.12).

Chapter Summary

- Chromatin is composed of DNA and small histone proteins.
- DNA packaging requires histone's amino acid side chains to interact with DNA.
- Histone modifications are reversible, thus enabling chromatin compaction and decompaction.
- Telomeres, centromeres, and multiple origins of replication are important for chromosome maintenance and replication.
- Genomic DNA contains both repeat and unique sequences.
- Different cells express different regions of chromatin.
- Methylation and tissue-specific chromatin structure represent stably inherited epigenetic changes in the genome (Figure 6.9).
- Methylation of certain cytosines in DNA correlates with transcriptional silencing.

Study Questions

6.1 Telomeres

A. Consist of repetitive DNA sequences found at the ends of chromosomes
B. Inhibit the organization of the DNA as nucleosome units in chromosomes
C. Facilitate the attachment of chromosomes to kinetochore during cell division
D. Are the regions of chromosomal DNA where gene clusters are located
E. Are interspersed throughout the chromosomes with unique DNA sequences

6.1: Correct answer = A. Telomeres are repeat sequences found at the ends of the chromosomes that protect them from damage. They do not affect the organization of DNA into higher order structures. The kinetochore is formed around the centromere region. The ends of DNA do not contain genes. LINES and SINES are the moderately repeated sequences that are interspersed with unique DNA sequences.

6.2 Which of the following statements regarding histone proteins is CORRECT?

A. Histone proteins contain large amounts of acidic amino acid residues
B. Histone proteins are important to stabilize the single-stranded DNA
C. Histones constitute three times the mass of DNA within the nucleus
D. Nuclear DNA associates with histone proteins to form chromatin
E. Within chromosomes, each nucleosome unit contains a different histone protein

6.2: Correct answer = D. The term chromatin refers to the genetic material found in the nucleus complexed to histones. Histones are basic proteins containing a large amount of basic amino acids. Double-stranded DNA is wrapped around histone beads. There is an equal mass of DNA to histones. Nucleosomes are the fundamental level of organization containing the same histone proteins.

6.3 Tandemly repeated DNA sequences form a part of

A. Single copy nuclear DNA
B. Mitochondrial DNA
C. Long interspersed elements (LINES)
D. Minisatellite DNA
E. Short interspersed elements (SINES)

6.3: Correct answer = D. Tandemly repeated sequences form a part of the minisatellite DNA sequence present in the nuclear DNA. Single copy genes contain unique DNA sequences. LINES and SINES are moderately repetitive DNA sequences, which are interspersed throughout the nuclear genome.

6.4 In which of the following cells/tissues would you expect the β-globin gene to be unmethylated?

A. Erythroid cells
B. Kidney
C. Liver
D. Skin
E. White blood cells

6.4: Correct answer = A. The globin gene is unmethylated and active in erythroid cells, which synthesize hemoglobin. All other cell types do not require globulin protein synthesis and are, therefore, methylated and silenced.

6.5 Modification of histone proteins by acetylation will

A. Add methyl groups to the regulatory region of the target genes
B. Increase the condensation of chromatin
C. Increase the affinity of histones for DNA
D. Increase the transcription of target genes
E. Inhibit RNA polymerase activity

6.5: Correct answer = D. Modification of histones by acetylation decreases the affinity for DNA and causes decompaction of the chromatin, allowing gene transcription to take place. Histones do not control the addition of methyl groups to DNA. Deacetylation of histones increases their affinity to DNA. Modification of histones by acetylation will generally result in activating RNA polymerase to bind DNA and initiate transcription.

7 DNA Replication

I. OVERVIEW

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) contains all the information necessary for the development and function of all organisms. The replication or copying of cellular DNA occurs during the S or synthesis phase of the cell cycle (see Chapter 20). This is a necessary process to ensure that the instructions in DNA are faithfully passed on to the newly produced cells. In cell nuclei, DNA and protein complexes known as **chromatin** make up the **chromosomes** (see Chapter 6). Because replication can occur only on a single-stranded DNA template, the double-stranded DNA of the chromatin must first unwind. Once unwound, both strands of DNA are copied simultaneously. This process requires proteins to break open the double-stranded DNA, forming a **replication fork**. The main enzyme that catalyzes the formation of new DNA strands is **DNA polymerase**. Faithful copying of DNA requires that the DNA polymerase recognize nucleotides on the opposite strand of the DNA and has a proofreading function to recognize and correct any mistakes that have been made. DNA that is being replicated experiences **torsion,** or twisting, created during the unwinding of DNA. Enzymes called **topoisomerases** act to reduce this torsional force. (Topoisomerases are an important pharmacological target for drug agents designed to inhibit DNA replication.) After replication is complete, the parent and the daughter strands of DNA must re-form a double-stranded structure as well as reestablish the chromatin structure. This area of eukaryotic molecular biology is one in which gaps in our knowledge exist. The steps and processes known to occur in the replication of prokaryotic (bacterial) DNA generally apply to eukaryotic DNA replication as well.

II. DNA STRUCTURE

The structure of DNA was first described by James Watson and Francis Crick in 1953. DNA exists as a **double helix**, with about ten nucleotide pairs per helical turn. The spatial relationship between the two strands creates furrows in DNA—the **major and minor grooves**. Each of the two helical strands is composed of a sugar phosphate backbone with attached bases and is connected to a complementary strand by hydrogen bonding. The sugar in DNA is **deoxyribose**. The pairing of the nucleotide bases occurs such that adenine (A) binds with thymine (T) and guanine (G) with cytosine (C).

A. Primary structure

The order of the nucleotide bases determines the primary structure or sequence of the DNA. Overall, DNA is a high molecular weight

double-stranded polymer (>10^8) of deoxyribonucleotides joined by covalent **phosphodiester bonds**. The phosphodiester bonds are bonds that form between the 3′-OH groups of the deoxyribose sugar on one nucleotide with the 5′ phosphate groups on the adjacent nucleotide. The phosphodiester linkages between individual deoxynucleotides are directional in nature. The 5′ phosphate group of one nucleotide is bound to the 3′ hydroxyl group of the next nucleotide. The two complementary strands of DNA double helix therefore run in **antiparallel** directions. The 5′ end of one strand is base-paired with the 3′ end of the other strand. This primary structure is stabilized by two types of noncovalent interactions (Figure 7.1).

B. Noncovalent interactions

One type of noncovalent interaction within DNA includes **hydrogen bonds** that hold together the two strands of DNA within the double helical structure. Nucleotide bases on one strand form these bonds with nucleotide bases on the opposite strand. Adenine forms two hydrogen

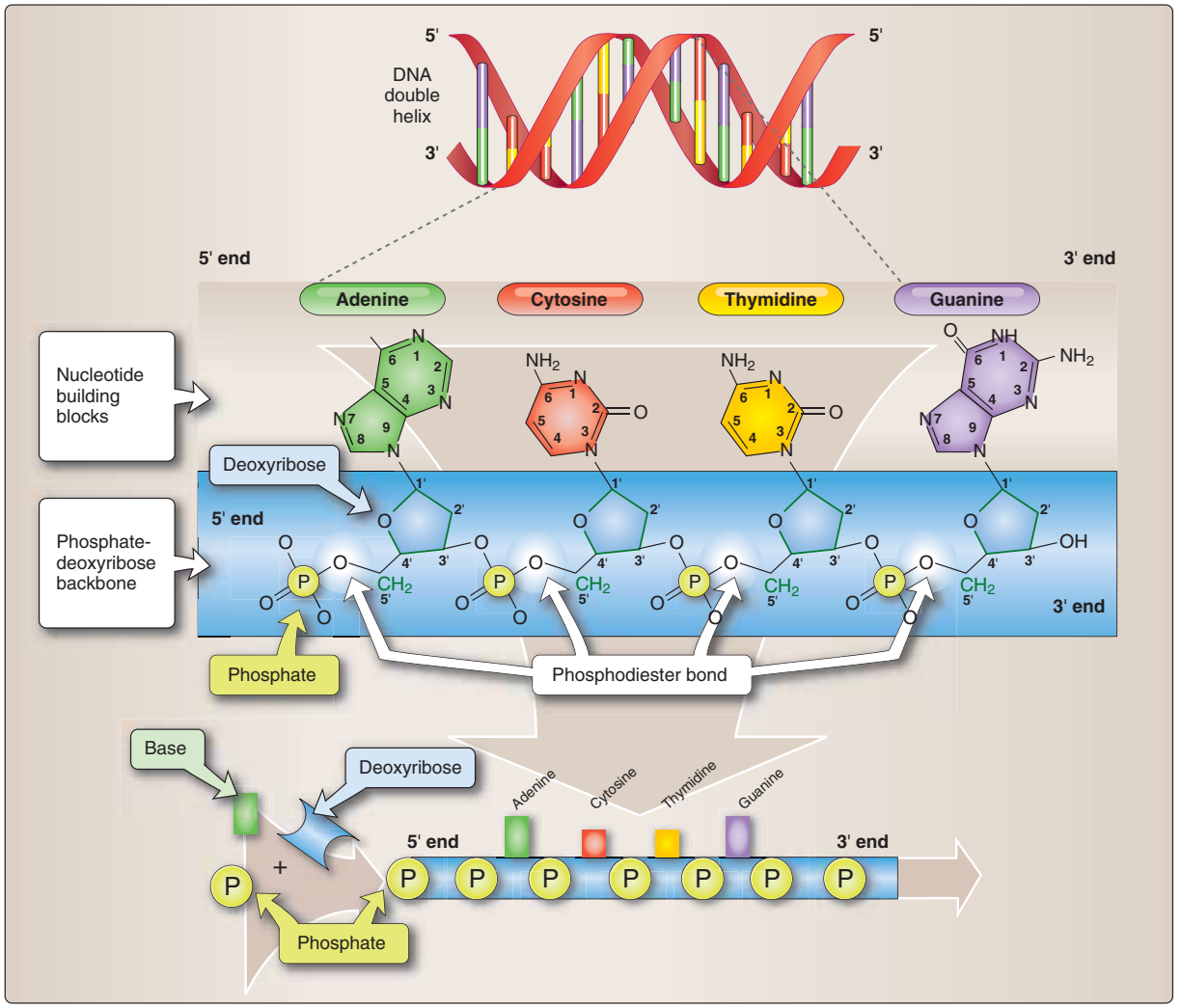


Figure 7.1
The covalent structure of DNA.

bonds with thymine, while guanine and cytosine are connected by three hydrogen bonds. This type of base pairing in the interior of the helix stabilizes the interior of the double-stranded DNA because the stacked bases repel each other due to their **hydrophobic** nature. The hydrogen bonds between bases can be made and broken easily, allowing DNA to undergo accurate replication and repair (Figure 7.2).

III. CHARACTERISTICS OF EUKARYOTIC DNA SYNTHESIS

During the process of eukaryotic DNA replication, the enzymes known as DNA polymerases select the nucleotide that is to be added to the 3′-OH end of the growing chain and catalyze the formation of the phosphodiester bond. The substrates for DNA polymerases are the four deoxynucleoside triphosphates (dATP, dCTP, dGTP, and dTTP) and a single-stranded template DNA. There are distinct differences in the mechanism of DNA replication between prokaryotic and eukaryotic DNA. The focus here is on the eukaryotic processes and the following are some of the characteristic features of the eukaryotic DNA replication.

A. Semiconservative with respect to parental strand

One characteristic of eukaryotic DNA replication is that it is a semiconservative process. When DNA is replicated during the process of cell division, one parent or original strand of DNA is distributed to each daughter duplex in combination with a newly synthesized strand with an antiparallel orientation. Because genetic information on both strands is similar, at the end of the process, each of the two daughter strands has half new DNA and half old DNA; thus, the process is semiconservative (Figure 7.3).

B. Bidirectional with multiple origins of replication

Another characteristic of eukaryotic DNA replication is that it is bidirectional and starts in several different locations at once. DNA is copied at about 50 base pairs (bp) per second. For eukaryotic DNA consisting of 3×10^9 nucleotides, this process would take an extremely long time rather than the hours it actually does. This hastening of the replication process is made possible by the fact that replication begins at several sites on linear DNA and is completed by the end of S phase of the cell cycle (Chapter 20). As replication nears completion, "bubbles" of newly replicated DNA come together forming two new molecules (Figure 7.4).

C. Primed by short stretches of RNA

A third characteristic of eukaryotic DNA replication is that it requires a short stretch of ribonucleic acid (RNA) for the initiation of the process. DNA polymerases cannot initiate synthesis of a complementary strand of DNA on a totally single-stranded template. A specific DNA polymerase–associated enzyme, called **DNA primase**, synthesizes short stretches of RNA that are complementary and antiparallel to the DNA template. The RNA primer is later removed. Chain elongation is carried out by DNA polymerases by the addition of deoxyribonucleotides to the 3′ end of the growing chain. The sequence of nucleotides that are added is dictated by the base sequence of the

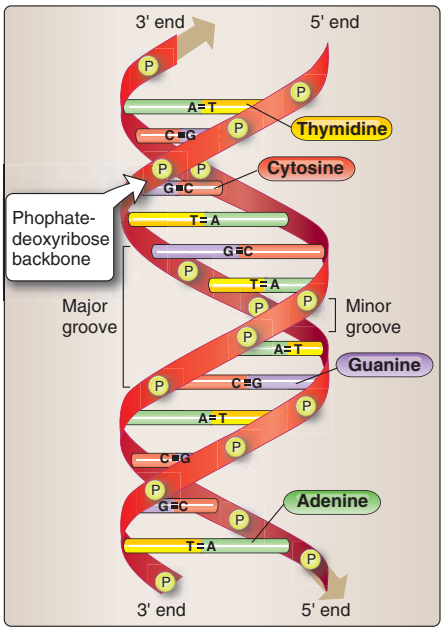


Figure 7.2
DNA double helix.

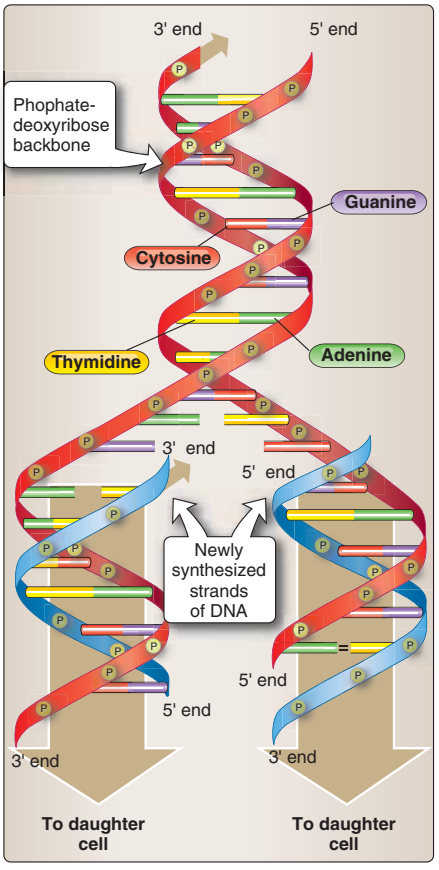


Figure 7.3
DNA synthesis is semiconservative with respect to the parental strand.

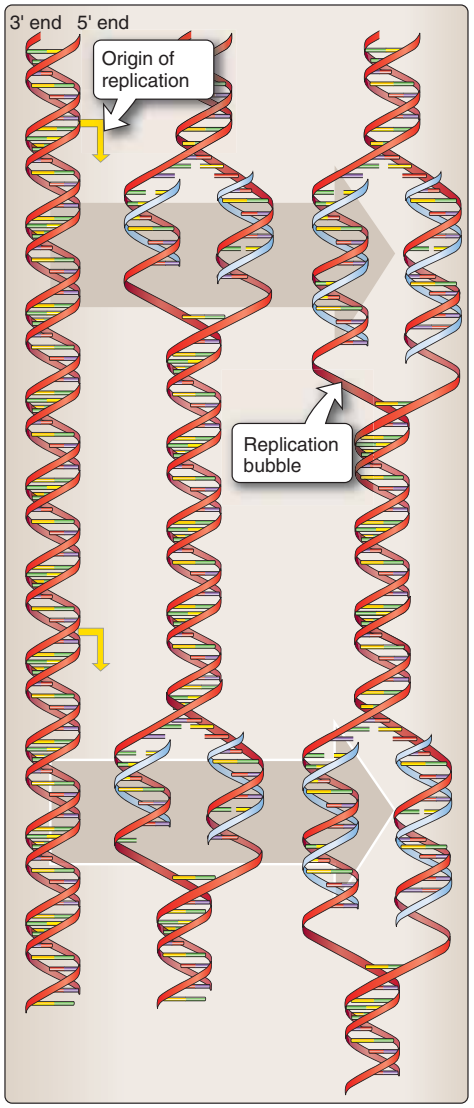


Figure 7.4
Bidirectional with multiple origins of replication.

template (or coding) strand with which the incoming nucleotides are paired (Figure 7.5).

D. Semidiscontinuous with respect to the synthesis of new DNA

An additional characteristic of eukaryotic DNA replication is that it is a semidiscontinuous process. A new strand of DNA is always synthesized in the 5′ to 3′ direction. Because the two strands of DNA are antiparallel, the strand being copied is read from the 3′ end toward the 5′ end.

All DNA polymerases function in the same manner: They "read" a parental strand 3′ to 5′ and synthesize a complementary antiparallel new strand 5′ to 3′.

Because parental DNA has two antiparallel strands, the DNA polymerase synthesizes one strand in the 5′ to 3′ continuously. This strand is called the **leading strand**. The continuous or leading strand is the one in which 5′ to 3′ synthesis proceeds in the same direction as replication fork movement. The other new strand is synthesized 5′ to 3′, but discontinuously, creating fragments that ligate (join) together later. This strand is called the discontinuous or **lagging strand** and is the one in which 5′ to 3′ synthesis proceeds in the direction opposite to the direction of the fork movement. The DNA synthesized on the lagging strand as short fragments (100 to 200 nucleotides) is called the **Okazaki fragments**. Although overall chain growth occurs at the base of the replication fork, synthesis of the lagging strand occurs discontinuously in the opposite direction but with exclusive 5′-3′ polarity (Figure 7.6).

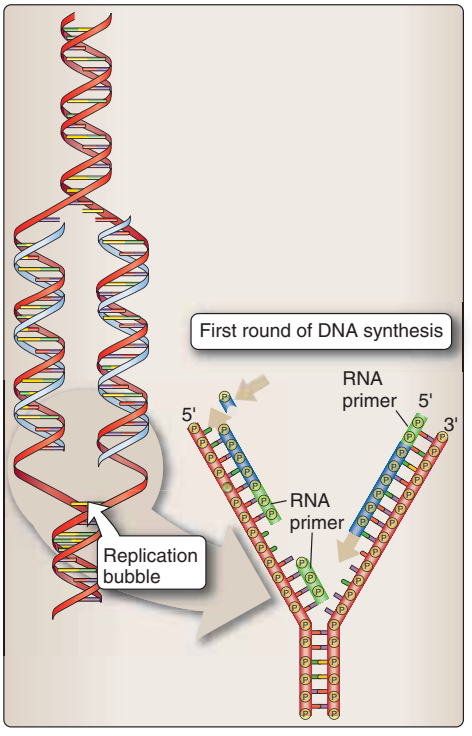


Figure 7.5
Primed by short stretches of RNA.

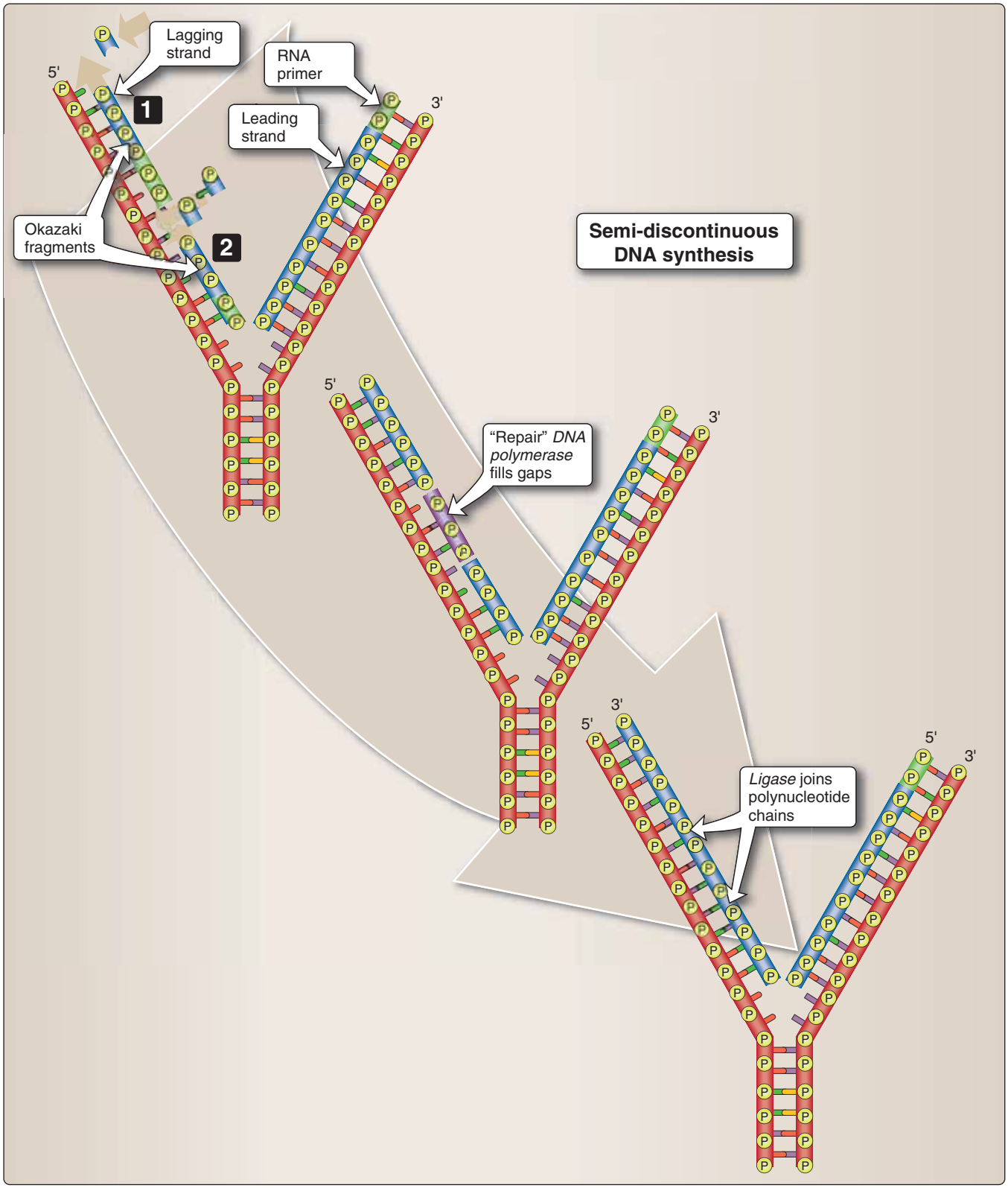


Figure 7.6
Semidiscontinuous with respect to the synthesis of new DNA. (Not to Scale)

IV. PROTEINS INVOLVED IN DNA SYNTHESIS

Each step in the process of eukaryotic DNA replication requires the function of proteins (Figure 7.7). For example, it is important for the double-stranded DNA to open up at the multiple origins of replication and have proteins recognize and bind to DNA and prime it for replication. This process involves proteins to break the double-stranded DNA, keep the DNA structure open, synthesize a new strand, and, finally, put them together as one long linear DNA. Other proteins are needed to remove torsion that can occur when opening a double helix. Some of these proteins are described below.

A. DNA polymerases

Several DNA polymerases are involved in DNA replication and each of them possesses distinct activities (Table 7.1). The individual eukaryotic DNA polymerases have particular associated activities. They function as a complex to initiate DNA synthesis. Some DNA polymerases have 3′-5′ exonuclease activity, or **proofreading** ability, that allows them to remove nucleotides that are not part of the double

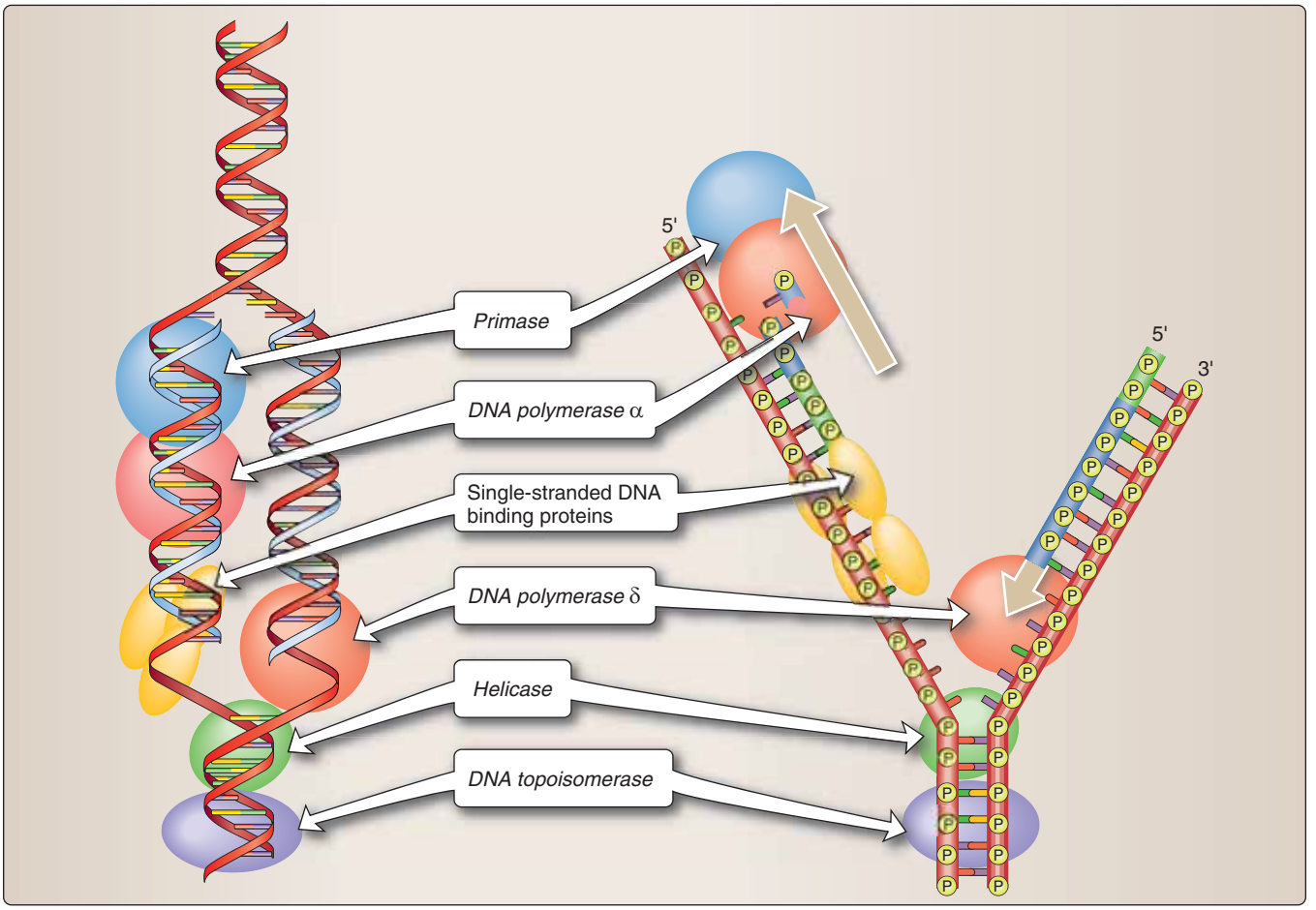


Figure 7.7
Proofreading activity of some DNA polymerases.

Table 7.1
PROPERTIES OF EUKARYOTIC DNA POLYMERASES

Polymerase	α	β	γ	δ	ε
Location	Nucleus	Nucleus	Mitochondria	Nucleus	Nucleus
Replication	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes
Repair	No	Yes	No	No	Yes
Associated functions:					
5′-3′ polymerase	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
3′-5′ exonuclease	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
5′-3′ exonuclease	No	No	No	No	No

helix. The enzyme removes mismatched residues, thus performing an editing function. This activity enhances the fidelity of DNA replication by rechecking the correctness of base pairing before proceeding with polymerization (Figure 7.8). Eukaryotic polymerases *do not* possess 5′-3′ exonuclease activity, an activity that is important for removing primers in prokaryotes. In eukaryotes, primer removal is done by another enzyme.

B. DNA Helicases

DNA helicases are a class of motor proteins required to unwind short segments of the parental duplex DNA. These enzymes use energy generated from nucleotide (adenosine triphosphate [ATP]) hydrolysis to catalyze the strand separation and formation of the replication fork during DNA synthesis.

C. DNA Primases

DNA primases initiate the synthesis of an RNA molecule essential for priming DNA synthesis on both the leading and the lagging strands. The first few nucleotides are ribonucleotides and the subsequent ones may be either ribonucleotides or deoxyribonucleotides.

D. Single-stranded DNA binding proteins

Single-stranded DNA binding proteins prevent premature annealing of the single-stranded DNA to double-stranded DNA. An important function of single-stranded DNA proteins during the process of DNA replication is to keep the strands protected until the complementary strands are produced (Figure 7.7).

E. DNA ligase

DNA ligase is an enzyme that catalyzes the sealing of nicks (breaks) remaining in the DNA after DNA polymerase fills the gaps left by RNA primers. DNA ligase is required to create the final phosphodiester bond between the adjacent nucleotides on a strand of DNA (Figure 7.9).

F. Topoisomerases

Most cellular DNAs have fewer right-hand turns than expected from the number of their base pairs. This underwound condition (negative

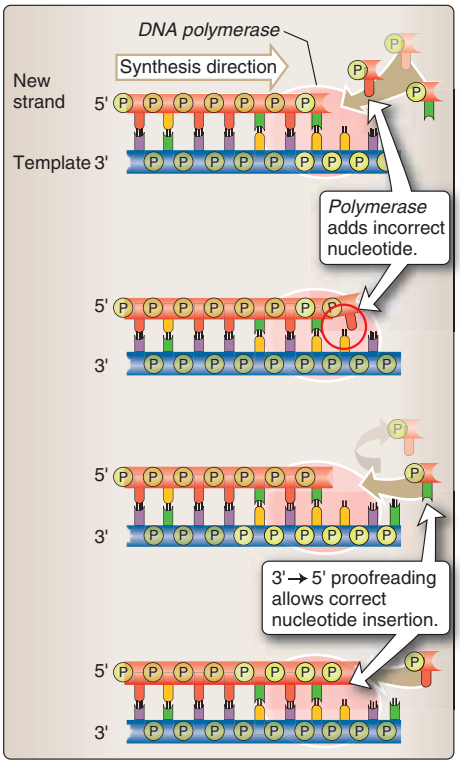


Figure 7.8
Proteins involved in DNA synthesis.

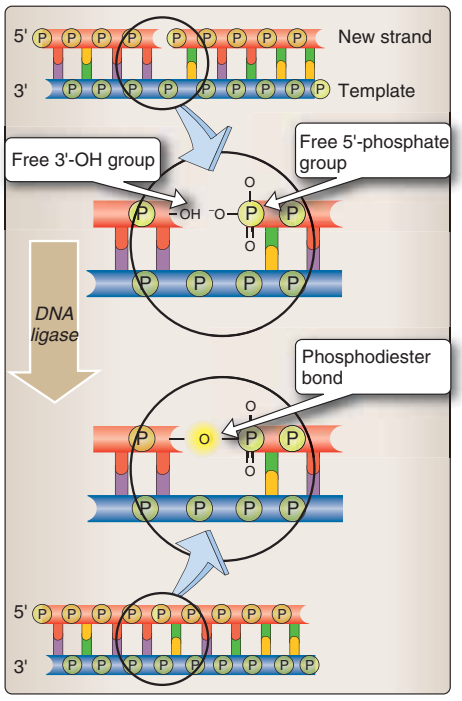


Figure 7.9
Mechanism of action of DNA ligase.

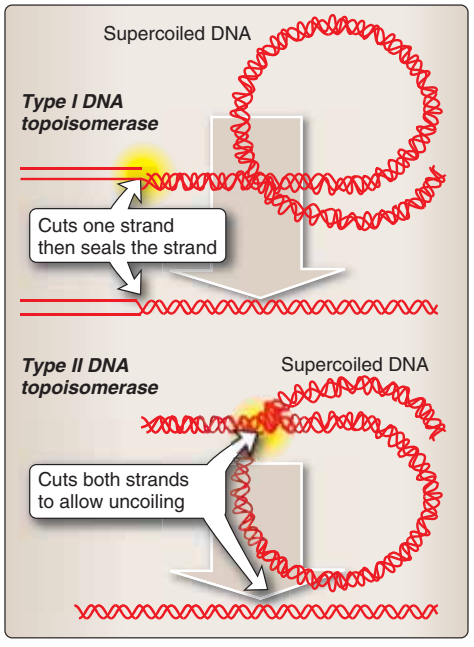


Figure 7.10
Mechanism of action of topoisomerases.

supercoils) facilitates the unwinding of the double helix during replication and transcription. As the replication fork moves along the helix, rotation of the daughter molecules around one another causes the DNA strands to become overwound. The supertwisting of DNA can be removed by enzymes known collectively as topoisomerases. These enzymes relieve torsional stress in DNA by inducing reversible single-stranded breaks in DNA. The phosphodiester bond either in one strand or in both strands is cleaved initially. After rotation of the DNA around its axis, the enzyme seals the nick.

1. **Topoisomerase I:** This form of topoisomerase catalyzes breaks in only one strand of the double-stranded DNA, allowing unwinding of the broken strand and then rejoining of the broken ends by catalyzing the formation of new phosphodiester bonds (Figure 7.10).

2. **Topoisomerase II:** This form of topoisomerase catalyzes breaks in both strands of the double-stranded DNA, allowing both broken strands to unwind, and then catalyzes the formation of new phosphodiester bonds (see Figure 7.10).

Topoisomerase activities as targets for antibiotics

DNA gyrase is a bacterial type II topoisomerase that functions ahead of the replication fork. It relaxes DNA molecules in an ATP-dependent fashion. **Nalidixic acid** and **norfloxacin** are drugs used in the treatment of urinary tract and other infections. These compounds inhibit bacterial DNA gyrase by inhibiting the strand-cutting reaction. Human type II topoisomerase is much less sensitive to the action of these two drugs. **Doxorubicin, etoposide,** and **teniposide** inhibit human topoisomerase II and are used in the treatment of several neoplastic diseases (cancers). These drugs act by enhancing the rate at which target topoisomerase II cleaves DNA and by reducing the rate at which these breaks are resealed.

G. Telomerase

Telomerase is an enzyme that helps to maintain the telomere. The telomere, a protective repetitive stretch of DNA complexed with protein at the end of a chromosome, shortens with every cell division. Telomere shortening is recognized as and is a part of the normal aging process. Telomeres are important chromosomal structures and allow the cell to distinguish intact chromosomes from broken chromosomes and to protect chromosomes from degradation. They also serve as substrates for normal replication mechanisms. In most organisms, telomeric DNA consists of a tandem array of very simple sequence of DNA (in humans, it is TTAGGG).

The telomere maintenance enzyme, telomerase, is an RNA-dependent DNA polymerase, which adds TTAGGG repeats to the ends of the chromosomes. The telomerase ribonucleoprotein complex contains an RNA template, which is an integral component of the enzyme. With the help of its RNA template, it adds a series of DNA repeats to the leading strand. This addition allows the lagging strand to be completed by DNA polymerase (Figure 7.11). Some normal cells

(normally regenerating tissues, stem cells, and progenitor cells) express telomerase. Intact telomere function is required for tissue homeostasis. Cancer cells appear to reactivate this enzyme, which circumvents the problem of end replication and immortalizes them.

Cloned sheep, Dolly, shows her age

Dolly was the first animal to be cloned in 1997, using somatic cells and the process of nuclear transfer. The somatic cells were obtained from the mammary gland of a donor sheep. Dolly, then, is a genetic duplicate of the donor sheep. While she appeared normal at birth and had normal development until age 3, chromosomal examination revealed that her telomeres were shorter than would have been expected for a sheep of her chronological age. In fact, her telomeres were found to be the average length of those expected in a 6-year-old sheep—the age of the ewe from whose cells Dolly was cloned. Dolly died of lung disease at 6 years of age, leading some scientists to believe her biological age was indeed much older than her chronological age.

V. DNA DAMAGE

DNA damage can result from both endogenous and exogenous causes. Most DNA damage is repaired before DNA is replicated. Mutagenic agents (ones that induce mutations) are therefore most effective in causing their damage during S phase of the cell cycle when the new DNA is being synthesized.

A. Basal mutation rate

The rate of mutations occurring from endogenous (internal cellular) causes is termed the basal mutation rate. This is the mutation rate observed in the absence of environmental mutagens and is caused by errors during DNA replication. Spontaneous tautomeric shifts (changes from one natural structural form to another) in the bases contribute to these errors. Fortunately, these bases spend very little time in their less stable forms, so mutations caused by tautomeric shift are rare (Figure 7.12).

B. Exogenous agents

Outside influences can also affect the mutation rate of DNA. For example, **ionizing radiation,** including X-rays and radioactive radiation, is sufficiently energy rich to react with DNA. Ionizing radiation penetrates the whole body and, therefore, can cause both somatic (cellular) and germ line (oocyte or sperm) mutations. (Ultraviolet radiation is nonionizing and cannot penetrate beyond the outer layers of the skin. Nevertheless, ultraviolet radiation from sunlight can be mutagenic. [See nucleotide excision repair below.]) Some chemicals in the environment, including **hydrocarbon**s, are known to induce mutations. Hydrocarbons found in cigarette smoke are well-known mutagens. **Oxidative free radicals**, produced from internal or external sources, can also induce DNA damage. Chemicals used

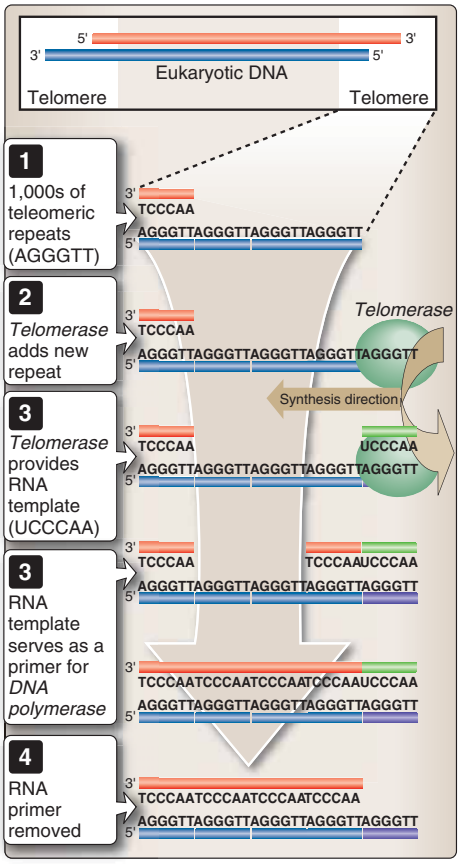


Figure 7.11
Mechanism of action of telomerase.

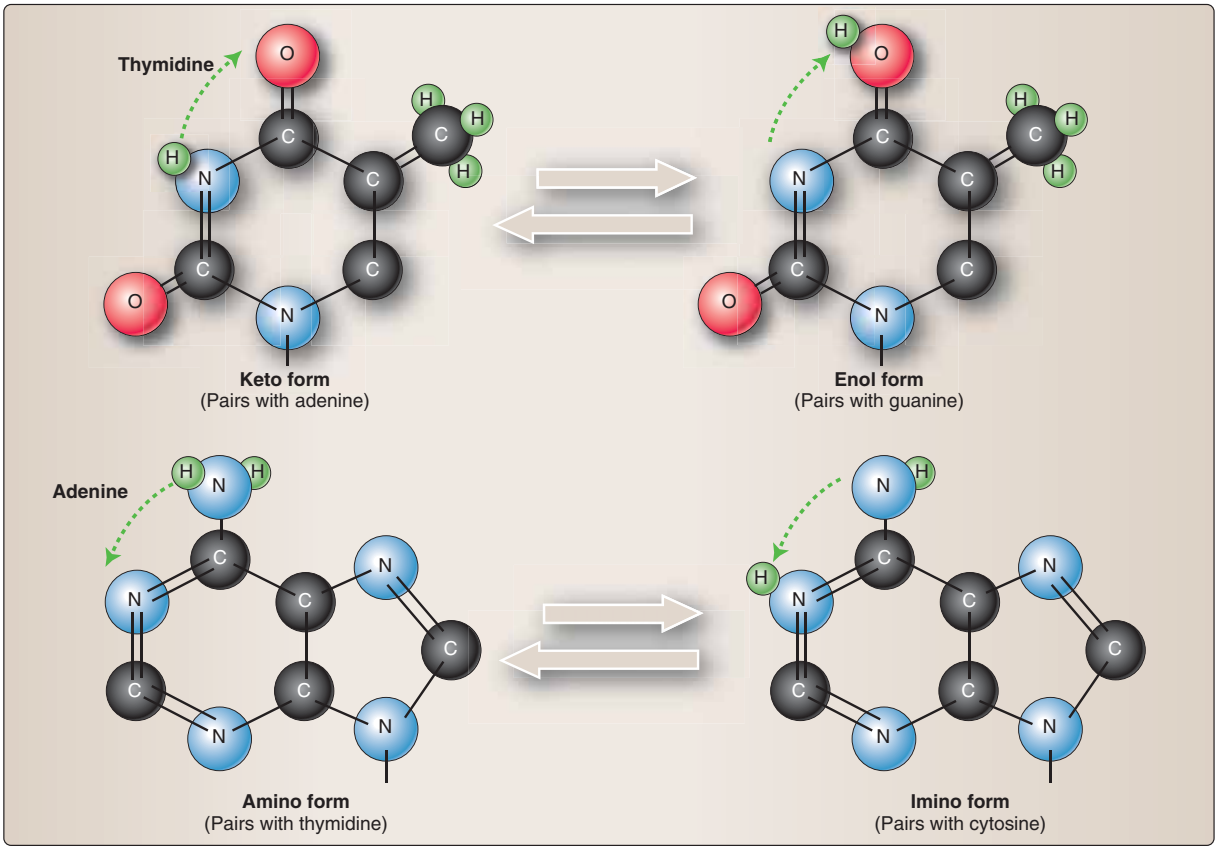


Figure 7.12
Bases in DNA undergo tautomeric shifts.

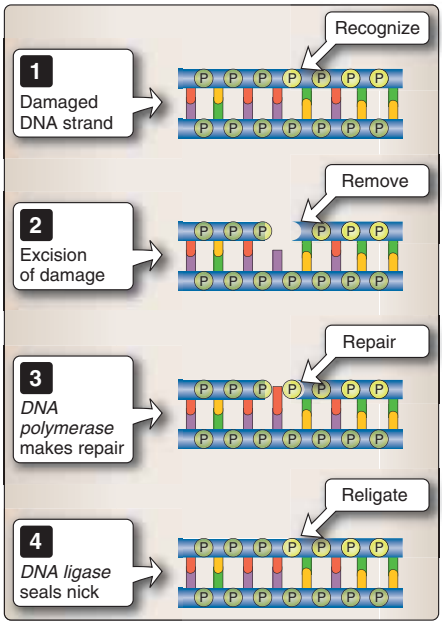


Figure 7.13
General scheme of action of DNA repair systems.

in **chemotherapy**, especially for the treatment of cancer, can also induce mutations.

VI. DNA REPAIR SYSTEMS

DNA repair is necessary not only because cells are continuously exposed to environmental mutagens but also because thousands of mutations would otherwise occur spontaneously in every cell each day during DNA replication. A variety of strategies exist for repairing damage to DNA. In most of these cases, the cells use the undamaged strand of DNA as a template to correct the mistakes in DNA. When both strands are damaged, the cell resorts to the use of the sister chromatid (the second copy of DNA present in diploid cells) or to an error-prone recovery mechanism. All types of repair mechanisms are made up of enzymes that follow a general scheme of recognition, removal, repair, and religation. However, depending on the type of damage, different enzymes are employed (Figure 7.13).

A. Mismatch repair

Mismatch repair deals with correcting the mismatches of normal bases that fail to maintain normal Watson-Crick base pairing

(A to T, C to G). This failure is typically due to the mistakes made by DNA polymerase during replication. In eukaryotes, recognition of a mismatch is accomplished by several different proteins including those encoded by *MSH2, MLH1, MSH6, PMS1*, and *PMS2* genes (Figure 7.14). Mutations in either of these genes predispose the person to an inherited form of colon cancer **(hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer [HNPCC])** at a young age. Other cancers (endometrial, ovarian, stomach, etc.) are known to occur in the affected families.

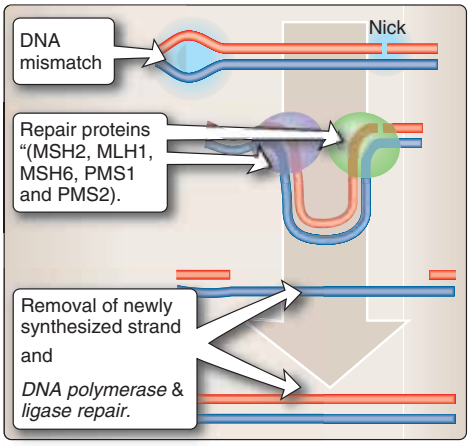


Figure 7.14
Mismatch repair.

B. Base excision repair

Base excision repair is required to correct the spontaneous depurination and spontaneous deamination (removal of amine groups) that happen to bases present in DNA. About 10,000 purine (adenine and guanine) bases are lost per cell per day. Spontaneous deamination of cytosine causes it to be converted to uracil, normally found in RNA and not in DNA. Base excision repair involves recognition and removal of nucleotides that have lost the bases or have been modified (Figure 7.15).

C. Nucleotide excision repair

This type of repair is necessary to remove ultraviolet light–induced DNA damage as well as DNA damage from environmental chemicals. UV light is nonionizing and cannot penetrate beyond the outer layer of the skin but it can nevertheless form **pyrimidine-pyrimidine dimers** from adjacent pyrimidine bases (cytosine and guanine) in DNA. Thus, sunlight is mutagenic, causing both sunburn and skin cancer (Figure 7.16).

This repair mechanism is also necessary to recognize chemically induced bulky additions to DNA that distort the shape of the DNA double helix and cause mutations. Carcinogens, such as benzopyrene in cigarette smoke, react with DNA, causing mutations. The enzymes involved in this repair pathway consist of several proteins that are required for the excision of damaged bases in DNA by a single repair system.

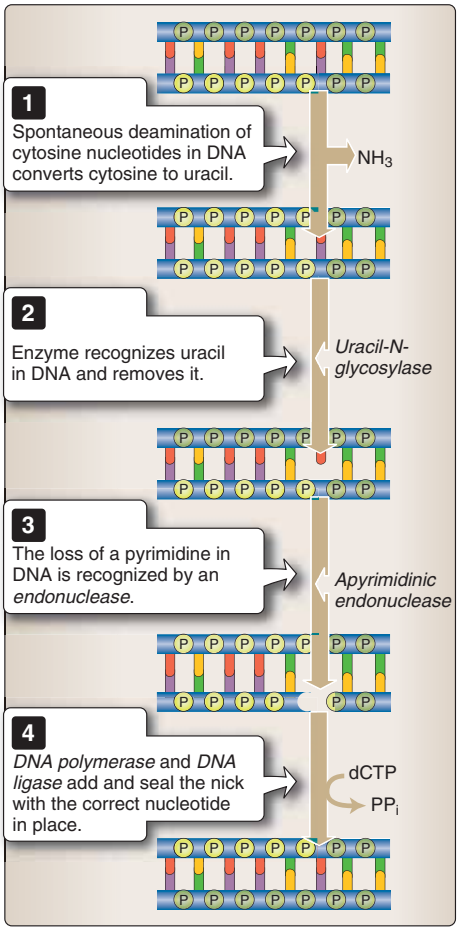


Figure 7.15
Base excision repair.

Xeroderma pigmentosum

Xeroderma pigmentosum is a genetic disorder of DNA repair in which patients carry mutations in the nucleotide repair enzymes. Analysis of humans with xeroderma pigmentosum suggests that 10 proteins may be required for the excision of damaged bases in DNA by a single repair system. The condition is inherited in an autosomal recessive fashion and is characterized by defective repair of thymine dimers. Affected individuals are prone to develop multiple skin cancers. The reduced ability to repair DNA leads to somatic mutations, some of which result in malignant transformation (Figure 7.17).

D. Double-stranded DNA repair

When damage from ionizing radiation, oxidative free radicals, or chemotherapeutic agents causes both the strands of DNA to be severed,

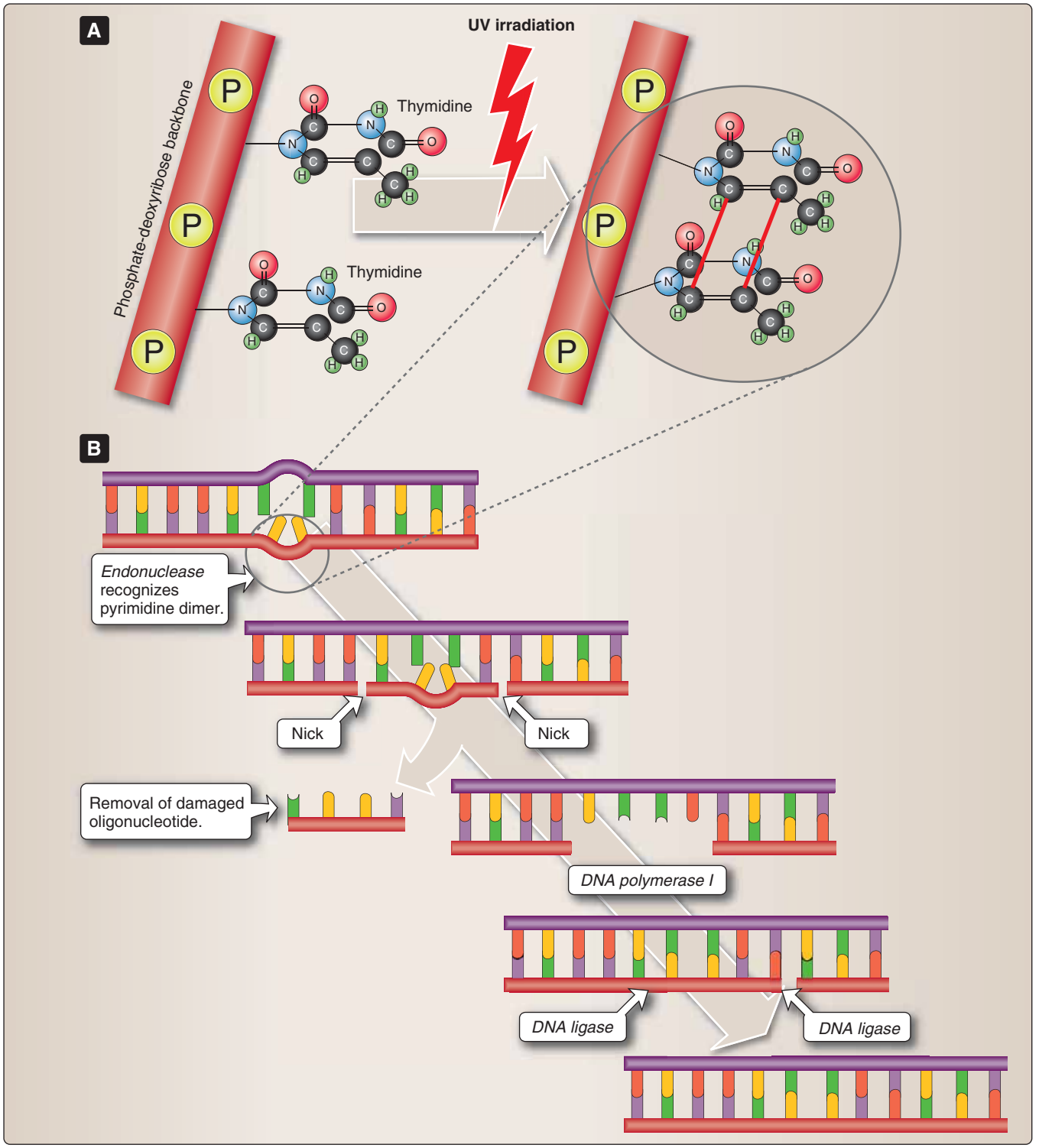


Figure 7.16
A. Pyrimidine-pyrimidine dimer formation in DNA. **B.** Nucleotide excision repair.

two types of repair mechanisms exist to correct the damage, homologous recombination and nonhomologous end joining (Figure 7.18).

1. **Homologous recombination:** This type of repair takes advantage of sequence information available from the unaffected homologous chromosome for proper repair of breaks. **BRCA 1 and 2** proteins normally play a role in the homologous recombination process. Mutations in these genes increase breast cancer risk. Fanconi's anemia is a condition caused by failures in DNA recombination repair enzymes to correct the defects by homologous recombination. Several Fanconi's anemia proteins form complexes and interact with the BRCA proteins.
2. **Nonhomologous end joining:** This process permits the joining of ends even if there is no sequence similarity between them. It is error prone since it can also introduce mutations during repair. Nonhomologous end joining is especially important before the cell has replicated its DNA because there is no template available for repair by homologous recombination.

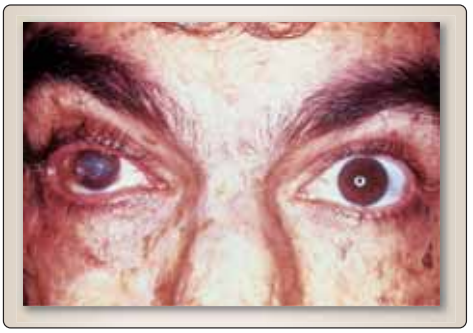


Figure 7.17
Patient with xeroderma pigmentosum.

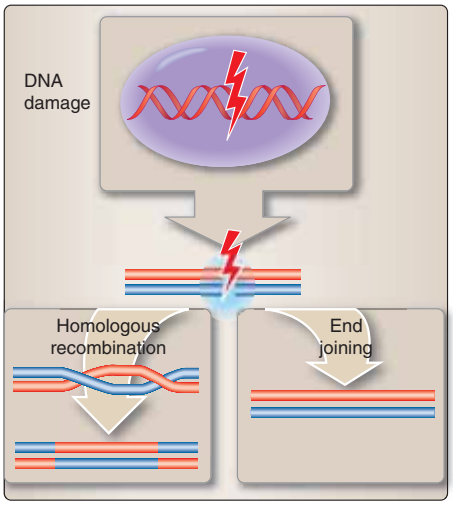


Figure 7.18
Double-stranded DNA break repair.

Chapter Summary

- Eukaryotic DNA replication is bidirectional, is semiconservative, requires a primer, and can only occur in the 5′-3′ direction.
- Several proteins are required for DNA synthesis; there are differences between the prokaryotic and eukaryotic enzymes that function in DNA synthesis.
- DNA polymerase can "proofread," which is made possible by its 3′-5′ exonuclease activity. This reduces the copying errors made by DNA polymerase.
- Topoisomerases are required to remove torsional stress in DNA. Several drugs are the targets of topoisomerases.
- Telomerase is an RNA-dependent DNA polymerase and can extend telomeres. This activity, however, is not present in normal diploid cells.
- Basal mutation rate refers to mistakes made endogenously in the cell and is usually a result of errors by DNA polymerase during replication.
- A number of environmental agents can cause mutations in DNA—UV light and other ionizing radiations, chemicals, and chemotherapeutic agents.
- Several types of repair mechanisms exist to correct the mistakes in DNA structure.
- Most of the repair mechanisms depend on the presence of an intact complementary DNA sequence.
- Double-stranded DNA breaks are repaired by two different processes, one requiring a homologous chromosome and the other error-prone mechanism of nonhomologous end joining.

Study Questions

7.1 During eukaryotic DNA replication, topoisomerases

A. Catalyze the synthesis of an RNA primer on the lagging strand
B. Remove the incorrectly base-paired nucleotides through a 3′-5′ exonuclease activity
C. Stabilize single-stranded DNA in the region of the replication fork
D. Cut and reseal DNA in advance of the replication fork to eliminate supercoiling
E. Add nucleotides to the growing strand in the 5′-3′ direction

7.2 Which of the following functions is associated with eukaryotic DNA polymerase during DNA replication?

A. Continuous 5′-3′ DNA synthesis on the lagging strand
B. Energy-dependent formation of the replication fork
C. Proofreading newly synthesized DNA
D. Discontinuous 5′-3′ DNA synthesis on the leading strand
E. Removal of primers using 5′-3′ exonuclease activity

7.3 Defective DNA mismatch repair can result in the development of

A. Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer
B. Skin cancer
C. Sunburns
D. UV light–induced damage
E. Xeroderma pigmentosum

7.4 A 6-year-old male patient presents with photosensitivity and multiple skin tumors. Which of the following types of DNA damage most likely accounts for his condition?

A. Double-strand DNA damage
B. Deaminated cytosines
C. Mismatched base pairs
D. Thymine dimers
E. Depurinated DNA

7.5 Treatment of cycling cells with a topoisomerase II inhibitor, such as doxorubicin, will result directly in

A. A decrease in the time needed for DNA to replicate
B. A decreased number of errors during replication of DNA
C. Lengthening of the ends of chromosomes
D. Removal of torsion from replicating DNA
E. The cleavage of replicating DNA into smaller fragments

7.1: Correct answer = D. Topoisomerases remove torsion from replicating DNA by cutting the double-stranded DNA, relaxing the supercoiling followed by ligation. DNA primase catalyzes the addition of an RNA primer during DNA synthesis. Proofreading activity is a property of some DNA polymerases. Single-stranded DNA binding proteins protect the DNA during replication by binding to the open template strand. DNA polymerase synthesizes DNA in the 5′-3′ direction by adding nucleotides to the growing chain.

7.2: Correct answer = C. Some of the DNA polymerases possess proofreading ability, which is a 3′-5′ exonuclease activity. Continuous DNA synthesis occurs on the leading strand and discontinuous synthesis on the lagging strand. Helicase is necessary for breaking the hydrogen bonds between the strands of DNA using ATP hydrolysis. None of the DNA polymerases possess 5′-3′ exonuclease activity.

7.3: Correct answer = A. Loss of mismatch repair activity predisposes individuals to a form of colon cancer called hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. Loss of nucleotide excision repair results in a greater susceptibility to sunburns and skin cancer and an inability to repair UV light–induced pyrimidine-pyrimidine dimer formation. A loss of function of any of the enzymes involved in nucleotide excision repair predisposes individuals to the syndrome xeroderma pigmentosum.

7.4: Correct answer = D. Thymine-thymine dimers are the most common type of sunlight-induced DNA damage that is repaired by the nucleotide excision system. Double-stranded DNA break is repaired by one of two systems that utilize homologous chromosomes or cause nonhomologous end joining. Deaminated cytosines and depurinated DNA are fixed by the base excision repair system. Mismatches occur in the DNA due to errors made by the DNA polymerase during replication.

7.5: Correct answer = E. Doxorubicin inhibits the ligase-like action of topoisomerase II. Therefore, DNA will be initially cleaved and relaxed but will not be ligated back, resulting in the fragmentation of DNA. The action of this drug will slow down DNA replication and increase errors in the replicating DNA. Telomerase lengthens the ends of chromosomes, while inhibition of topoisomerases will cause more torsion in DNA.

8 Transcription

I. OVERVIEW

Genes are considered **expressed** when information contained within deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) affects the cell's properties and activities. Ribonucleic acid (RNA) mediates gene expression. Generally, every gene contains two classes of information, one specifies the primary structure of the final product and the other is critical for regulated expression of the gene's products. Both the timing and the amount of RNA produced are regulated during transcription. Messenger RNA encodes for the amino acid sequence of proteins, and both ribosomal and transfer RNAs directly participate in protein synthesis. Recently discovered microRNAs form yet another level of regulation affecting the stability and translation of the final product.

Gene expression begins with **transcription**, the DNA-directed synthesis of RNA. In order for an mRNA to be produced, a gene sequence on DNA needs to be identified, along with information necessary for the exact start site. Genes are split into exons and introns and the entire region is initially transcribed. This primary RNA transcript is processed before it exits the nucleus. Once created, mRNA is modified through RNA splicing, 5′ end capping, and the addition of a poly(A) tail after which the mature mRNA enters the cytoplasm.

II. TYPES OF RNA

Four distinct types of RNA are known; ribosomal (rRNA), transfer (tRNA), messenger (mRNA), and micro (miRNA), each with its own distinctive structure and function.

A. Ribosomal RNA

rRNA accounts for approximately 80% of total RNA in the cell and associates with proteins to form ribosomes. Eukaryotes have several different rRNA molecules: 18S, 28S, 5S, 5.8S, 18S, and 28S. Ribosomes are important during protein synthesis as they contain peptidyl transferase "activity," an activity catalyzed by ribozymes (Figure 8.1).

B. Transfer RNA

tRNA is the smallest of the three RNAs. It functions in the protein synthesis by virtue of its ability to carry the appropriate amino acid and also provide a mechanism by which nucleotide information can be translated to amino acid information through its anticodon.

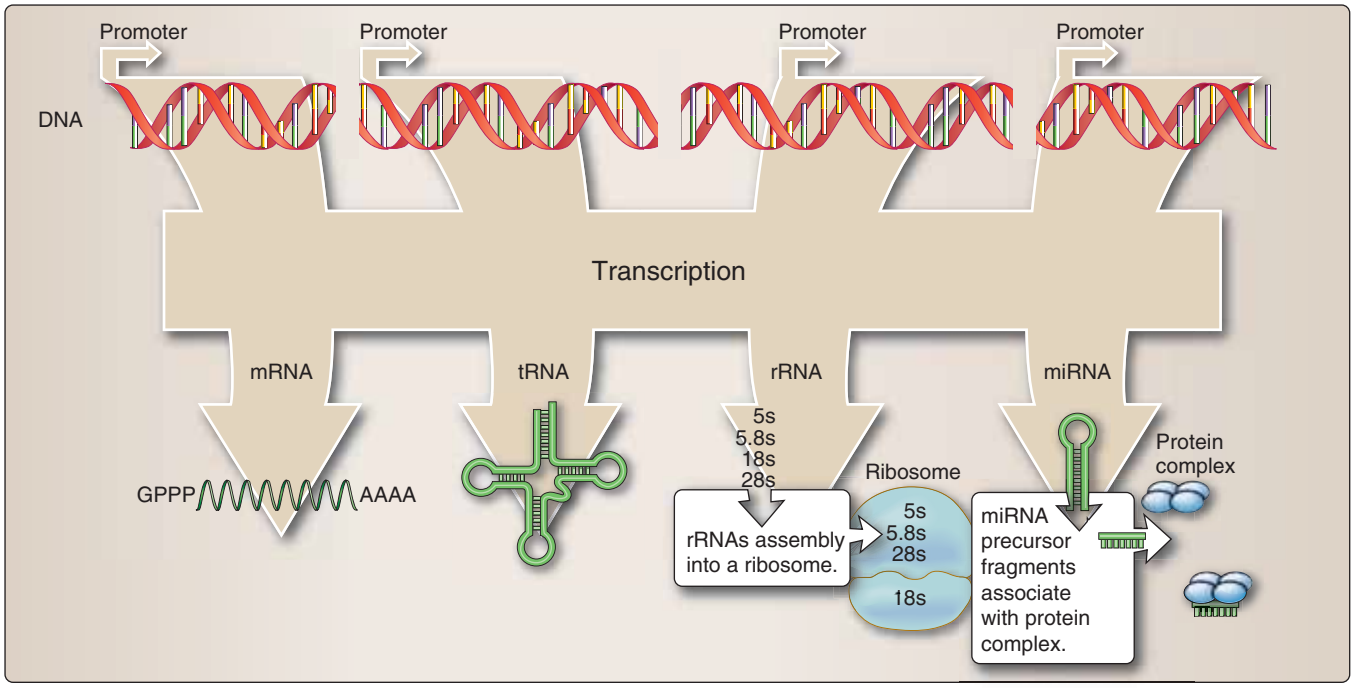


Figure 8.1
Different types of eukaryotic RNA.

C. Messenger RNA

mRNA carries genetic information from DNA to cytosol for translation. About 5% of the total RNA within a cell is mRNA. It is the most heterogeneous in terms of size and carries specific information necessary for the synthesis of different proteins.

D. MicroRNA

miRNAs, like the other RNA molecules, are encoded by genes and are single-stranded RNA molecules about 21 to 23 nucleotides in length. These newly discovered molecules are transcribed but not translated. They function in regulating gene expression by their ability to bind mRNA and to down-regulate the gene expression.

III. GENE STRUCTURE

The minimal linear sequence of genomic nucleic acids that encode proteins and structural RNA is termed a **gene** (Figure 8.2). Gene sequences are written from 5' (5 prime) to 3′. Eukaryotic genes are composed of coding exons, noncoding introns, and noncoding consensus sequences. Intron's (and exon?) number, size, location, and sequence differ from gene to gene. Noncoding regions at the 5′ end to the first exon are referred to as upstream sequences and those at the 3′ end are called downstream sequences.

A. Consensus sequences

Consensus sequences serve as recognition markers and are conserved. They define a potential DNA recognition site and are usually

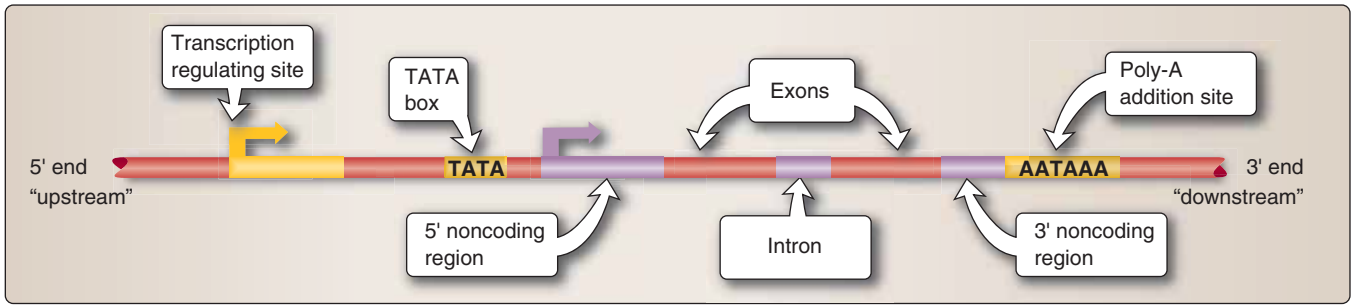


Figure 8.2
Structure of a typical eukaryotic gene.

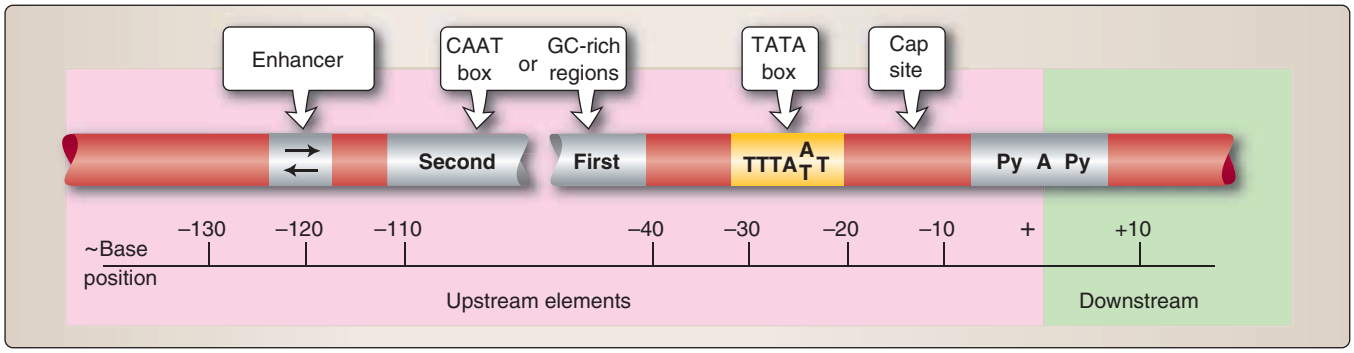


Figure 8.3
Promoter elements found upstream to the coding sequences in a gene.

bound by proteins (**transcription factors)** and other regulatory proteins that recognize a particular sequence.

1. **Promoters:** Promoters are DNA sequences that select or determine the start site of RNA synthesis. The consensus sequence for promoters typically has the sequence "TATA" (or variations of T and A) and is often located 15 to 30 base pairs (bp) upstream from the transcription start site, called a TATA box (Figure 8.3). Additional sequences that may be required for promoter function include the CAAT box and the GC box. In eukaryotes, proteins known as transcription or basal factors bind to the TATA box and facilitate the binding of RNA polymerase II.

2. **Splice acceptor and donor sequences: Splice acceptor and donor sequences** are one type of consensus sequence found at the 5′ and 3′ ends of introns. Introns nearly always begin with guanine and uracil (GU) nucleotides and end with adenine and guanine (AG) nucleotides which are preceded by a pyrimidine-rich tract (Figure 8.4). This particular consensus sequence is essential for splicing introns out of the primary transcript.

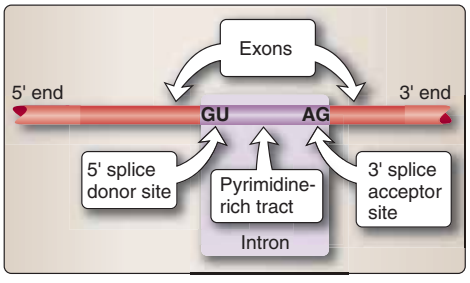


Figure 8.4
Splice acceptor and donor sequences.

IV. RNA SYNTHESIS

Synthesis of RNA from DNA occurs in the nucleus and is catalyzed by an RNA polymerase. RNA differs significantly from DNA in that it is single stranded and contains uracil (U) instead of the thymine (T) found in DNA. Protein-encoding genes produce mRNA as an intermediate to the cytosol for protein synthesis. Regulatory mRNA sequences are important for stability and translational efficiency. These are sequences in the 5′ and the 3′ ends of the mRNA, called untranslated regions (UTR), and are not part of the final protein product.

A. RNA polymerases

There are several distinct RNA polymerases in eukaryotic cells. RNA polymerase I synthesizes rRNAs involved in facilitating protein synthesis by the ribosome. RNA polymerase II is responsible for the synthesis of mRNA and miRNAs. RNA polymerase III catalyzes the synthesis of tRNAs.

B. Several proteins bind to the gene to be transcribed

The reaction catalyzed by RNA polymerase II requires the formation of a large complex of proteins over the start site of the gene. This preinitiation complex is important for accurately positioning the RNA polymerase II on DNA for initiation. This complex consists of general transcription factors and accessory factors.

C. Regulatory regions

An mRNA-producing eukaryotic gene can be divided into its coding and regulatory regions as defined by the transcription start site. The coding region contains the DNA sequence that is transcribed into mRNA, which is ultimately translated into a protein. The regulatory region consists of two classes of sequences (Figure 8.5). One class is responsible for ensuring basal expression and the other for regulated expression.

1. **Basal promoters:** Basal promoter sequences generally have two components. The proximal component, generally the TATA box,

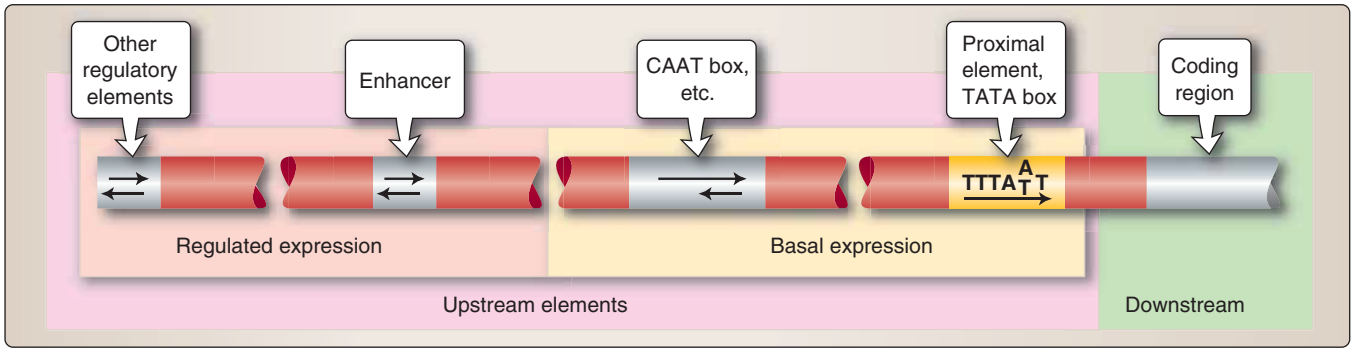


Figure 8.5
Two types of regulatory sequences.

directs RNA polymerase II to the correct site and a distal component specifies the frequency of initiation (CAAT and GC boxes).

The best studied of these is the CAAT box, but several other sequences may be used in various genes. These sequences determine how frequently the transcription event occurs. Mutations in these regions reduce the frequency of transcriptional starts 10 to 20 fold. Typical of these DNA sequences are the GC and CAAT boxes, so named because of the DNA sequences involved. These boxes bind specific proteins and the frequency of transcription initiation is a consequence of these protein-DNA interactions, whereas the protein-DNA interaction at the TATA box ensures fidelity of initiation.

2. **Enhancers and response elements:** Enhancers and response elements regulate gene expression. This class consists of sequences that enhance or repress expression and of others that mediate the response to various signals including hormones, chemicals, etc. Depending upon whether they increase or decrease the initiation rate of transcription, they are called enhancers or repressors and have been found both upstream and downstream from the transcription start site. In contrast to proximal and upstream promoter sequences, enhancers and repressors can exert their effects even when located hundreds or even thousands of bases away from the transcription units located on the same chromosome. They also function in an orientation-independent fashion. These regions are bound by proteins (specific transcription factors) that regulate gene expression and are discussed in Chapter 10.

D. Basal transcription complex formation

Basal transcription requires, in addition to RNA polymerase II, a number of transcription factors called A, B, D, E, F, and H, some of which are composed of several different subunits (Figure 8.6). These general transcription factors are conventionally abbreviated as TFII A, B, etc. (transcription factor, class II gene). TFIID (consists of TATA binding protein [TBP] + 8 to 10 TBP-associated factors), which binds to the TATA box, is the only one of these factors capable of binding to specific sequences of DNA. Binding of TBP to the TATA box in the minor groove causes a bend in the DNA helix. This bending is thought to facilitate the interaction of TBP-associated proteins with other components of the transcription initiation complex and, possibly, with other factors bound to the upstream sequences.

E. A single-stranded RNA is produced from a double-stranded DNA

Eukaryotic RNA polymerase is a DNA-dependent RNA polymerase as it uses information from DNA to synthesize a complementary sequence. Only one strand of the gene is used as a template for transcription and is referred to as the template strand. The product is a complementary single-stranded RNA. RNA polymerase reads DNA 3′-5′ and produces an RNA molecule complementary to it (see Figure 8.6).

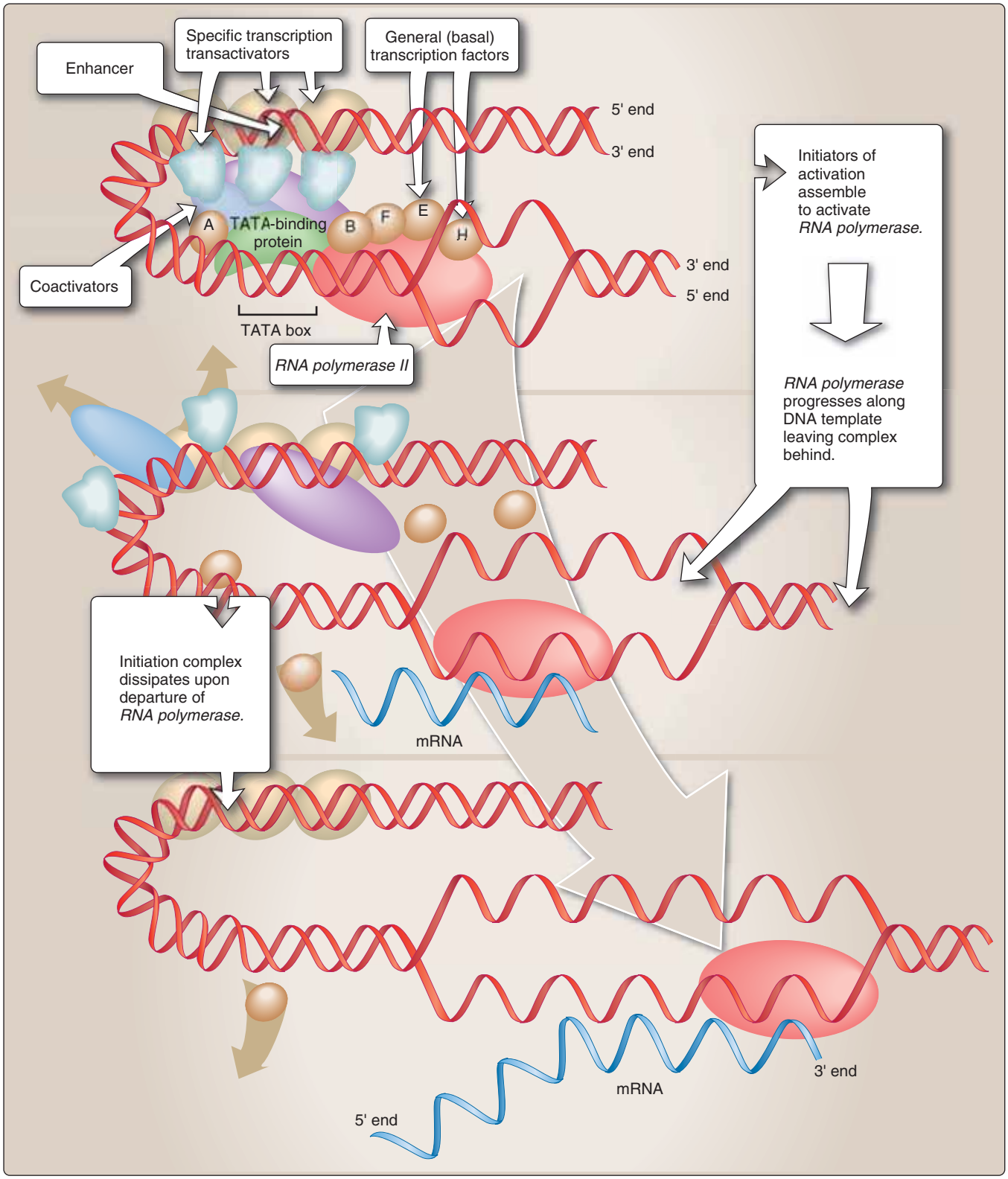


Figure 8.6
Formation of the transcription complex requires several proteins in addition to RNA Polymerase II.

Bacterial DNA–directed RNA synthesis is inhibited by the antibiotic rifampin

Rifampin specifically inhibits bacterial RNA synthesis by interfering with the bacterial RNA polymerase. The inhibited enzyme remains bound to the promoter, thereby blocking the initiation by uninhibited enzyme. Rifampin is especially useful in the treatment of tuberculosis. This drug along with isoniazid (an antimetabolite) has greatly reduced morbidity due to tuberculosis.

Retroviruses, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), have an RNA genome

Retroviruses, such as HIV and human T cell lymphotrophic virus, contain reverse transcriptase, an enzyme that copies the RNA genome of the virus into a cDNA. "Reverse" signifies that the biological information flows from RNA to DNA, opposite the usual direction of transfer. Reverse transcriptase mediates the RNA template–dependent information of double-stranded DNA from a single-stranded RNA by an intricate process. The transcribed DNA is integrated into the host cellular genome and is replicated with the host cellular machinery.

AZT and DdI inhibit reverse transcriptase of HIV

Many useful antiviral drugs act as antimetabolites because they are structurally similar to pyrimidine or purine bases. Drugs, such as zidovudine (AZT) and ddI (dideoxyinosine), undergo phosphorylation by host cellular kinases to form nucleotide analogues, which are incorporated into the viral nucleic acids resulting in chain termination. Selective toxicity results because viral enzymes are more sensitive to inhibition by these antimetabolites than mammalian polymerases.

V. RNA PROCESSING REACTIONS

Gene transcription produces an RNA that is larger than the mRNA found in the cytoplasm for translation. This larger RNA, called the primary transcript or heterogeneous nuclear RNA (hnRNA), contains segments of transcribed introns. The intron segments are removed and the exons are joined at specific sites, called donor and acceptor sequences, to form the mature mRNA by a mechanism of RNA processing (Figure 8.7).

A. Addition of a 5′ cap

Almost immediately after the initiation of RNA synthesis, the 5′ end of RNA is capped by a methyl guanosine residue, which protects it from degradation (by 5′ exonucleases) during elongation of the RNA chain. The cap also helps the transcript bind to the ribosome during protein synthesis.

B. Addition of a poly(A) tail

The primary transcripts contain a highly conserved AAUAAA consensus sequence, known as a polyadenylation signal, near their 3′ end. The polyadenylation site is recognized by a specific endonuclease that cleaves the RNA approximately 20 nucleotides downstream.

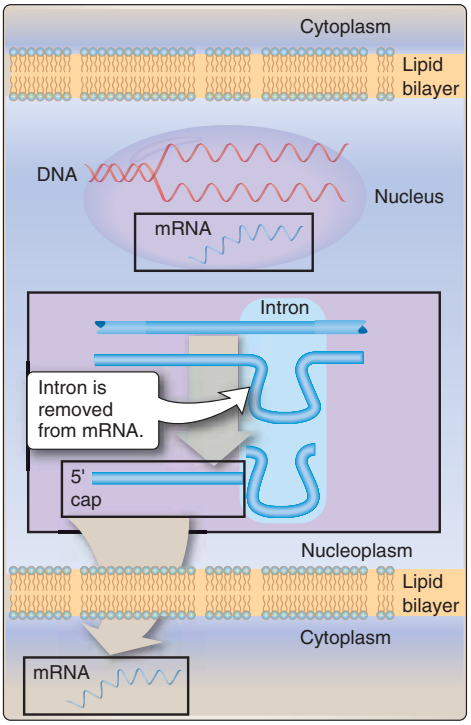


Figure 8.7
mRNA is transcribed and processed in the nucleus.

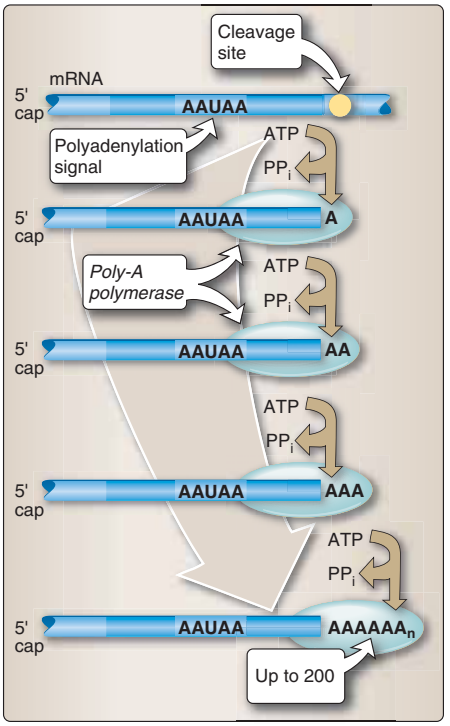


Figure 8.8
RNA processing reactions.

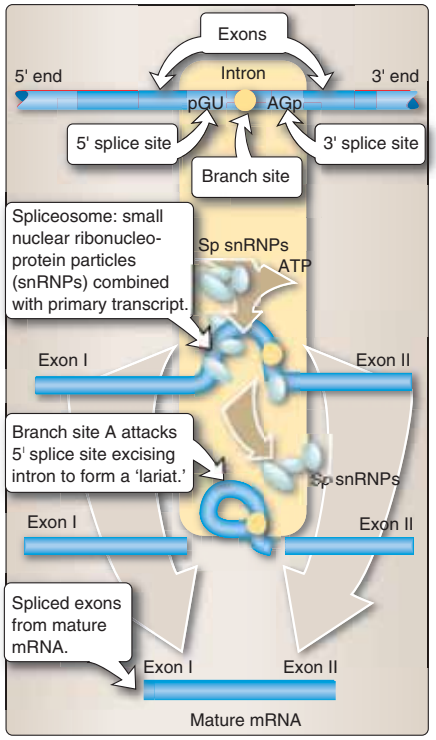


Figure 8.9
mRNA splicing.

Transcription may proceed for several hundred nucleotides beyond the polyadenylation site, but the 3′ end of the transcript is discarded. The newly created 3′ terminus, however, serves as a primer for enzymatic addition by poly(A) polymerase of up to 250 adenine nucleotides (Figure 8.8).

C. Intron removal

Splice sites are present within the gene and delineate the introns. Splice site sequences, which indicate the beginning (GU) and ending (AG) of each intron, are found within the primary RNA transcript. Introns are removed and exons are spliced (joined) together to form the mature mRNA (Figure 8.9). A special structure called the **spliceosome** converts the primary transcript into mRNA. Spliceosomes comprise the primary transcript, five small nuclear RNAs (U1, U2, U5, and U4/6), and more than 50 proteins. Collectively called snRNPs (pronounced "snurps"), the complex facilitates this process by positioning the RNA for necessary splicing reactions and helps form the structures and intermediates for removal of the intron. The mature RNA molecule now leaves the nucleus by passing into the cytoplasm through the pores in the nuclear membrane.

Mutations in splicing signals cause human disease

Thalassemias are hereditary anemias that comprise the single most common genetic disorder in the world. The mutations that cause the thalassemias affect the synthesis of either the a or the b chains of globin, causing a decreased production of hemoglobin and, consequently, an anemia. Point mutations can occur within the TATA box or mutations can occur in the splice junction sequences at the intron-exon boundaries.

Some of the splicing abnormalities alter the sequence GT at the beginning of an intron or the AG at the end. Because these sequences are absolutely required for normal splicing, such mutations lead to the loss of b-globin production. In the case of other mutations that affect the consensus region of the donor or acceptor site, there is a reduced ability of the RNA to correctly splice and it will result in decreased but detectable amounts of b-globin.

Chapter Summary

- RNA polymerase II transcribes protein coding genes.
- Transcription requires several factors to bind to the regulatory region of the gene.
- Proximal and distal promoters and other regulatory sequences control gene expression.
- RNA is transcribed in the nucleus and undergoes processing before entering the cytoplasm.
- RNA processing reactions include addition of a 5′ methyl guanosine cap, a poly(A) tail, and splicing of introns out of the heterogeneous nuclear transcript.

Study Questions

8.1 What will be the sequence of the single-stranded RNA transcribed from the following segment of double-stranded DNA?

5′-TTGCACCTA-3′

3′-AACGTGGAT-5′

A. 5′-UAGGUGCUU-3′
B. 5′-UUGCACCUA-3′
C. 5′-AACGUGGUA-3′
D. 5′-AUCCACGUU-3′
E. 5′-UUCGUGGAU-3′

8.1: Correct answer = B. RNA polymerase reads double-stranded DNA on the template strand (running 3′-5′) and synthesizes a complementary single-stranded RNA molecule. RNA contains uracil in place of thymine. So the sequence of the newly synthesized RNA would be similar to the sequence on the coding strand, except in places where thymine occurs.

8.2 Addition of a 5′ 7-methyl guanosine cap to the primary RNA transcript during nuclear processing

A. Facilitates the assembly of the spliceosome complex
B. Identifies the transcript as a transfer RNA molecule
C. Protects the RNA against degradation by cellular exonucleases
D. Inhibits translation of the RNA molecule into protein
E. Prevents RNA molecules from forming double-stranded complexes

8.2: Correct answer = C. A 5′ 7-methyl guanosine group is added to the newly synthesized RNA and it helps protect the RNA from degradation by enzymes in the cell. The spliceosome complex is assembled around the intron-exon boundary during splicing. Unlike mRNA, tRNA molecules are not modified. The presence of the cap on the mRNA is also important for ribosomes to bind to the mRNA during translation.

8.3 Splicing of a newly synthesized RNA molecule to remove introns and join exons

A. Occurs in the rough endoplasmic reticulum of the cytosol
B. Involves a complex of small nuclear RNA and protein molecules
C. Proceeds concurrently with translation
D. Is inhibited in bacteria by the drug rifampin
E. Is stimulated by the binding of transcription factors to the RNA

8.3: Correct answer = B. Spliceosomes are complexes made up of small nuclear RNA and proteins involved in the process of removal of introns and splicing of exons. The processing reactions take place in the nucleus of the cell and translation occurs in the cytosol. Rifampin inhibits the initiation of transcription and bacterial RNA is not processed similar to eukaryotic RNA. The rate of transcription is stimulated by transcription factors.

8.4 Which of the following is an mRNA processing reaction?

A. Binding of the RNA Polymerase to TATA box
B. Synthesis of an RNA strand using RNA Polymerase I
C. Addition of 7-methyl guanosine residues to the 3′ end of the mRNA
D. Removal of introns from the heterogenous nuclear RNA
E. None of the above

8.4: Correct answer = D. RNA processing consists of removal of intron sequences from the newly produced heterogeneous nuclear RNA. Transcription is initiated by the formation of a preinitiation complex. Addition of 7-methyl guanosine occurs in the 5′ end of the mRNA.

8.5 Which of the following sites on a gene is important for recognition of the beginning and the ends of intron sequences?

A. TATA box
B. GC box
C. Splice sites GT and AG
D. Poly(A) tail
E. CAAT box

8.5: Correct answer = C. GT and AG are sequences recognized at the beginning and the ends of introns and are important during splicing of exons. TATA, GC, and CAAT boxes are promoter sequences and a poly(A) tail is added to the 3′ end of the mRNA as part of the processing reaction.

Translation

9

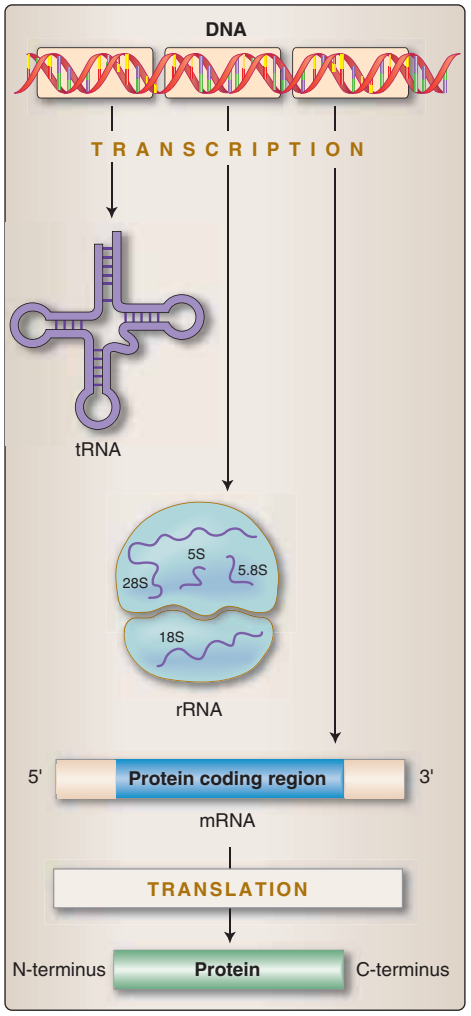


Figure 9.1
Protein synthesis or translation.

I. OVERVIEW

Genetic information, stored in the chromosomes and transmitted to daughter cells through DNA replication, is expressed through transcription to RNA and, in the case of mRNA, subsequent translation into proteins (Figure 9.1). The pathway of protein synthesis is called translation because the "language" of the nucleotide sequence on the mRNA is translated into the language of an amino acid sequence. The process of translation requires a genetic code, through which the information contained in the nucleic acid sequence is expressed to produce a specific sequence of amino acids. Any alteration in the nucleic acid sequence may result in an improper amino acid being inserted into the protein chain, potentially causing disease or even death of the organism. Many proteins are covalently modified following their synthesis to activate them or alter their activities.

II. THE GENETIC CODE

The genetic code is a dictionary that identifies the correspondence between a sequence of nucleotide bases and a sequence of amino acids. Each individual word in the code is composed of three nucleotide bases. These genetic words are called codons.

A. Codons

Codons are presented in the messenger RNA (mRNA) language of adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), and uracil (U). Their nucleotide sequences are always written from the 5′ end to the 3′ end. The four nucleotide bases are used to produce the three-base codons. There are, therefore, 64 different combinations of bases, taken three at a time as shown in Figure 9.2.

1. **How to translate a codon:** This table (or "dictionary") can be used to translate any codon sequence and, thus, to determine which amino acids are coded for by an mRNA sequence. For example, the codon 5′-AUG-3′ codes for methionine (see Figure 9.2). Sixty-one of the 64 codons code for the 20 common amino acids.

2. **Termination ("stop" or "nonsense") codons:** Three of the codons, UAG, UGA, and UAA, do not code for amino acids but rather are termination codons. When one of these codons appears in an mRNA sequence, it signals that the synthesis of the protein coded for by that mRNA is complete.

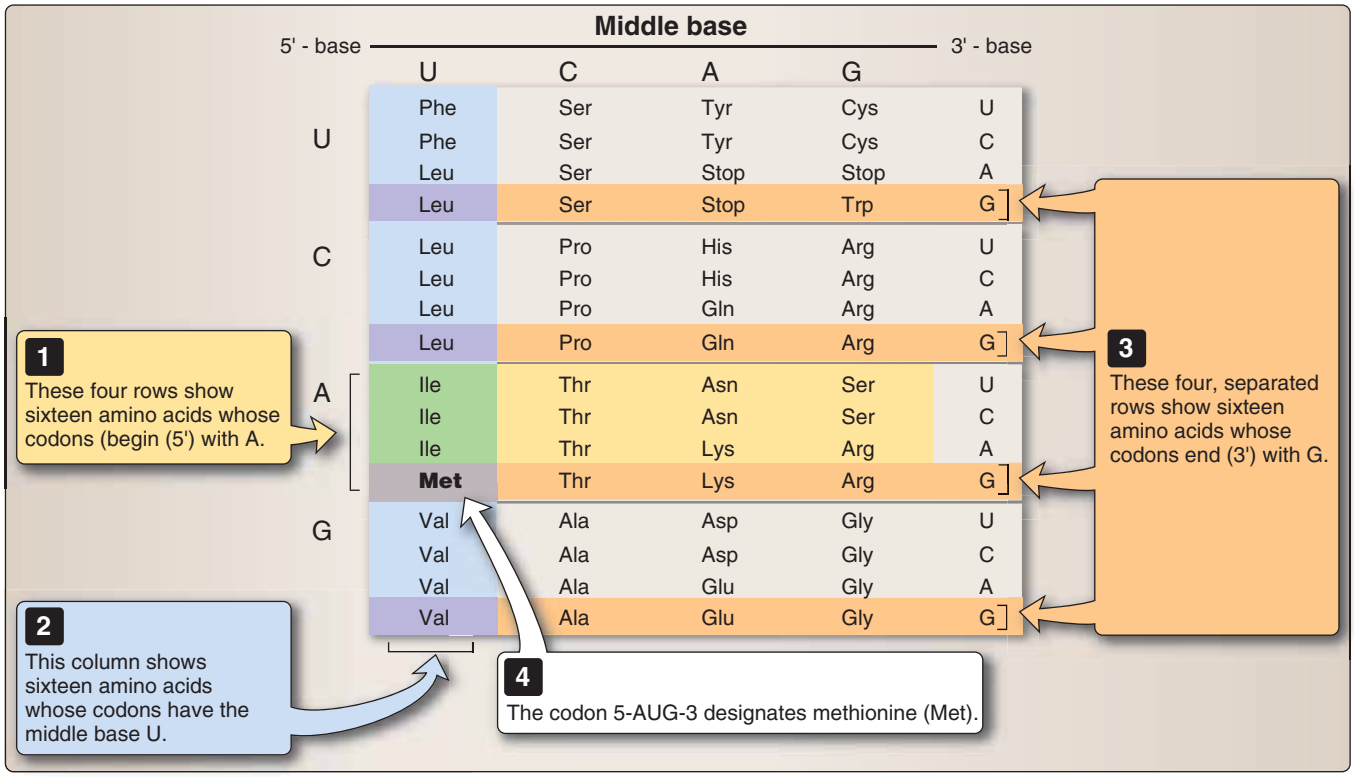


Figure 9.2
Use of genetic code table to translate the codon AUG.

B. Characteristics of the genetic code

Usage of the genetic code is remarkably consistent throughout all living organisms. Characteristics of the genetic code include the following:

1. **Specificity:** The genetic code is specific (unambiguous), that is, a particular codon always codes for the same amino acid.

2. **Universality:** The genetic code is virtually universal, that is, the specificity of the genetic code has been conserved from very early stages of evolution, with only slight differences in the manner in which that code is translated. (Note: An exception occurs in mitochondria, in which a few codons have meanings different than those shown in Figure 9.2, e.g., UGA codes for trp.)

3. **Degeneracy:** The genetic code is degenerate (sometimes called redundant). Although each codon corresponds to a single amino acid, a given amino acid may have more than one triplet coding for it. For example, arginine is specified by six different codons (see Figure 9.2).

4. **Nonoverlapping and commaless:** The genetic code is nonoverlapping and commaless, that is, the code is read from a fixed starting point as a continuous sequence of bases, taken three at a time. For example, ABCDEFGHIJKL is read as ABC/DEF/GHI/JKL without any "punctuation" between the codons.

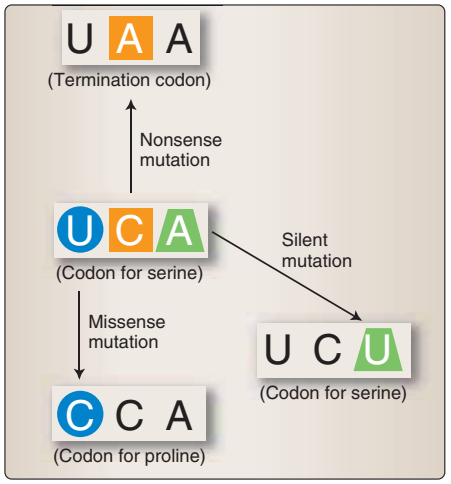


Figure 9.3
Possible effects of changing a single nucleotide base in the coding region of the mRNA chain.

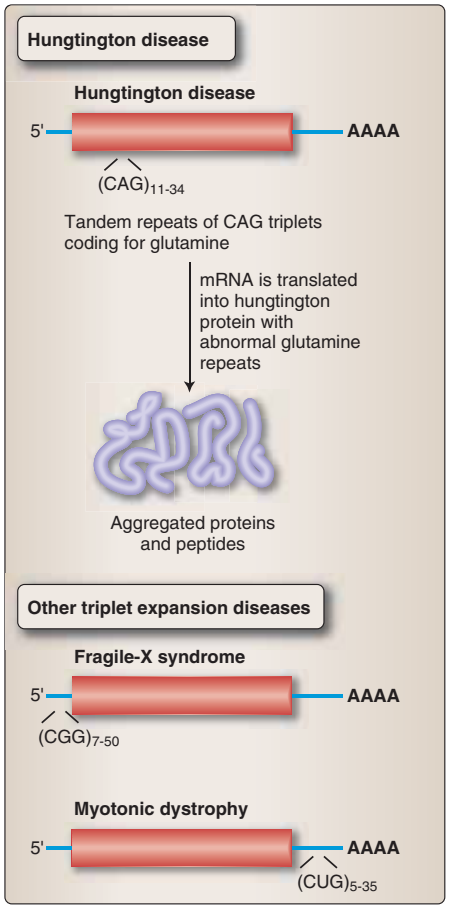


Figure 9.4
Role of tandem triplet repeats in mRNA causing Huntington disease and other triplet expansion diseases.

C. Consequences of altering the nucleotide sequence

Changing a single nucleotide base on the mRNA chain (a "point mutation") can lead to any one of three results (Figure 9.3):

1. **Silent mutation:** The codon containing the changed base may code for the same amino acid. For example, if the serine codon UCA is given a different third base "U" to become UCU, it still codes for serine. This is termed a "silent" mutation.

2. **Missense mutation:** The codon containing the changed base may code for a different amino acid. For example, if the serine codon UCA is given a different first base "C" to become CCA, it will code for a different amino acid, in this case, proline. The substitution of an incorrect amino acid is called a "missense" mutation.

3. **Nonsense mutation:** The codon containing the changed base may become a termination codon. For example, if the serine codon UCA is given a different second base "A" to become UAA, the new codon causes termination of translation at that point and the production of a shortened (truncated) protein. The creation of a termination codon at an inappropriate place is called a "nonsense" mutation.

4. **Other mutations:** These can alter the amount or structure of the protein produced by translation.

   a. **Trinucleotide repeat expansion:** Occasionally, a sequence of three bases that is repeated in tandem will become amplified in number so that too many copies of the triplet occur. If this occurs within the coding region of a gene, the protein will contain many extra copies of one amino acid. For example, amplification of the CAG codon leads to the insertion of many extra glutamine residues in the Huntington protein, causing the neurodegenerative disorder, Huntington disease (Figure 9.4). The additional glutamines result in unstable proteins that cause the accumulation of protein aggregates. If the trinucleotide repeat expansion occurs in the untranslated portion of a gene, the result can be a decrease in the amount of protein produced as seen, for example, in fragile X syndrome and myotonic dystrophy.

   b. **Splice site mutations:** Mutations at splice sites can alter the way in which introns are removed from the pre-mRNA molecules, producing aberrant proteins.

   c. **Frame-shift mutations:** If one or two nucleotides are either deleted from or added to the coding region of a message sequence, a frame-shift mutation occurs and the reading frame is altered. This can result in a product with a radically different amino acid sequence (Figure 9.5) or a truncated product due to the creation of a termination codon. If three nucleotides are added, a new amino acid is added to the peptide, or if three nucleotides are deleted, an amino acid is lost. In these instances, the reading frame is not affected. Loss of three nucleotides maintains the reading frame but can result in serious pathology. For example, cystic fibrosis (CF), a hereditary disease that primarily affects the pulmonary and digestive systems, is most

commonly caused by a deletion of three nucleotides from the coding region of a gene, resulting in the loss of phenylalanine at the 508th position (ΔF508) in the protein encoded by that gene. This ΔF508 mutation prevents normal folding of the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein, leading to its destruction by the proteosome (see Chapter 12). CFTR normally functions as a chloride channel in epithelial cells, and its loss results in the production of thick, sticky secretions in the lungs and pancreas, leading to lung damage and digestive deficiencies. In over seventy percent of patients with CF, the ΔF508 mutation is the cause of the disease.

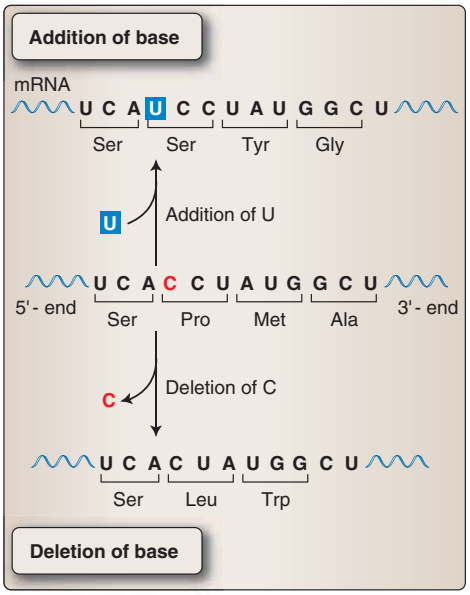


Figure 9.5
Frame-shift mutations as a result of addition or deletion of a base can cause an alteration in the reading frame of mRNA.

III. COMPONENTS REQUIRED FOR TRANSLATION

A large number of components are required for the synthesis of a protein. These include all the amino acids that are found in the finished product, the mRNA to be translated, transfer RNA (tRNA), functional ribosomes, energy sources, and enzymes, as well as protein factors needed for initiation, elongation, and termination of the polypeptide chain.

A. Amino acids

All the amino acids that eventually appear in the finished protein must be present at the time of protein synthesis. (Note: If one amino acid is missing [e.g., if the diet does not contain an essential amino acid], translation stops at the codon specifying that amino acid. This demonstrates the importance of having all the essential amino acids in sufficient quantities in the diet to ensure continued protein synthesis.)

B. Transfer RNA

tRNAs are able to carry a specific amino acid and to recognize the codon for that amino acid. tRNA, therefore, functions as adaptor molecules.

At least one specific type of tRNA is required per amino acid. In humans, there are at least 50 species of tRNA, whereas bacteria contain 30 to 40 species. Because there are only 20 different amino acids commonly carried by tRNA, some amino acids have more than one specific tRNA molecule. This is particularly true of those amino acids that are coded for by several codons.

1. **Amino acid attachment site:** Each tRNA molecule has an attachment site for a specific (cognate) amino acid at its 3′ end (Figure 9.6). The carboxyl group of the amino acid is in an ester linkage with the 3′-hydroxyl group of the ribose moiety of the adenosine nucleotide in the –CCA sequence at the 3′ end of the tRNA. (Note: When a tRNA has a covalently attached amino acid, it is said to be charged; when tRNA is not bound to an amino acid, it is described as being uncharged.) The amino acid that is attached to the tRNA molecule is said to be activated.

2. **Anticodon:** Each tRNA molecule also contains a three-base nucleotide sequence—the anticodon—that recognizes a specific codon on the mRNA (see Figure 9.6). This codon specifies the insertion into the growing peptide chain of the amino acid carried by that tRNA.

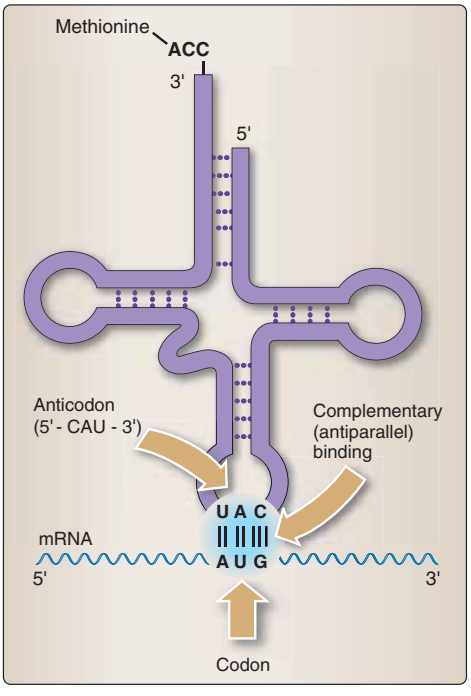


Figure 9.6
Complementary antiparallel binding of the anticodon for methionyl-tRNA (CAU) to the mRNA codon for methionine (AUG).

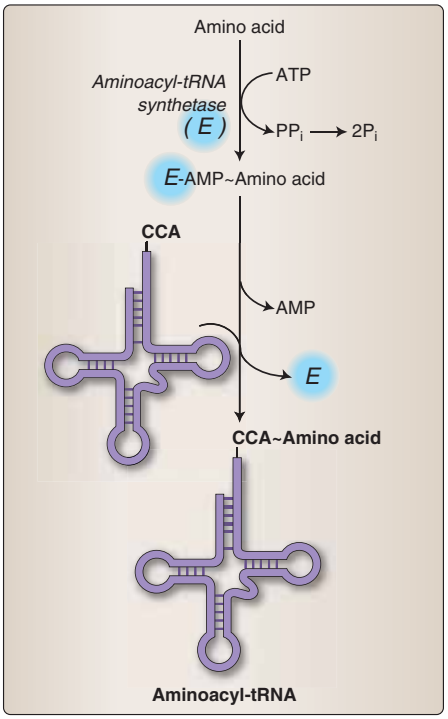


Figure 9.7
Attachment of a specific amino acid to its corresponding tRNA by aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (E).

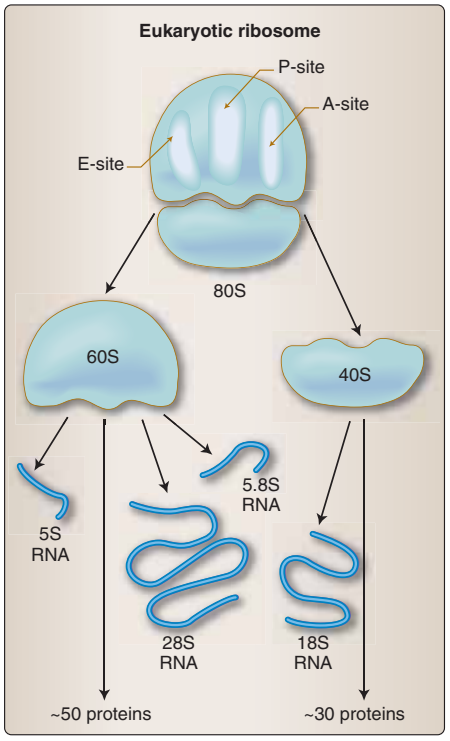


Figure 9.8
Eukaryotic ribosomal composition.

C. Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases

This family of enzymes is required for the attachment of amino acids to their corresponding tRNA. Each member of this family recognizes a specific amino acid and the tRNA that corresponds to that amino acid (isoaccepting tRNA). These enzymes thus implement the genetic code because they act as molecular dictionaries that can read both the three-letter code of nucleic acids and the 20-letter code of amino acids. Each **aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase** catalyzes a two-step reaction that results in the covalent attachment of the carboxyl group of an amino acid to the 3′ end of its corresponding tRNA. The overall reaction requires adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which is cleaved to adenosine monophosphate (AMP) and inorganic pyrophosphate (PP_i) (Figure 9.7). The extreme specificity of the **synthetase** in recognizing both the amino acid and its specific tRNA contributes to the high fidelity of translation of the genetic message. In addition, the synthetases have a "proofreading" or "editing" activity that can remove mischarged amino acids from the enzyme or the tRNA molecule.

D. Messenger RNA

The specific mRNA required as a template for the synthesis of the desired polypeptide chain must be present.

E. Functionally competent ribosomes

Ribosomes are large complexes of protein and ribosomal RNA (rRNA, Figure 9.8).They consist of two subunits—one large and one small—whose relative sizes are generally given in terms of their sedimentation coefficients, or S (Svedberg) values. (Note: Because the S values are determined both by shape as well as molecular mass, their numeric values are not strictly additive. The eukaryotic 60S and 40S subunits form an 80S ribosome.) Prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes are similar in structure and serve the same function, namely, as the "factories" in which the synthesis of proteins occurs.

The larger ribosomal subunit catalyzes the formation of the peptide bonds that link amino acid residues in a protein. The smaller subunit binds mRNA and is responsible for the accuracy of translation by ensuring correct base-pairing between the codon in the mRNA and the anticodon of the tRNA.

1. **Ribosomal RNA:** Eukaryotic ribosomes contain four molecules of rRNA (see Figure 9.8). The rRNAs have extensive regions of secondary structure arising from the base-pairing of the complementary sequences of nucleotides in different portions of the molecule.

2. **Ribosomal proteins:** Ribosomal proteins play a number of roles in the structure and function of the ribosome and its interactions with other components of the translation system.

3. **A, P, and E sites on the ribosome:** The ribosome has three binding sites for tRNA molecules—the A, P, and E sites—each of which extends over both subunits (see Figure 9.8). Together, they cover three neighboring codons. During translation, the A site binds an incoming aminoacyl-tRNA as directed by the codon currently occupying this site. This codon specifies the next amino acid to be added to the growing peptide chain. The P-site codon is occupied

by peptidyl-tRNA. This tRNA carries the chain of amino acids that has already been synthesized. The E site is occupied by the empty tRNA as it is about to exit the ribosome.

4. **Cellular location of ribosomes:** In eukaryotic cells, the ribosomes are either "free" in the cytosol or are in close association with the endoplasmic reticulum (which is then known as the "rough" endoplasmic reticulum, or RER). The RER-associated ribosomes are responsible for synthesizing proteins that are to be exported from the cell as well as those that are destined to become integrated into plasma, endoplasmic reticulum, or Golgi membranes or incorporated in lysosomes. Cytosolic ribosomes synthesize proteins required in the cytosol itself or destined for the nucleus, mitochondria, and peroxisomes. (Note: Mitochondria contain their own set of ribosomes and their own unique, circular DNA.)

F. Protein factors

Initiation, elongation, and termination (or release) factors are required for peptide synthesis. Some of these protein factors perform a catalytic function, whereas others appear to stabilize the synthetic machinery.

G. ATP and GTP are required as sources of energy

Cleavage of four high-energy bonds is required for the addition of one amino acid to the growing polypeptide chain: two from ATP in the **aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase** reaction—one in the removal of PP_i and one in the subsequent hydrolysis of the PP_i to inorganic phosphate by **pyrophosphatase**—and two from GTP—one for binding the aminoacyl-tRNA to the A site and one for the translocation step (see Figure 9.11). (Note: Additional ATP and GTP molecules are required for initiation in eukaryotes and an additional GTP molecule is required for termination.)

IV. CODON RECOGNITION BY tRNA

Correct pairing of the codon in the mRNA with the anticodon of the tRNA is essential for accurate translation (see Figure 9.6). Some tRNAs recognize more than one codon for a given amino acid.

A. Antiparallel binding between codon and anticodon

Binding of the tRNA anticodon to the mRNA codon follows the rules of complementary and antiparallel binding, that is, the mRNA codon is "read" 5′ → 3′ by an anticodon pairing in the "flipped" (3′ → 5′) orientation (Figure 9.9). (Note: When writing the sequences of both codons and anticodons, the nucleotide sequence must ALWAYS be listed in the 5′ → 3′ order.)

B. Wobble hypothesis

The mechanism by which tRNAs can recognize more than one codon for a specific amino acid is described by the "wobble" hypothesis in which the base at the 5′ end of the anticodon (the "first" base of the anticodon) is not as spatially defined as the other two bases. Movement of that first base allows nontraditional base-pairing with the 3′ base of the codon (the "last" base of the codon). This movement is called "wobble" and allows a single tRNA to recognize more than one codon. Examples of these flexible pairings are shown in Figure 9.9.

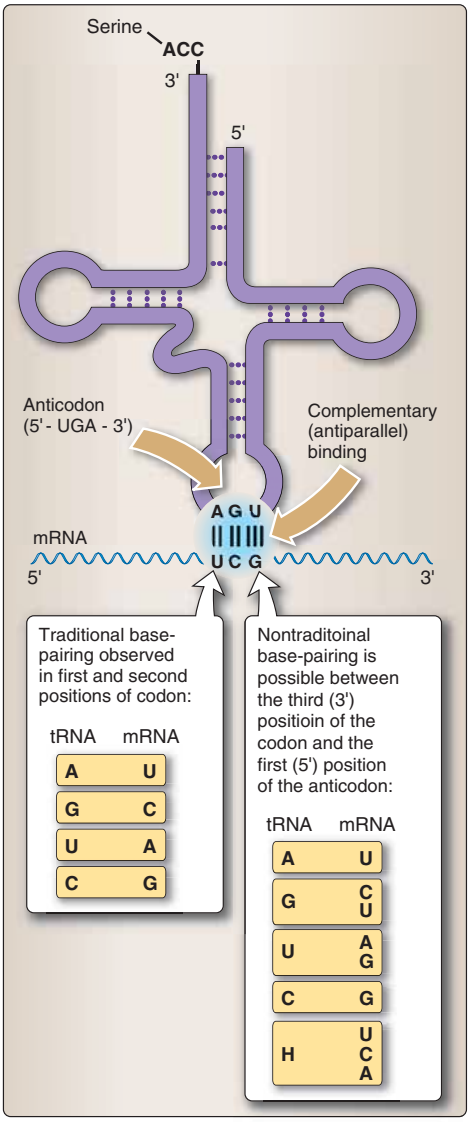


Figure 9.9
Wobble: Nontraditional base-pairing between the 5′-nucleotide (first nucleotide) of the anticodon with the 3′-nucleotide (last nucleotide) of the codon. H, hypoxanthine (the base of inosine).

The result of wobbling is that there need not be 61 tRNA species to read the 61 codons coding for amino acids.

V. STEPS IN PROTEIN TRANSLATION

The pathway of protein synthesis translates the three-letter alphabet of nucleotide sequences on mRNA into the 20-letter alphabet of amino acids that constitute proteins. The mRNA is translated from its 5′ end to its 3′ end, producing a protein synthesized from its amino-terminal end to its carboxyl-terminal end. The process of translation is divided into three separate steps: initiation, elongation, and termination. The polypeptide chains produced may be modified by posttranslational modification.

A. Initiation

Initiation of protein synthesis involves the assembly of the components of the translation system before peptide bond formation occurs. These components include the two ribosomal subunits, the mRNA to be translated, the aminoacyl-tRNA specified by the first codon in the message, GTP (which provides energy for the process), and initiation factors that facilitate the assembly of this initiation complex (see Figure 9.10). (Note: In prokaryotes, three initiation factors are known [IF-1, IF-2, and IF-3], whereas in eukaryotes, there are over ten [designated eIF to indicate eukaryotic origin]. Eukaryotes also require ATP for initiation.) The mechanism by which the ribosome recognizes the nucleotide sequence that initiates translation is different in eukaryotes and prokaryotes.

In eukaryotes, the initiating AUG is recognized by a special initiator tRNA. Recognition is facilitated by eIFs (eIF2 plus additional eIF). The amino acid–charged initiator tRNA enters the ribosomal P site, and GTP is hydrolyzed to GDP. (Note: The initiator tRNA is the only tRNA recognized by eIF-2, and the only tRNA to go directly to the P site.)

B. Elongation

Elongation of the polypeptide chain involves the addition of amino acids to the carboxyl end of the growing chain. During elongation, the ribosome moves from the 5′ end to the 3′ end of the mRNA that is being translated (see Figure 9.10). Delivery of the aminoacyl-tRNA whose codon appears next on the mRNA template in the ribosomal A site is facilitated by the elongation factors (eEF-1α and eEF-1$\beta\gamma$). These factors function as nucleotide exchange factors, exchanging their GTP for the guanosine diphosphate (GDP) (from GTP hydrolysis). The formation of the peptide bonds is catalyzed by **peptidyltransferase,** an activity intrinsic to the 28S rRNA found in the 60S ribosomal subunit. Because this rRNA catalyzes the reaction, it is referred to as a ribozyme. After the peptide bond has been formed, the ribosome advances three nucleotides toward the 3′ end of the mRNA. This process is known as translocation and requires the participation of eEF-2 and GTP hydrolysis. This causes movement of the uncharged tRNA into the ribosomal E site (before being released) and movement of the peptidyl-tRNA into the P site.

C. Termination

Termination occurs when one of the three termination codons moves into the A site (see Figure 9.10). Eukaryotes have a single release

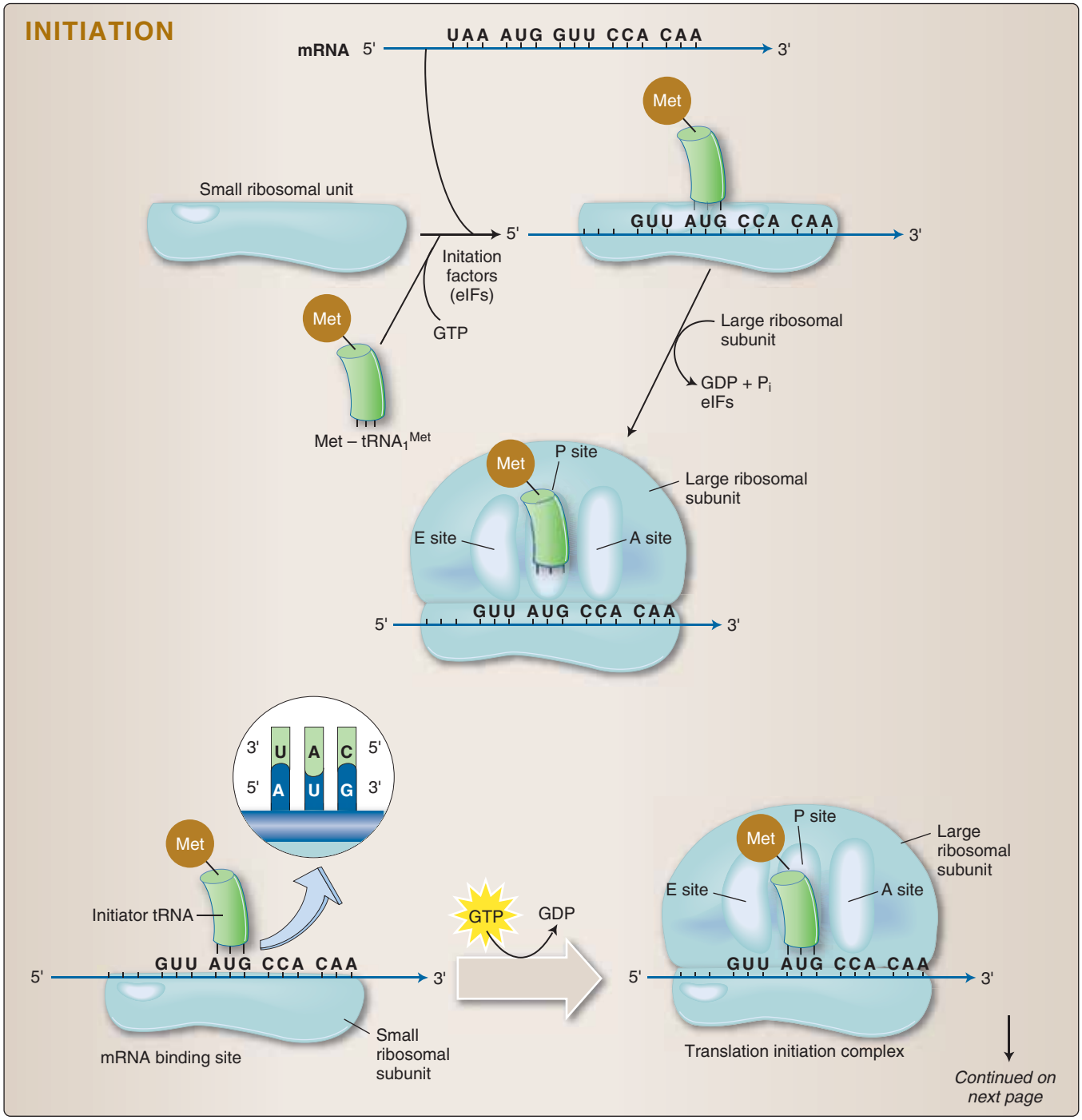


Figure 9.10
Steps in protein synthesis.

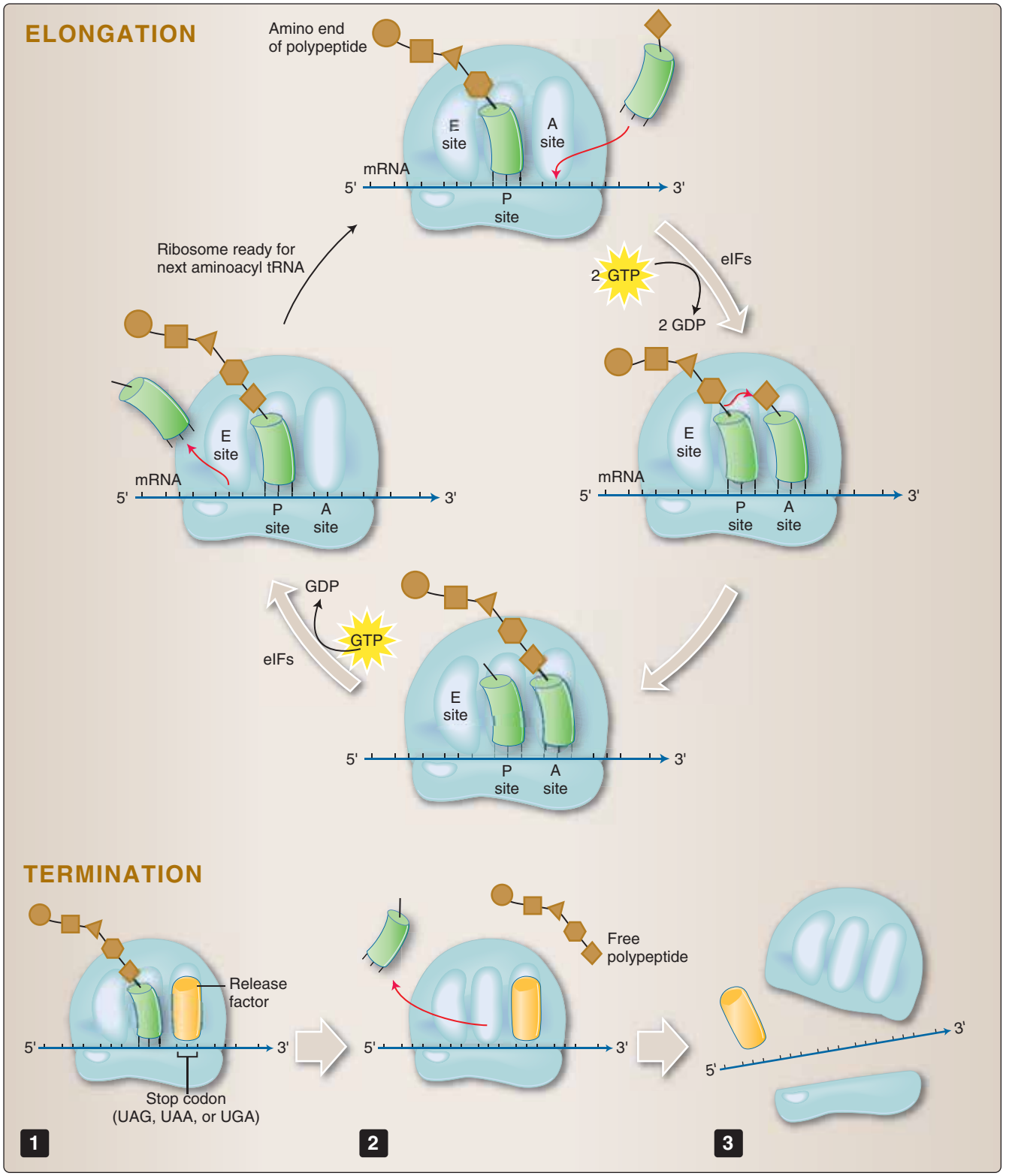


Figure 9.10
Steps in protein synthesis – continued.

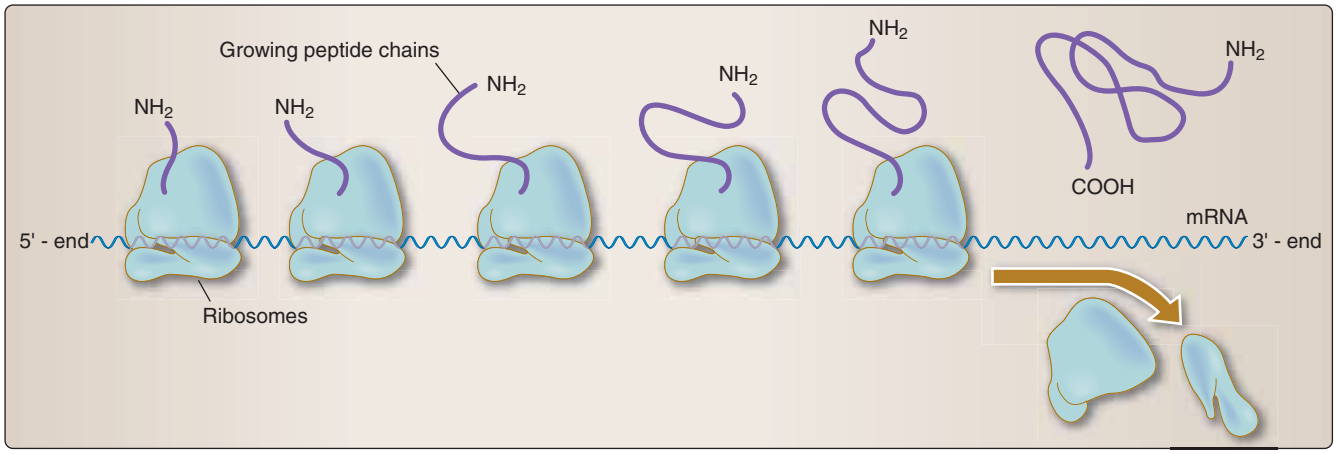


Figure 9.11
A polyribosome consists of several ribosomes simultaneously translating one mRNA.

factor, eRF, which recognizes all three termination codons. The newly synthesized polypeptide may undergo further modification as described below, and the ribosomal subunits, mRNA, tRNA, and protein factors can be recycled and used to synthesize another polypeptide.

D. Polysomes

Translation begins at the 5′ end of the mRNA, with the ribosome proceeding along the RNA molecule. Because of the length of most mRNAs, more than one ribosome at a time can generally translate a message (Figure 9.11). Such a complex of one mRNA and a number of ribosomes is called a polysome or polyribosome.

E. Regulation of translation

Although gene expression is most commonly regulated at the transcriptional level, the rate of protein synthesis is also sometimes regulated. An important mechanism by which this is accomplished in eukaryotes is by covalent modification of eIF-2 (phosphorylated eIF-2 is inactive).

VI. SEVERAL ANTIMICROBIAL ANTIBIOTICS TARGET BACTERIAL TRANSLATION

The initiation process in protein synthesis is different in prokaryotes and eukaryotes as shown in Table 9.1. Many antibiotics that are used to combat bacterial infections in humans take advantage of the differences between the mechanisms for protein synthesis in prokaryotes and eukaryotes (Table 9.2).

VII. POSTTRANSLATIONAL MODIFICATION OF POLYPEPTIDE CHAINS

Many polypeptide chains are covalently modified, either while they are still attached to the ribosome or after their synthesis has been completed.

Table 9.1
DIFFERENCES BETWEEN PROKARYOTES AND EUKARYOTES IN THE INITIATION OF PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

	Eukaryotes	Prokaryotes
Binding of mRNA to small ribosomal subunit	Cap at 5′-end of mRNA binds to eIFs and 40S ribosomal subunit. mRNA is scanned for first AUG	A specific sequence upstream of initiating AUG binds to complementary sequence in 16S RNA
First amino acid	Methionine	Formyl-methionine
Initiation factors	eIFs (12 or more)	IFs (3)
Ribosomes	80S (40S and 60S subunits)	70S (30S and 50S subunits)

Table 9.2
EFFECTS OF ANTIBIOTICS ON PROKARYOTIC PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

Streptomycin	Inhibits initiation and causes misreading.
Tetracycline	Binds to the 30S subunit and inhibits the binding of aminoacyl-tRNAs.
Erythromycin	Binds to the 50S subunit and inhibits translocation.

Because the modifications occur after the translation is initiated, they are called posttranslational modifications. These modifications may include the removal of a part of the translated sequence or the covalent addition of one or more chemical groups required for protein activity. Some types of posttranslational modifications are listed below.

A. Trimming

Many proteins destined for secretion from the cell are initially made as large, precursor molecules that are not functionally active. Portions of the protein chain must be removed by specialized endoproteases, resulting in the release of an active molecule. The cellular site of the cleavage reaction depends on the protein to be modified. For example, some precursor proteins are cleaved in the endoplasmic reticulum or the Golgi apparatus, others are cleaved in developing secretory vesicles, and still others, such as collagen, are cleaved after secretion. Zymogens are inactive precursors of secreted enzymes (including the proteases required for digestion). They become activated through cleavage when they reach their proper sites of action. For example, the pancreatic zymogen, trypsinogen, becomes activated to **trypsin** in the small intestine.

> The synthesis of enzymes as zymogens protects the cell from being digested by its own products.

B. Covalent alterations

Proteins, both enzymatic and structural, may be activated or inactivated by the covalent attachment of a variety of chemical groups. Examples of these modifications include (Figure 9.12):

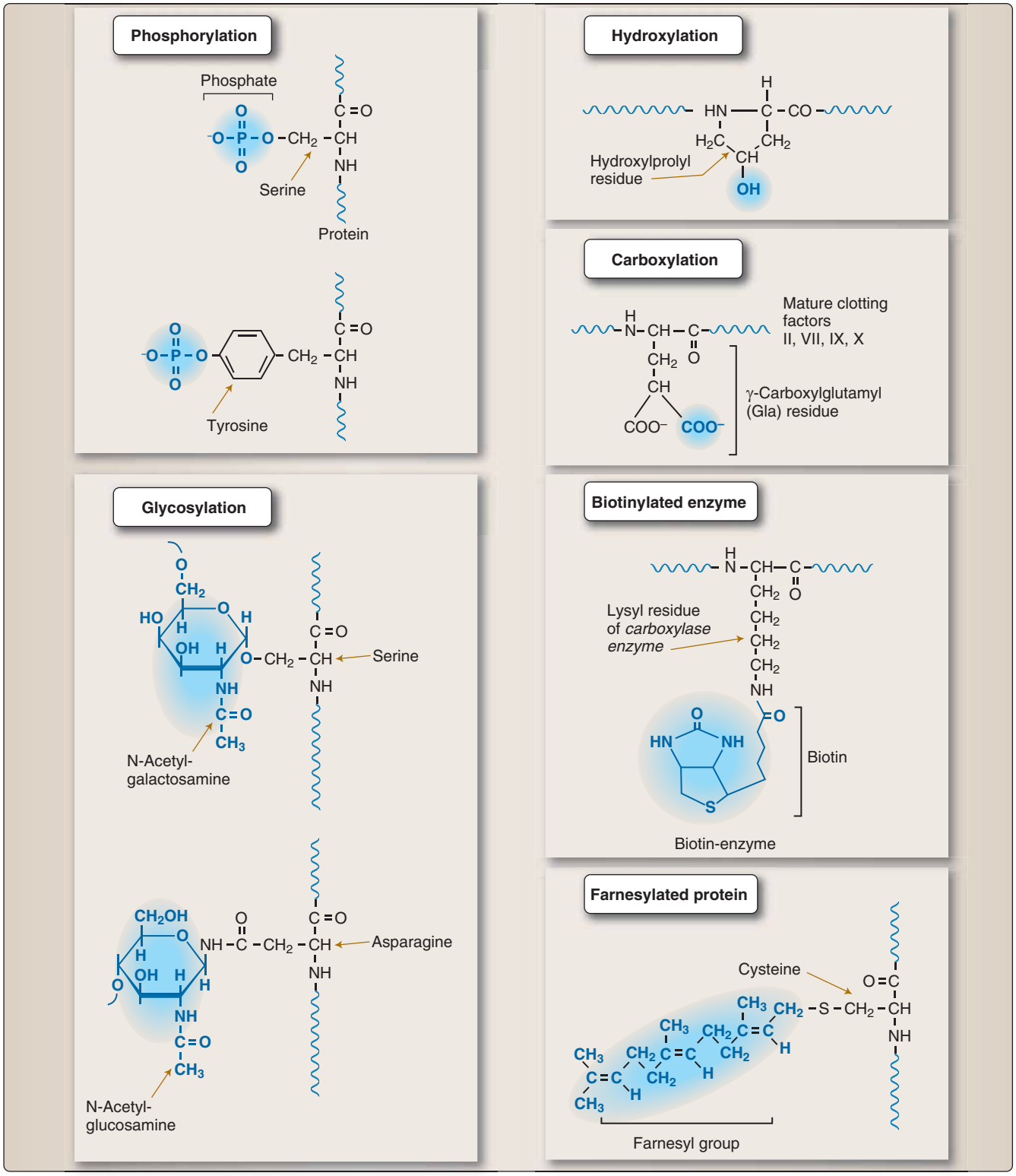


Figure 9.12
Posttranslational modifications of some amino acid residues.

1. **Phosphorylation:** Phosphorylation occurs on the hydroxyl groups of serine, threonine, or, less frequently, tyrosine residues in a protein. This phosphorylation is catalyzed by one of a family of protein kinases and may be reversed by the action of cellular protein phosphatases. The phosphorylation may increase or decrease the functional activity of the protein.

2. **Glycosylation:** Many of the proteins that are destined to become part of a plasma membrane or lysosome, or to be secreted from the cell, have carbohydrate chains attached to serine or threonine hydroxyl groups (O-linked) or the amide nitrogen of asparagine (N-linked). The addition of sugars occurs in the endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi apparatus. Sometimes glycosylation is used to target the proteins to specific organelles. For example, enzymes destined to be incorporated into lysosomes are modified by the phosphorylation of mannose residues (see Chapter 11).

3. **Hydroxylation:** Proline and lysine residues of the α chains of collagen are extensively hydroxylated in the endoplasmic reticulum.

4. **Other covalent modifications:** These may be required for the functional activity of a protein. For example, additional carboxyl groups can be added to glutamate residues by vitamin K-dependent carboxylation. The resulting γ-carboxyglutamate residues are essential for the activity of several of the blood-clotting proteins. Biotin is covalently bound to the ε-amino groups of lysine residues of biotin-dependent enzymes that catalyze carboxylation reactions, such as **pyruvate carboxylase**. Attachment of lipids, such as farnesyl groups, can help anchor proteins in membranes. In addition, many proteins are acetylated after translation.

Chapter Summary

- Codons are composed of three nucleotide bases presented in the mRNA language of A, G, C, and U. There are 64 possible combinations with 61 coding for the 20 common amino acids and three termination signals.
- The genetic code is specific, universal, degenerate, nonoverlapping, and commaless.
- Mutations are a result of altering the nucleotide sequence.
- Requirements for protein synthesis include all the amino acids that eventually appear in the finished protein, at least one specific type of tRNA for each amino acid, one aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase for each amino acid, the mRNA coding for the protein to be synthesized, ribosomes, protein factors, and ATP and GTP as energy sources.
- The formation of the peptide bond is catalyzed by peptidyl transferase, an activity intrinsic to the large ribosomal subunit.

- More than one ribosome at a time can translate a message forming a polysome.
- Numerous antibiotics interfere with the process of protein synthesis selectively in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.
- Many polypeptides are covalently modified after synthesis.

Study Questions

9.1 A 20-year-old anemic man is found to have an abnormal form of β-globin that is 172 amino acids long, rather than the 141 found in the normal protein. Which of the following point mutations is consistent with this abnormality?

A. UAA → CAA
B. UAA → UAG
C. CGA → UGA
D. GAU → GAC
E. GCA → GAA

9.2 A tRNA molecule that is supposed to carry cysteine ($tRNA^{cys}$) is mischarged, so it actually carries alanine (ala-$tRNA^{cys}$). What will be the fate of this alanine residue during protein synthesis?

A. It will be incorporated into a protein in response to an alanine codon.
B. It will be incorporated into a protein in response to a cysteine codon.
C. It will remain attached to the tRNA, as it cannot be used for protein synthesis.
D. It will be incorporated randomly at any codon.
E. It will be chemically converted to cysteine by cellular enzymes.

9.3 In a patient with cystic fibrosis caused by the ΔF508 mutation, the mutant cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein folds incorrectly. The patient's cells modify this abnormal protein by attaching ubiquitin molecules to it. What is the fate of this modified CFTR protein?

A. It performs its normal function, as the ubiquitin largely corrects for the effect of the mutation.
B. It is secreted from the cell.
C. It is placed into storage vesicles.
D. It is degraded by the proteosome.
E. It is repaired by cellular enzymes.

9.1: Correct answer = A. Mutating the normal stop codon for β-globin from UAA to CAA causes the ribosome to insert a glutamine at that point. Thus, it will continue extending the protein chain until it comes upon the next stop codon further down the message, resulting in an abnormally long protein. A change from UAA to UAG would simply change one stop codon for another and would have no effect on the protein. The replacement of CGA (arginine) with UGA (stop) would cause the protein to be too short. GAU and GAC both encode aspartate and would cause no change in the protein. Changing GCA (alanine) to GAA (glutamate) would not change the size of the protein product.

9.2: Correct answer = B. Once an amino acid is attached to a tRNA molecule, only the anticodon of that tRNA determines the specificity of incorporation. The mischarged alanine will, therefore, be incorporated in the protein at a position determined by a cysteine codon.

9.3: Correct answer = D. Ubiquitination usually marks the old, damaged, or misfolded proteins for destruction by the proteosome. There is no known cellular mechanism for repair of damaged proteins.

9.4 Translation of a synthetic polyribonucleotide containing the repeating sequence CAA in a cell-free protein-synthesizing system produces three homopolypeptides: polyglutamine, polyasparagine, and polythreonine. If the codon for glutamine and asparagine are CAA and AAC, respectively, which of the following triplets is the codon for threonine?

A. AAC
B. CAA
C. CAC
D. CCA
E. ACA

9.4: Correct answer = E. The synthetic polynucleotide sequence of CAACAACAACAA could be read by the in vitro protein synthesizing system starting at the first C, the first A, or the second A. In the first case, the first triplet codon would be CAA, which codes glutamine; in the second case, the first triplet codon would be AAC, which codes for asparagine; and in the last case, the first triplet codon would be ACA, which codes for threonine.

Regulation of Gene Expression

10

I. OVERVIEW

The DNA sequence within each somatic cell contains the information required to synthesize thousands of different proteins and RNA molecules. Typically, a cell expresses only a fraction of its genes. Different cell types in multicellular organism arise because each type expresses a different set of genes. Moreover, cells can change the pattern of genes in response to changes in their environment, such as signals from other cells. Although all the steps involved in expressing the gene can, in principle, be regulated, for most genes, the initiation of RNA transcription is the most important point of control.

II. STEPWISE REGULATION OF GENE EXPRESSION

There are several potential sites for regulation starting with DNA and transcription to posttranslational modification of a newly synthesized protein (Figure 10.1). While epigenetic changes to the genome involve both chemical and structural modifications to the chromatin and DNA, processing and transport of the newly synthesized mRNA into the cytoplasm are also regulated. In the cytoplasm, the stability of the mRNA can be controlled, as well as its translatability. Most proteins are modified after translation and this can control their activities, compartmentalization, and half-lives.

A. Transcriptional control

When and how often a gene sequence is copied into RNA is termed transcriptional control and this occurs at two levels:

- Structural-chemical modifications (i.e., acetylation of histones and demethylation of CpG nucleotides, see Chapter 6) convert compacted chromatin into a less tightly coiled DNA structure (Figure 10.2), allowing access by transcription factors required for gene expression.
- DNA-binding proteins, known as transcription factors, modulate gene expression to turn transcription on or off. There are two categories of transcription factors, general (or basal) and specific.

1. **General (basal) transcription factors:** General transcription factors are abundant proteins that assemble on all genes transcribed

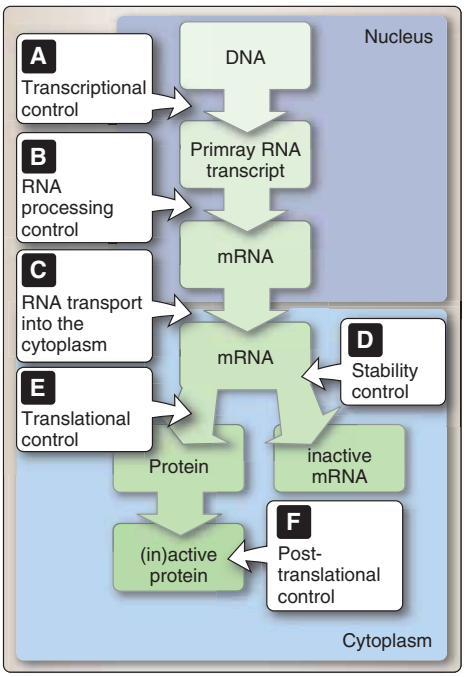


Figure 10.1
Regulation of gene expression can occur at different levels.

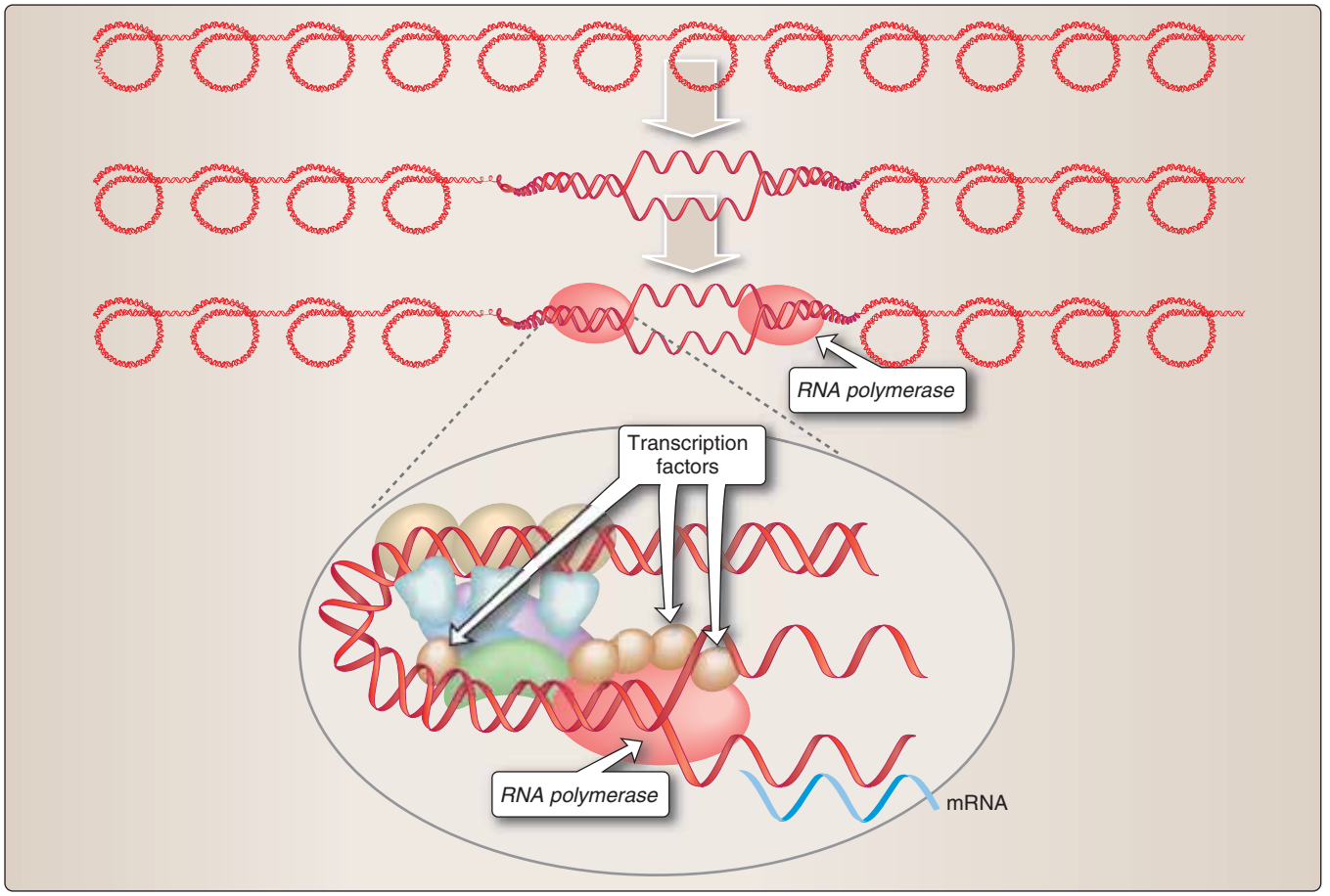


Figure 10.2
Transcription requires DNA to be decondensed.

by RNA polymerase II (see Chapter 8). These transcription factors are important for basal activity of the promoter and to position and activate RNA polymerase II at the start of a protein-coding sequence (Figure 10.3).

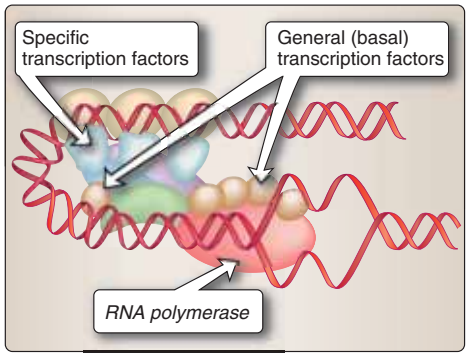


Figure 10.3
General transcription factors are needed for priming transcription.

2. **Specific transcription factors:** Specific transcriptional factors or gene regulatory proteins are present in very few copies in the individual cells and perform their function by binding to a specific DNA nucleotide sequence and allowing the genes that they control to be activated or repressed. These proteins recognize short stretches of double-stranded DNA of defined sequence and thereby determine which of the thousands of genes in a cell will be transcribed. Many unique regulatory proteins have been identified, each with unique structural motifs, and most bind to the DNA as homodimers or heterodimers (Figure 10.4). The precise amino acid sequence of the motif determines the DNA sequence(s) recognized. Specific transcription factors are important for tissue-specific gene expression and for cell growth and differentiation, and some lipid-soluble hormones regulate the transcription factors in their target cells.

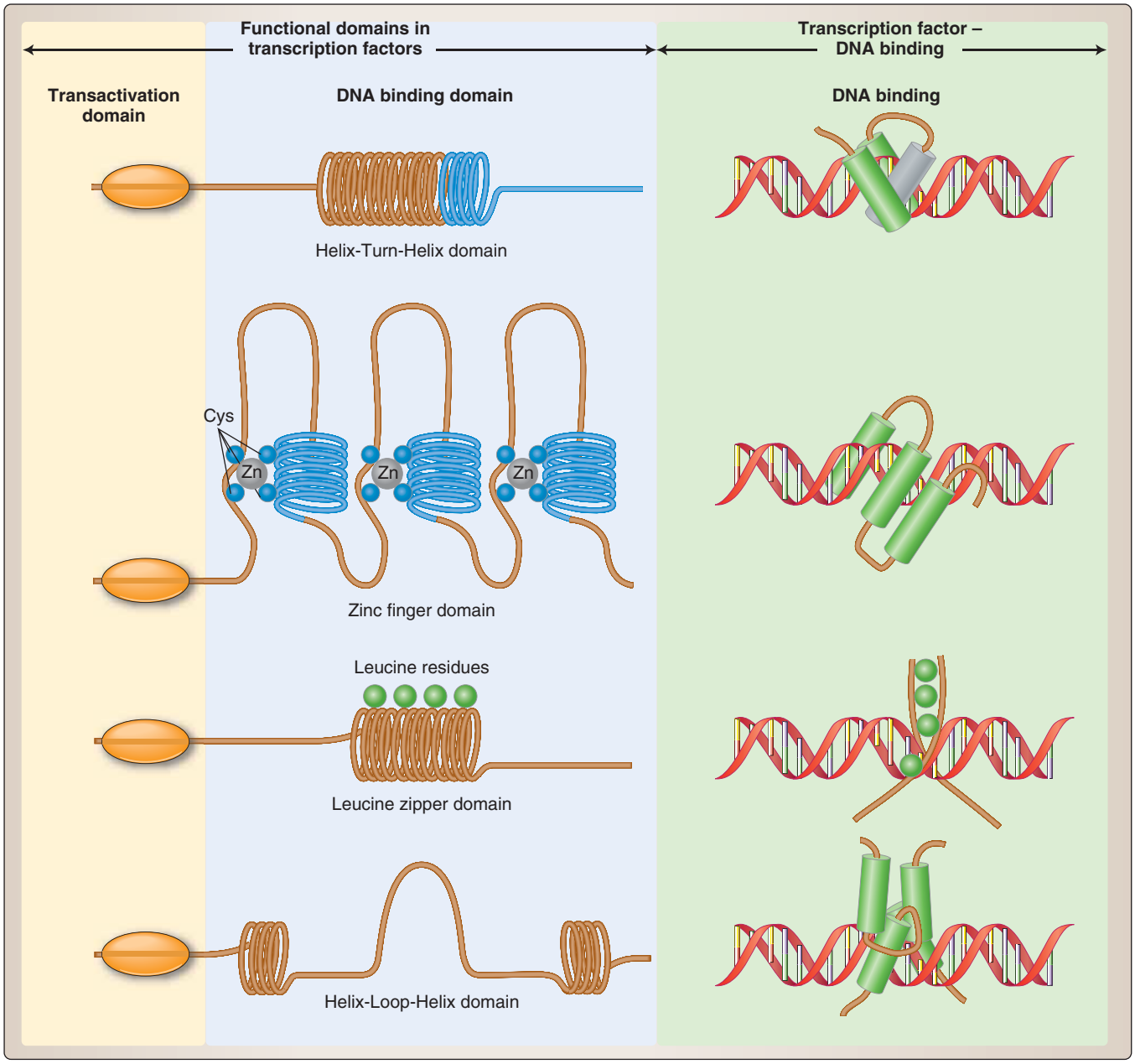


Figure 10.4
Specific transcription factors have a modular design.

Some examples of transcription factors and the sequences recognized by these proteins on DNA are represented in Table 10.1.

RNA Polymerase II catalyzes the synthesis of RNA from a DNA template at a singular rate of about 30 to 40 nucleotides per second. Although the rate of synthesis (transcription) is constant, the numbers of polymerases that simultaneously synthesize RNA from a give gene sequence determine the absolute gene transcription rate. Specific transcription factors modulate the number of RNA polymerase molecules actively synthesizing RNA from a given segment of DNA (Figure 10.5). For this reason, transcription factors have a

Table 10.1
SPECIFIC TRANSCRIPTION FACTORS ARE DESIGNED TO BIND TO SPECIFIC DNA SEQUENCES AND REGULATE GENE TRANSCRIPTION

Transcription Factor	Sequence Recognized
Myc and Max	CACGTG
Fos and Jun	TGACTCA
TR (thyroid hormone receptor)	GTGTCAAAGGTCA
MyoD	CAACTGAC
RAR (retinoic acid receptor)	ACGTCATGACCT

modular design consisting of at least two distinct domains (DNA-binding and transcription-activating domains). One domain consists of the structural motif that recognizes specific DNA sequences (DNA binding—discussed above) and the other domain contacts the transcriptional machinery and accelerates the rate of transcription initiation by accelerating the assembly of the general transcription factors at the promoter site (transcription activating) (see Figure 10.5).

B. RNA processing control

The primary transcript is produced as heterogeneous nuclear RNA containing introns which are eventually spliced out to create the mature mRNA (see Chapter 8). This process occurs in the nucleus and the subsequent processing is necessary to control the number of mRNA molecules that are eventually translated.

1. **mRNA capping:** The addition of the 5′ cap structure (see Chapter 8) is critical for an mRNA to be translated in the cytoplasm and is also needed to protect the growing RNA chain from degradation in the nucleus by 5′ exonucleases.

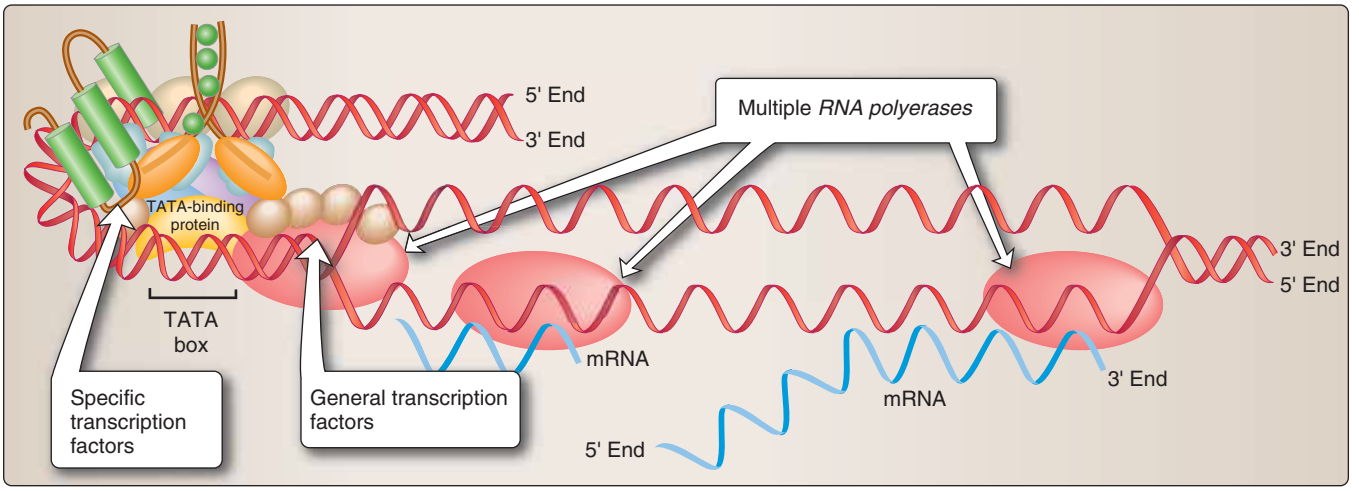


Figure 10.5
Specific transcription factors influence the number of RNA polymerases that bind to DNA and initiate transcription.

2. **Poly(A) tail:** The second modification of an mRNA transcript occurs at its 3′ end, the addition of a poly(A) tail (approx. 200 adenine nucleotide residues are added). The polyadenylation reaction is an important regulatory step because the length of poly(A) tail modulates both mRNA stability and translation efficiency. The poly(A) tail protects the mRNA from premature degradation by 3′exonucleases.

3. **Removal of introns:** Following the modification of the 5′ and 3′ ends of the primary transcript, the noninformational intron segments are removed and the coding exon sequences joined together by RNA splicing (Figure 10.6). The specificity of exon joining is conferred by the presence of signal sequences marking the beginning (5′ donor site) and the end (3′ acceptor site) of the intron segment. As these signal sequences are highly conserved, alterations in these sequences can lead to aberrant mRNA molecules.

4. **Alternative splicing:** The ability of the genes to form multiple proteins by joining different exon segments in the primary transcript is called alternative splicing. Alternative splicing is made possible by changing the accessibility of the different splice sites to the splicing machinery by RNA binding proteins. These proteins could mask preferred splice sites or change local RNA structure to promote the splicing of alternate sites. In addition, cell specific regulation can determine the type of alternate transcript and eventually the protein product produced. RNA splicing also allows switching between the production of nonfunctional and functional proteins, membrane-bound protein versus secreted protein, etc. The ability to make more than one protein product from a gene may also explain why the human genome has fewer genes than expected (Figure 10.7).

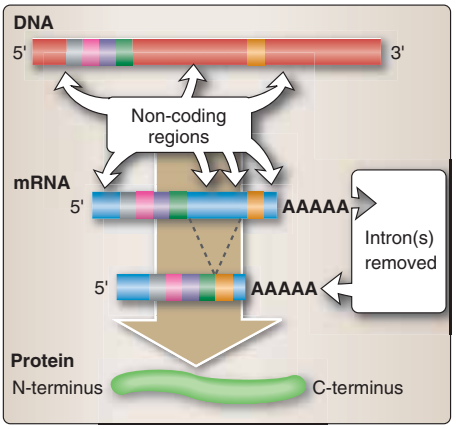


Figure 10.6
RNA processing reactions.

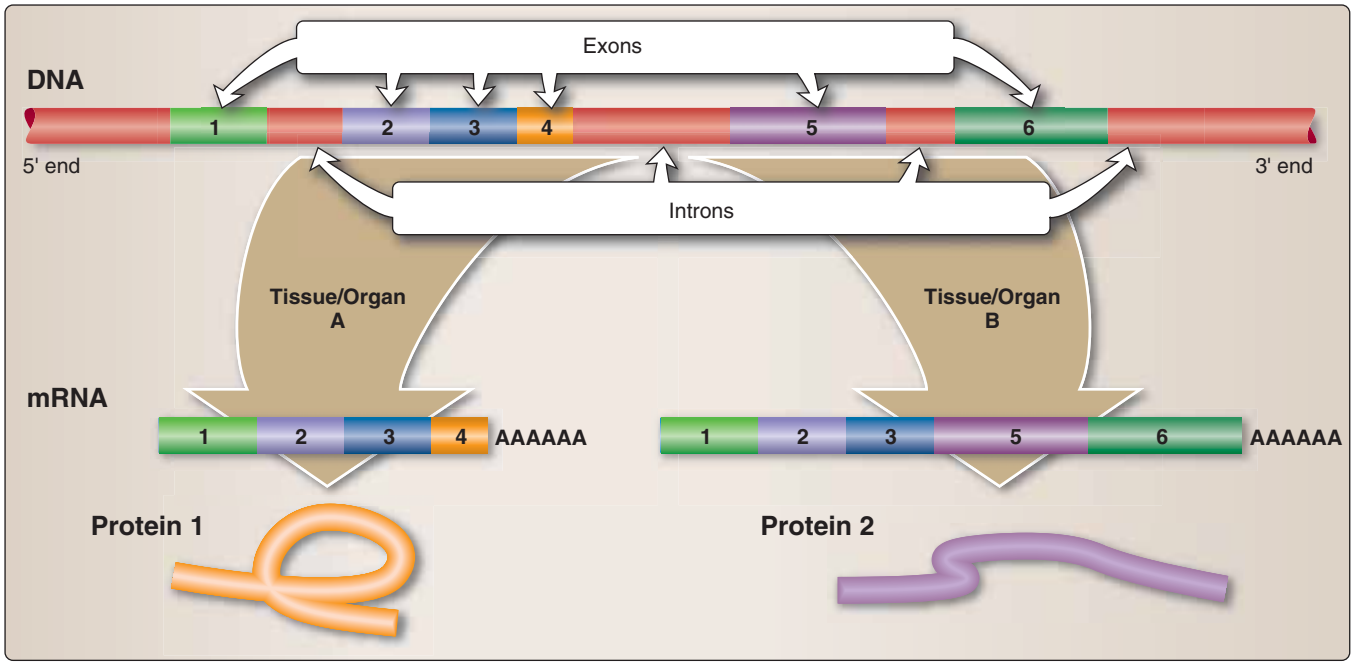


Figure 10.7
Alternative splicing of genes to generate multiple proteins.

Alternative splicing of the calcitonin gene

Alternative splicing produces two different proteins from the calcitonin gene. In the parafollicular cells of the thyroid gland, the calcitonin gene produces an mRNA that codes for the calcium-regulating hormone calcitonin, which counteracts the action of parathyroid hormone. Calcitonin is used in the treatment of postmenopausal osteoporosis in women when estrogen is contraindicated. In neural tissues, the same calcitonin gene is spliced differently and uses a different polyadenylation site to give rise to a neuropeptide, calcitonin gene–related peptide (CGRP), which plays a central role in the pathophysiology of migraine. The serum levels of CGRP are elevated in patients during all forms of vascular headaches, including migraines and cluster headaches. These findings suggest that CGRP-receptor antagonists might be effective in treating migraine by blocking CGRP activity.

C. RNA transport into the cytoplasm

The fully processed mRNAs represent only a small proportion of the RNA found in the nucleus. Damaged and misprocessed RNAs are retained within the nucleus and degraded. A typical mature mRNA carries a collection of proteins that identifies it as being the mRNA destined for transport. Export takes place through nuclear pore complex but mRNAs and their associated proteins are large and require active transport. Energy for export is supplied by the hydrolysis of GTP.

D. Stability control

The length of time mRNAs remain in the cytosol determines the amount of protein product produced by translation. All transcripts have a finite lifetime in the cell. The steady state level of individual RNA species in a cell is determined by both the rate of transcription and the rate of decay.

1. **mRNA half-life:** In eukaryotic cells, mRNAs are degraded at different selective rates. A measure of degradative rate for a particular mRNA is called the half-life (the period it takes to degrade an RNA population to half its initial concentration). The unstable mRNAs usually code for regulatory proteins whose production levels change rapidly within cells (e.g., growth factors and gene regulatory proteins) (half-life—minutes to hours). The stable mRNAs usually code for house keeping proteins (half-life in days).

2. **mRNA 3′UTRs:** The mRNA contains regions that are not translated and these include the 5′ untranslated region (5′UTR) and the 3′ untranslated region (3′UTR). The stability of an mRNA can be influenced by signals inherent in an RNA molecule. The sequence AUUUA, when found in the 3′UTR, is a signal for early degradation (and therefore short lifetime). The more times the sequence is present, the shorter the lifespan of the mRNA. Because it is encoded in the nucleotide sequence, this is a set property of each different mRNA. Sequences in the 3′UTR form a stem-loop structure that allows for protein binding and protection from degradation (Figure 10.8).

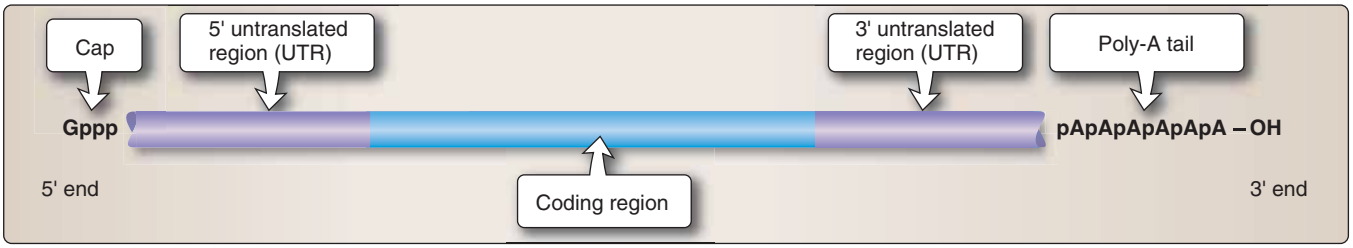


Figure 10.8
Untranslated regions on mRNA.

Regulation of iron levels

Iron deficiency continues to be one of the most prevalent nutritional deficiencies throughout the world. The diagnosis of iron deficiency is based primarily on laboratory measurements. Since free iron is reactive and therefore toxic to the body, most of the iron exists within the body bound to proteins. Free iron is bound to storage proteins (ferritin) or is transported bound to transferrin. Although ferritin is mostly confined to the intracellular compartment, trace amounts are secreted into the blood. Because plasma ferritin is proportional to that stored intracellularly, consequently, plasma ferritin is a valuable index of intracellular stores in iron deficiency anemia. Transferrin receptor levels are also measured clinically as the rate of internalization of iron by cells is determined by its level of cell surface expression. Ferritin and transferrin receptor biosynthesis are inversely modified based on cellular iron levels. Transferrin receptor biosynthesis is increased when available iron levels are low and decreased when iron levels are high. As shown in Figure 10.9, this regulation is accomplished by altering the amount of transferrin receptor and ferritin mRNA. The iron response elements on the transferrin receptor and ferritin mRNA are bound by the iron response protein whose activity is dependent on the iron status of the cell.

E. Translational control

The second basic step in gene expression is the translation of mRNAs into protein. Translation occurs in the cytoplasm; however, not all mRNAs are translated on arrival. The RNA molecules in the cytoplasm are constantly associated with proteins, some of which may function to regulate translation. Mechanisms for translational repression are most widely operative. In the case of ferritin, its mRNA is maintained within the cytoplasm but inhibited from being translated until intracellular concentration of iron rises. The block in this case is mediated by the binding of a repressor protein (the same protein that binds transferrin receptor mRNA in the 3′UTR) to the 5′ nontranslated end of the molecule (see Figure 10.9).

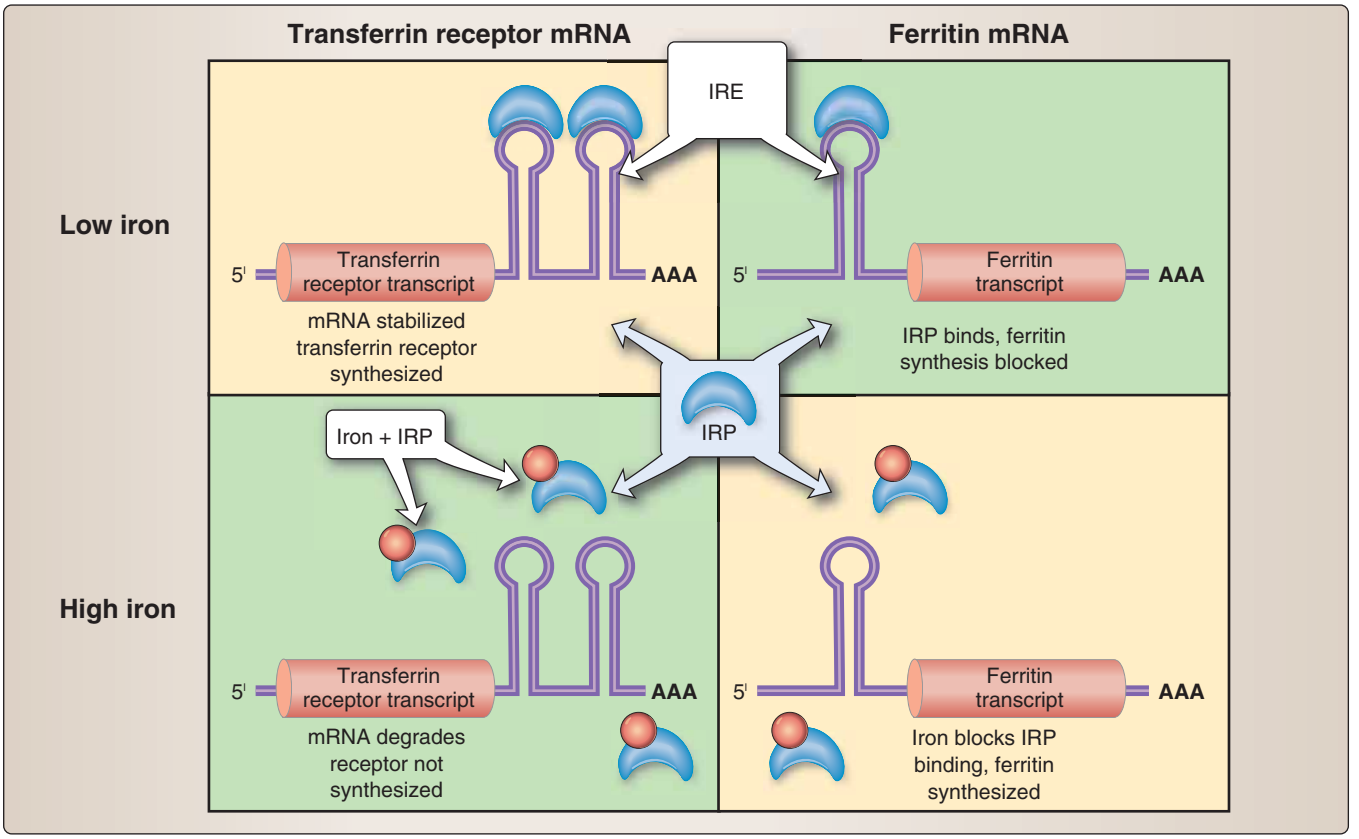


Figure 10.9
Regulation of transferrin receptor and ferritin mRNA.

F. Posttranslational control

Once cytoplasmic ribosomal complexes have synthesized a protein, the functional capabilities of the protein are often not realized until the protein has been modified. Although these mechanisms, collectively known as posttranslational modifications, are not thought of as gene expression controls, it is recognized that the manifestation of gene expression is not complete until a protein is carrying out its function within the cell.

III. RNA INTERFERENCE

The presence of double-stranded (ds) RNA in a eukaryotic cell can trigger a process known as RNA interference or RNAi (also known as RNA silencing or RNA inactivation). RNAi consists of two main phases. First, the dsRNA is recognized by an endonuclease (*Dicer*) and cleaved into smaller molecules of 21 to 24 nucleotides called short interfering RNA (siRNA). In the second phase, a single strand (the guide or antisense strand) of the siRNA associates with proteins to form an RNA-induced silencing complex, or RISC. The guide strand component of RISC then hybridizes with a complementary sequence of a full-length target mRNA. An endonuclease (*Slicer*) in the RISC degrades the target mRNA (Figure 10.10). RNAi is thought to be a part of the body's natural immune system evolved as a defense against retroviruses, such as the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), that store their genetic information in dsRNA.

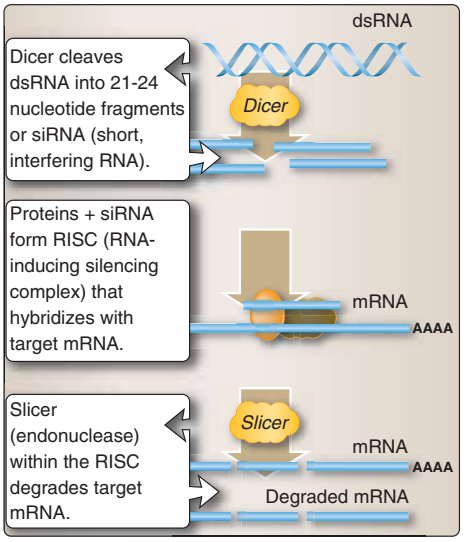


Figure 10.10
RNA interference or RNAi.

Antisense RNA oligonucleotides and inhibitory RNA (RNAi) as potential chemotherapeutic agents

Antisense RNA is a single-stranded RNA that is complementary to an mRNA designed to inhibit specific mRNA translation by its ability to base pair with the mRNA and physically obstruct the translation machinery from accessing the mRNA. This approach was developed in the 1990s to overcome the limitations of cytotoxic chemotherapy using DNA intercalating drugs and antimetabolites, which do not discriminate between normal and cancer cells. Historically, this approach has not yielded results due to the effects of RNA interference, a process that has more recently been elucidated. But this technology has been effective in the creation of the first antisense RNA drug Vitravene (fomivirsen) used to treat cytomegalovirus-induced retinitis in immune-compromised AIDS patients. The drug is a periodically administered intravitreal injection and is claimed to cause only mild side effects as compared to some other antiviral drugs. RNA interference of exogenously supplied double-stranded RNA offers substantial therapeutic potential. Applications that are in clinical trials include siRNA treatment for age-related macular degeneration (AMD), siRNAs against the respiratory syncytial virus, and a phase I trial to treat patients infected with HIV.

Chapter Summary

- Eukaryotic gene expression can be regulated at different levels of gene expression, including transcription, processing, mRNA stability, and translation.
- Transcription can be controlled by several transcription factors and is an important level of control. While general transcription factors are required for basal expression, specific transcription factors increase the transcription of a gene over basal levels when bound to enhancers and other response elements. They are also important for tissue-specific gene expression.
- Some RNA molecules can undergo differential splicing, producing different mRNA molecules encoding slightly different polypeptides.
- Transcription factors have one functional domain for DNA binding and one for transcription activation. Transcription factors can be classified according to the structure of their DNA-binding domains; these include zinc finger proteins, helix-turn-helix proteins, leucine zipper proteins, helix-loop-helix proteins, and steroid receptors. Transcription factors affect the number of RNA polymerases binding DNA.
  - In the cytoplasm, translation can be controlled by both the ability of ribosomes to bind mRNA and by the stability of the mRNA.
  - Sequences in the 3′UTR control stability and sequences in the 5′UTR control translation efficiency.
- Proteins are also made active by posttranslational modifications that include phosphorylation, gamma carboxylation, etc.

Study Questions

10.1 If a newly discovered protein is found to contain leucine zipper domains, the putative function of this protein is in

A. binding to the specific DNA sequences
B. cleaving the mRNA in the nucleus
C. posttranslational modification of the newly synthesized proteins
D. regulating the poly(A) tail of the mRNA
E. regulating the mRNA's half-life

10.1: Correct answer = A. Leucine zipper domains represent amino acid arrangement in transcription factor proteins that bind DNA. It is a motif that is present in the DNA-binding region of a class of transcription factors. Transcription factors do not behave as exonucleases or endonucleases that cleave nucleic acids. They do not directly influence posttranslational changes in newly synthesized proteins or regulate other aspects of the mRNA structure, such as the poly(A) tail or half-life.

10.2 If you replace the 3′UTR sequence of an mRNA with a half-life of 20 min with the 3′UTR of an mRNA with a half-life of 10 h, then the resultant mRNA will have a half-life of

A. 10 min
B. 20 min
C. 5 h and 10 min
D. 10 h
E. 10 h and 20 min

10.2: Correct answer = D. As signals for the mRNA half-life are inherent to the 3′UTR of the mRNA, switching this region between mRNAs with differing half-lives will produce an mRNA with the corresponding half-life. It will not be a product, nor will it change the lifespan of the mRNA to something other than what the sequence encoded by the 3′UTR specifies.

10.3 Tamoxifen, a drug used to treat breast cancer, is a competitive inhibitor of estrogen receptor, a zinc finger protein. Tamoxifen will therefore affect gene expression in these cells mainly by

A. Binding to TATA boxes of estrogen-responsive genes
B. Changing the splice sites within the estrogen-responsive genes
C. Exporting estrogen-responsive mRNAs into the cytoplasm
D. Preventing the transcription of estrogen-responsive genes
E. Rapidly degrading the estrogen-regulated proteins

10.3: Correct answer = D. Since tamoxifen is an inhibitor of the estrogen receptor, a zinc finger protein and a specific transcription factor, it will affect the gene at the transcriptional level. General transcription factors bind around the TATA box of the gene to prime transcription. An inhibitor of transcription may not affect transport or lifespan of target proteins.

10.4 In iron deficiency anemia, ferritin levels are low because ferritin mRNA is

A. Degraded rapidly in the cytoplasm
B. Not transcribed from the ferritin gene
C. Prevented from being translated
D. Retained in the nucleus
E. Transcribed only in small amounts

10.4: Correct answer = C. Since there is a need to respond quickly to the changes in iron levels, the ferritin mRNA is always made but is blocked from being translated due to the binding of proteins in the 5′UTR. Ferritin mRNA is always present in the cytoplasm but not degraded. For reasons mentioned above, the mRNA is transcribed from the ferritin gene. If the regulation is at the level of transport, or RNA processing, the mRNA may be retained in the nucleus. Regulation at the level of transcription is not the primary mode for this mRNA.

10.5 Therapeutic antisense RNA oligonucleotides, such as fomivirsen, bind to a complementary sequence in

A. Genomic DNA and prevent its transcription into RNA
B. Messenger RNA and prevent its translation into protein
C. Small nuclear RNA and prevent assembly of the spliceosome complex
D. Ribosomal RNA and prevent assembly of ribosomes
E. Heterogeneous nuclear RNA and prevent its polyadenylation

10.5: Correct answer = B. Antisense RNA oligonucleotides are designed to bind to the target single-stranded mRNA and block translation. They cannot bind to the double-stranded genomic DNA. They will not affect splicing of the mRNA or its processing. They do not have a direct effect on ribosome assembly.

11 Protein Trafficking

I. OVERVIEW

Proteins are synthesized on either free ribosomes or on ribosomes bound to endoplasmic reticulum (ER) (see also Chapter 5 for a discussion of organelles). Ribosomes are directed to bind to the ER when they are involved in synthesizing proteins destined for insertion into cell membranes, for function within lysosomes, and for secretion outside the cell (Figure 11.1). The new proteins will be modified within the ER and trafficked or moved through a membrane-enclosed transport vesicle to the Golgi complex where additional modifications will be made. Structural features within the protein being produced are recognized by the organelles, facilitating the movement of the protein. These structural features are called **signal sequences** and direct the protein to locations where it can be modified properly in order to become functional. The sequences act as "address labels" routing the new proteins to their proper destinations (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, pp. 166–169). Proteins that will function in the nucleus, mitochondria, or peroxisomes are synthesized on free ribosomes (Figure 11.2). These proteins also contain structural features that enable them to be taken into the organelle where they will function.

In all cases, if the appropriate signals are not incorporated within the new proteins, then the proteins will follow a **default pathway**. Proteins synthesized on bound ribosomes will be secreted from the cell unless they contain the proper signal to direct them to an intracellular location. For proteins synthesized on free ribosomes, the default is to remain in the cytosol.

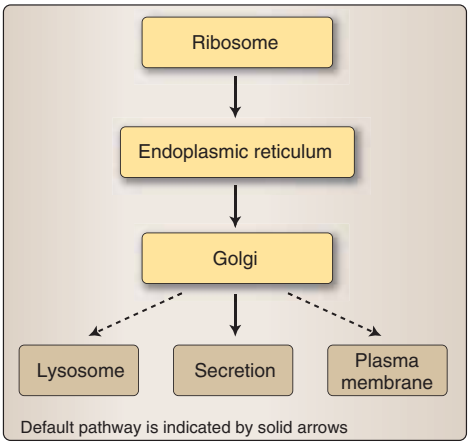


Figure 11.1
Trafficking of proteins synthesized on bound ribosomes.

II. TRAFFICKING OF PROTEINS SYNTHESIZED ON BOUND RIBOSOMES

The presence of a particular amino acid sequence within a newly synthesized protein causes the ribosome synthesizing it to bind to the ER. This sequence is an **N-terminal** (at the first or amino-terminal region of the protein) **hydrophobic** (containing amino acids that do not interact with water) **signal sequence,** sometimes called a leader sequence. When the leader sequence is present in a nascent polypeptide or newly synthesized protein still attached to its ribosome, cytosolic compounds composed of protein and RNA known as **signal recognition particles** (SRPs) facilitate the ribosome's attachment to the ER (Figure 11.3). SRPs and the signal sequence together bind to an SRP receptor on the membrane of the ER (see also Chapter 5).The ribosome docks with the membrane and the new protein (also called nascent polypeptide) enters into the space or lumen between membranes of the ER.

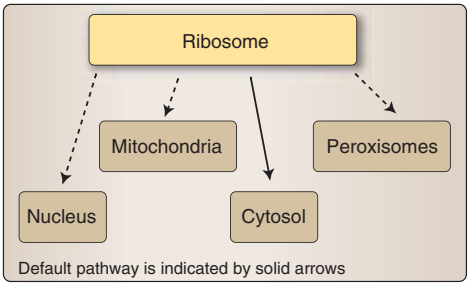


Figure 11.2
Trafficking of proteins synthesized on free ribosomes.

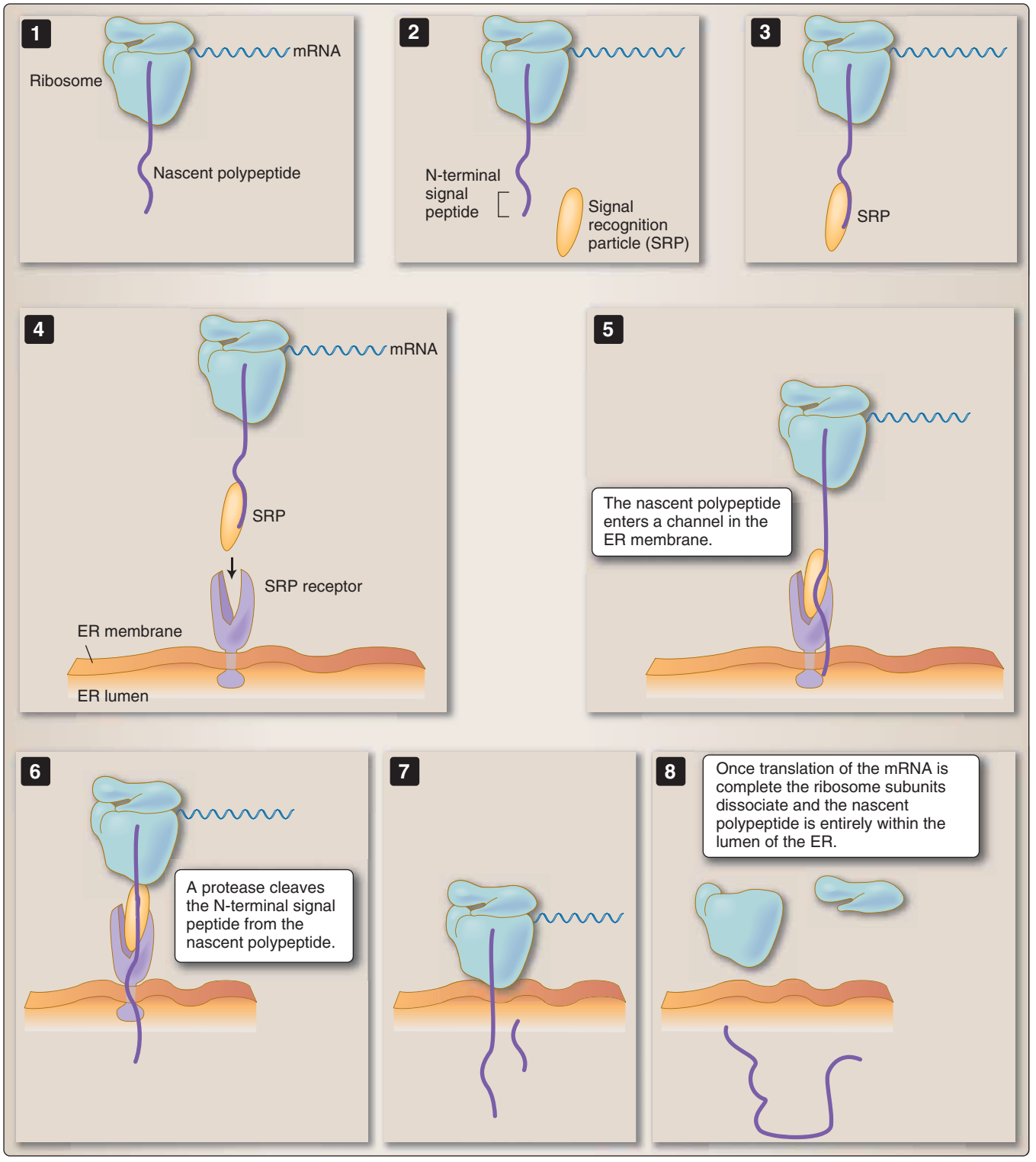


Figure 11.3
Attachment of ribosomes to ER.

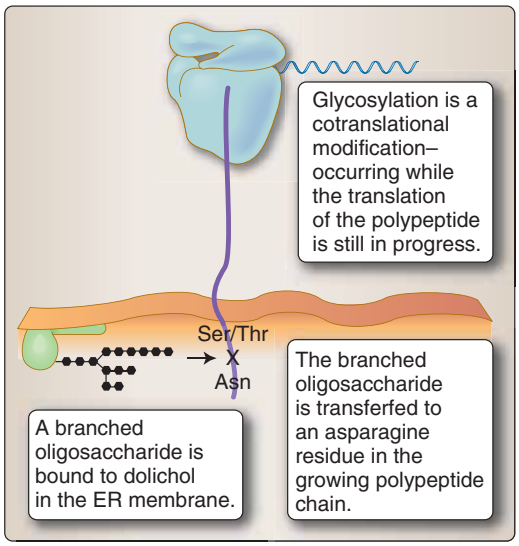


Figure 11.4
Glycosylation in the lumen of the ER.

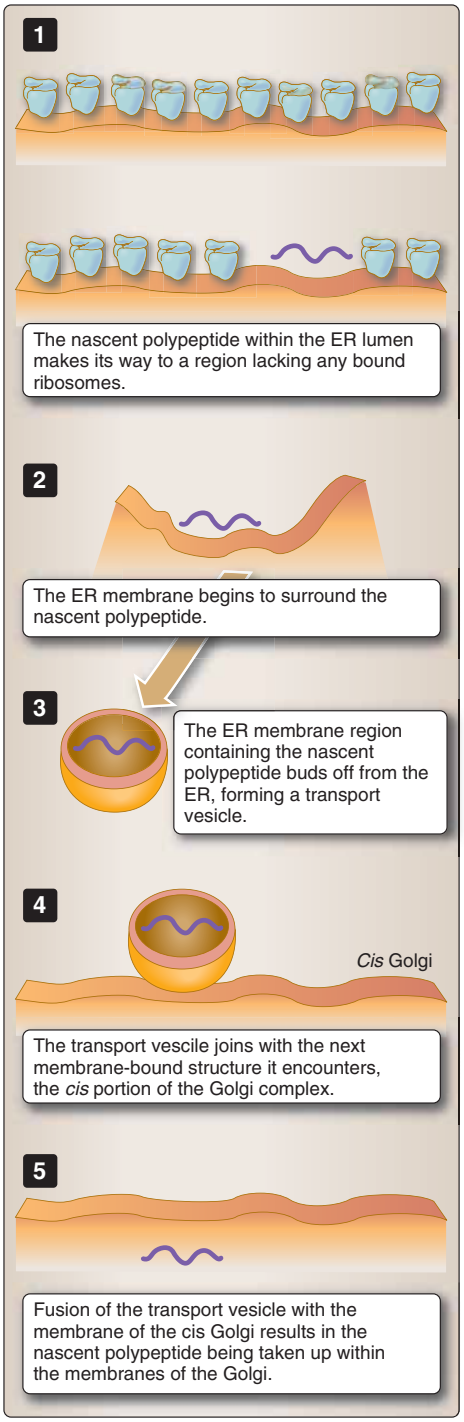


Figure 11.5
Trafficking from ER to Golgi complex in transport vesicles.

A. Endoplasmic reticulum

Upon entry of the signal sequence into the lumen of the ER, the signal sequence is removed from the protein by the action of proteases. The remainder of the amino acid sequence enters into the spaces between ER membranes (the lumen). Most new proteins are then glycosylated (carbohydrate is added to them). If a nascent polypeptide contains either of two three–amino acid sequences, then carbohydrate will be transferred to an amino acid within the protein. The sequences are Asn-X-Ser and Asn-X-Thr where Asn is asparagine, X is any amino acid, Ser is serine, and Thr is threonine. Carbohydrate, in the form of a branched oligosaccharide, will be transferred from the membrane lipid, **dolichol**, to the amide group of asparagine in a process known as **N-linked glycosylation** (Figure 11.4). The attached carbohydrates are modified and trimmed within the ER. The ribosome remains attached to the ER until the termination of translation of the nascent polypeptide. Modifications made to a new protein while it is being translated are termed **cotranslational processes**.

Once translation is complete, the ribosome dissociates from the ER. While some new proteins within the ER lumen are destined to remain and function in the ER, most will continue to traffic onward to the Golgi. Such proteins make their way next through the series of membrane spaces within the ER to an area of smooth ER (lacks attached ribosomes) known as the **transitional element**. This region facilitates transfer of the nascent polypeptide or new protein to the next organelle in its path, the Golgi complex. The membrane of the transitional element surrounds and encloses the nascent polypeptide until it buds off from the ER to become a **transport vesicle (**Figure 11.5). The vesicle next fuses with the next membrane-containing structure it encounters, the first region of the Golgi complex.

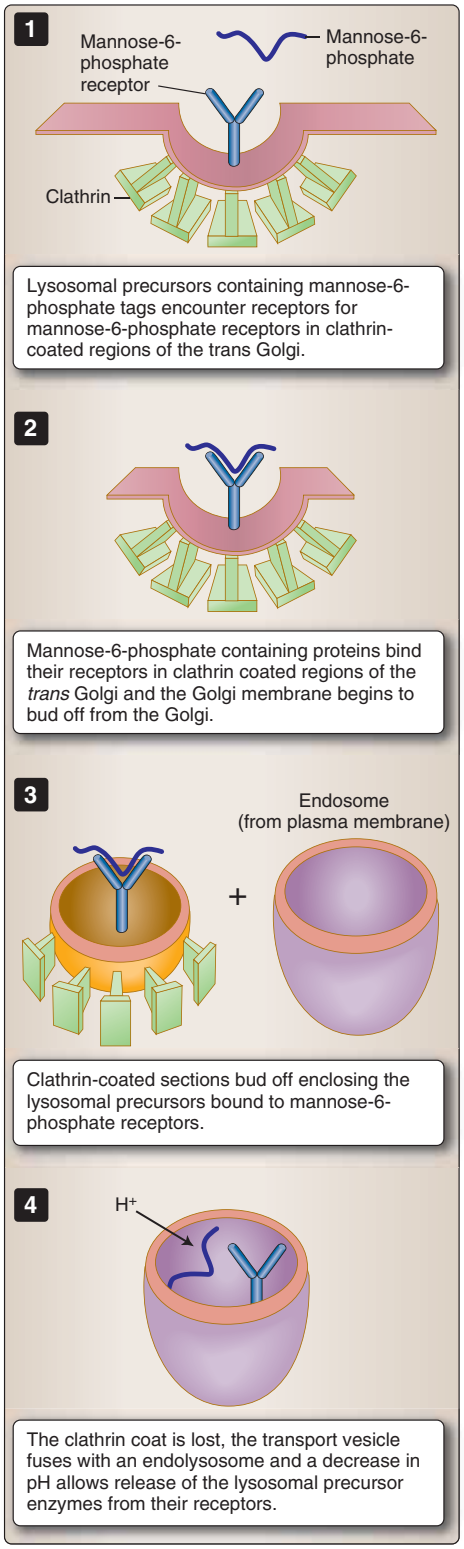


Figure 11.7
Movement of new proteins to lysosomes.

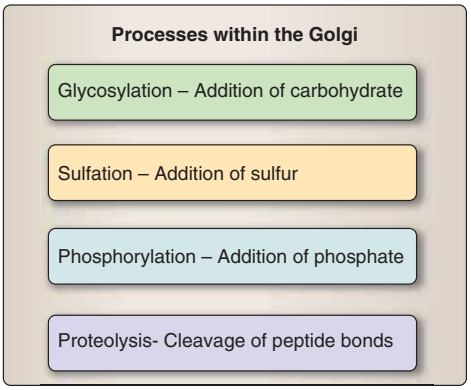


Figure 11.6
Modifications of proteins within the Golgi complex.

B. Golgi complex

The Golgi complex is a series of flat, stacked, membranous sacs with three main regions, the **cis, medial,** and **trans** Golgi. The new protein enters the cis Golgi and will be transferred to the medial and trans Golgi via transport vesicles. Each region is responsible for performing distinct modifications such as glycosylations (addition of carbohydrate), phosphorylations (addition of phosphate), sulfation (addition of sulfur), or proteolysis (enzyme mediated breakdown of protein) to the proteins being processed (Figure 11.6). For example, **O-linked glycosylations** occur in the Golgi when carbohydrates are attached to hydroxyl (OH) groups of serine or threonine amino acids within Asn-X-Ser/Thr sequences of the nascent polypeptide. Some proteins will remain in the Golgi and function in the processing of other new proteins that pass through the Golgi. But, most will be modified and sent onward. Proteins destined to function within lysosomes are phosphorylated on mannoses (particular sugar residues) that have been added to the protein, creating a **mannose-6-phosphate** tag on lysosomal proteins.

C. Trans Golgi network and onward

The **trans Golgi network** (TGN) is the final sorting and packaging region of the Golgi. From there, nascent polypeptides are sent either to a lysosome or to the outside of the cell.

1. **Lysosomes:** Lysosomes are membrane-enclosed organelles with acidic internal pH that contain potent enzymes called **acid hydrolases** (see also Chapter 5). These enzymes function within the acidic environment of lysosomes to hydrolyze (break down) nonfunctional macromolecules (proteins, nucleic acids, carbohydrates, and lipids). Acid hydrolase precursors were given mannose-6-phosphate tags earlier within the Golgi complex. In order to segregate these proteins from other cellular

proteins in the Golgi and to ensure that they will be incorporated within a lysosome, receptors for mannose-6-phosphate are located in certain regions of the TGN that are bound by the coat protein, **clathrin** (Figure 11.7). Mannose-6-phosphate–containing proteins bind to their receptors and then the TGN that contains the new acid hydrolases bound to their receptors buds off, enclosing the new lysosomal proteins in a transport vesicle. Vesicles bound for lysosomes fuse with **endosomes** (transport vesicles from the plasma membrane created by endocytosis). The pH is reduced within the precursor lysosome by the pumping in of protons (H^+). Next, the clathrin coat is lost and the new proteins dissociate from their mannose-6-phosphate receptors. The receptors are recycled back to the TGN for later use. Phosphate is removed from the mannose-6-phosphates of acid hydrolase precursors and they become functional enzymes within the lysosome. Since the default pathway for proteins synthesized on bound ribosomes is to be secreted from the cell, defects in tagging of precursor acid hydrolases will result in their secretion from the cell as nonfunctional proteins.

2. **Secretion from the cell:** New proteins that leave the TGN and are not destined to function in lysosomes or to be inserted into plasma membranes will be secreted from the cell. Many proteins are released from the cell as soon as their transport vesicle can fuse with the plasma membrane. Other proteins are stored within the cytoplasm within their transport vesicle (sometimes called granules) until the appropriate time for their release from the cell.

   a. **Constitutive secretion:** Vesicles carrying most secretory proteins leave the TGN, in a continuous process fuse with the nearby plasma membrane, and release the contents of the vesicle to the outside of the cell (Figure 11.8). This process is known as constitutive secretion. It operates for proteins released regularly from the cell that produced them. Extracellular matrix proteins, including collagen, elastin, and fibronectin, are examples of proteins that are secreted in a constitutive manner from cells within connective tissues (see also Chapter 2).

   b. **Regulated secretion:** Other proteins are released from cells only at certain times, in a discontinuous process known as regulated secretion or **exocytosis**. Proteins released in this manner generally play important regulatory roles. They are concentrated within the TGN prior to their release within a transport vesicle. (However, clathrin is no longer believed to be involved as a coat protein during regulated secretion.) These proteins are then held in the cytoplasm within these vesicles or storage granules until the appropriate stimulus is received for their secretion. For example, insulin is released from β cells in the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas only in response to elevated levels of blood glucose.

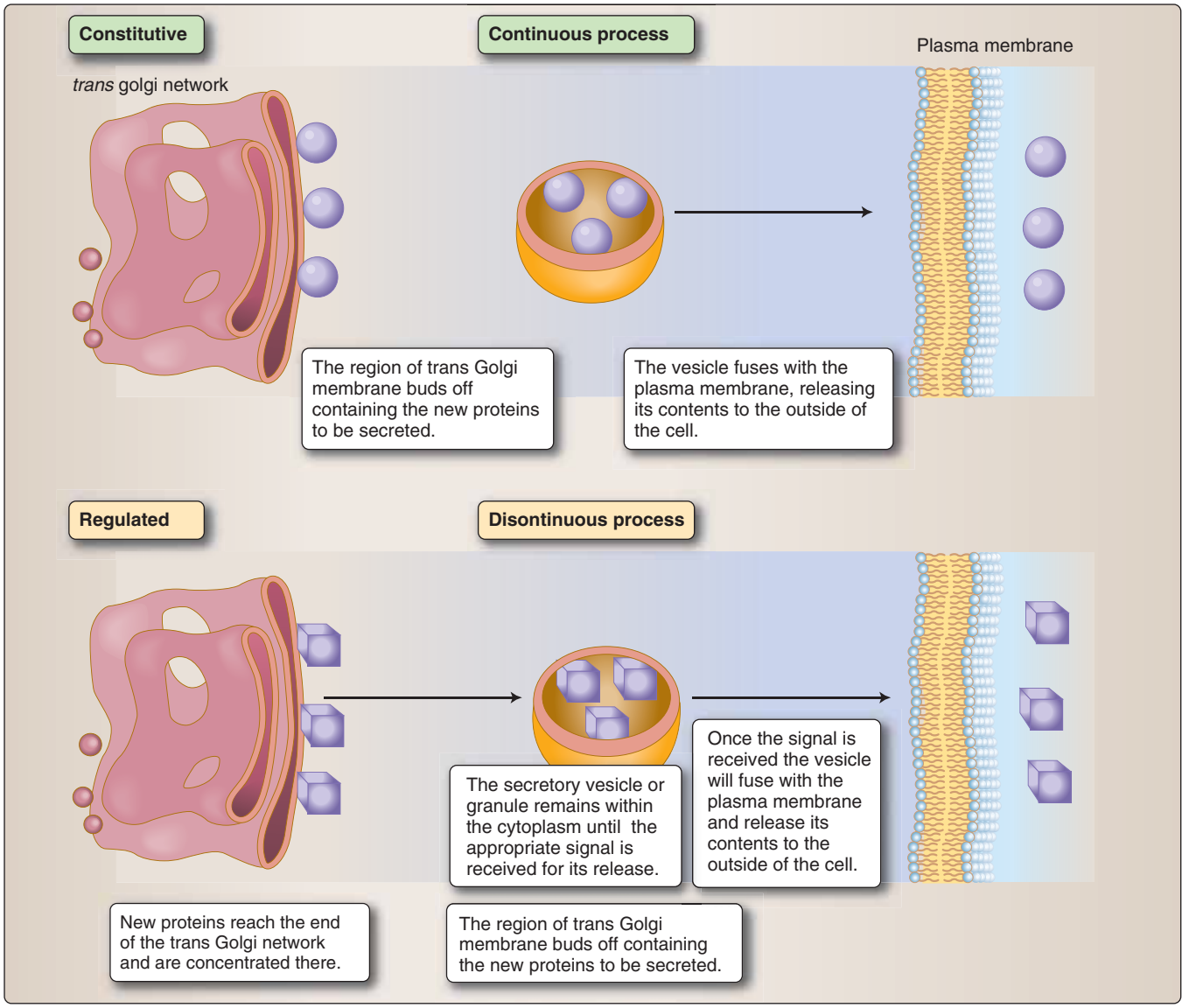


Figure 11.8
Constitutive and regulated secretions.

III. TRAFFICKING OF PROTEINS SYNTHESIZED ON FREE RIBOSOMES

Proteins destined to remain in the cytosol or to function in the nucleus, mitochondria, or peroxisomes are synthesized on free ribosomes (see Figure 11.2). Ribosomes synthesizing these proteins will remain free because the proteins lack an N-terminal signal sequence that causes a ribosome to bind to the ER. However, other structural features within the new proteins can act as tags to direct them to organelles. The default pathway for proteins produced on free ribosomes is to remain in the cytosol. If the correct signals are not incorporated into nuclear, mitochondrial, or peroxisomal precursor proteins, then they will remain nonfunctional in the cytosol.

A. Cytosolic proteins

Intracellular proteins that function outside the boundaries of organelles are considered cytosolic proteins. Examples include structural proteins within the cytoskeleton, such as actin and tubulin (see Chapter 4). In addition, enzymes that function in carbohydrate metabolism, including those in glycolysis (breakdown of glucose to produce ATP) and metabolism of glycogen (a storage form of glucose), all function in the cytosol. These proteins lack an N-terminal signal peptide and their ribosomes remain free. They possess no other structural features to cause them to be taken up by any other organelle.

B. Nuclear proteins

Nuclei contain the genomic DNA of the cell. In addition, they must contain proteins, including enzymes needed for DNA replication and transcription (see also Chapters 8 and 9). The mRNA encoding these nuclear proteins leaves the nucleus to be translated on ribosomes in the cytosol. Most proteins that gain access to the nucleus contain a **nuclear localization signal,** or NLS, that allows them to pass through a nuclear pore. There are several types of NLSs, composed of different types of amino acid sequences. All nuclear localization sequences have in common that they bind strongly to **importin**, a protein that facilitates entry into the nucleus. Together, importin and a newly synthesized protein with an NLS bind to a receptor on the nuclear envelope and move through a nuclear pore (Figure 11.9). Once within the boundaries of the nuclear envelope, importin dissociates from its protein cargo (in a GTP-dependent process) and the free, newly synthesized nuclear protein has reached its destination.

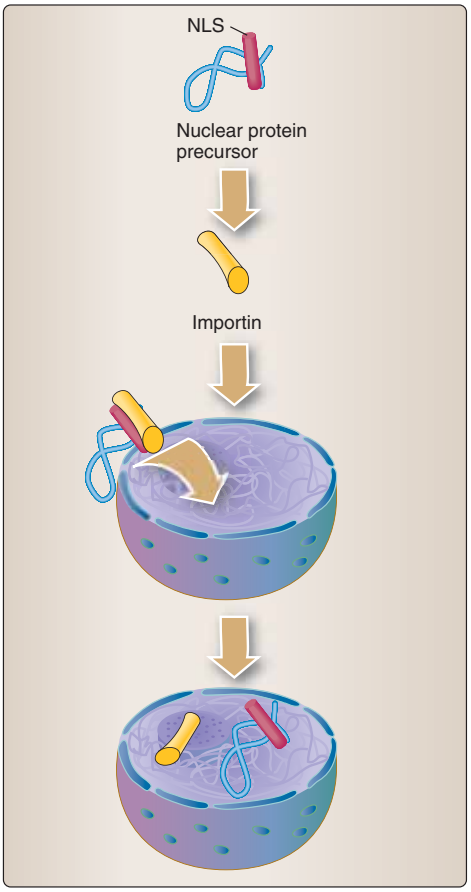


Figure 11.9
Transport into the nucleus.

C. Mitochondrial proteins

Mitochondria contain their own DNA and also have ribosomes for protein synthesis. However, only about 1% of proteins in mitochondria are encoded by mitochondrial DNA. The remaining mitochondrial proteins are encoded by nuclear DNA and are synthesized on ribosomes in the cytosol. These proteins include those that function in oxidative phosphorylation to increase the yield of ATP from the breakdown of glucose (see also Chapter 5 and *LIR Biochemistry*, pp. 77–80). They must be imported into the mitochondria from the cytosol and contain an N-terminal mitochondrial import sequence (Figure 11.10). The proteins are maintained in an unfolded form prior to entry in the mitochondria by the binding of **chaperone proteins** that require ATP for their function. The translocase of outer mitochondrial membrane (TOM) complex imports new mitochondrial proteins across that first barrier. Next, they bind to the translocase of inner mitochondrial membrane (TIM) complex that allows them to gain entry to the mitochondrial matrix. ATP and the membrane potential are used to power the import of proteins to the inner space (matrix) within mitochondria.

D. Peroxisomal proteins

Peroxisomes contain hydrolytic enzymes that must be taken inside the organelles from the cytosol (see also Chapter 5). Proteins destined to

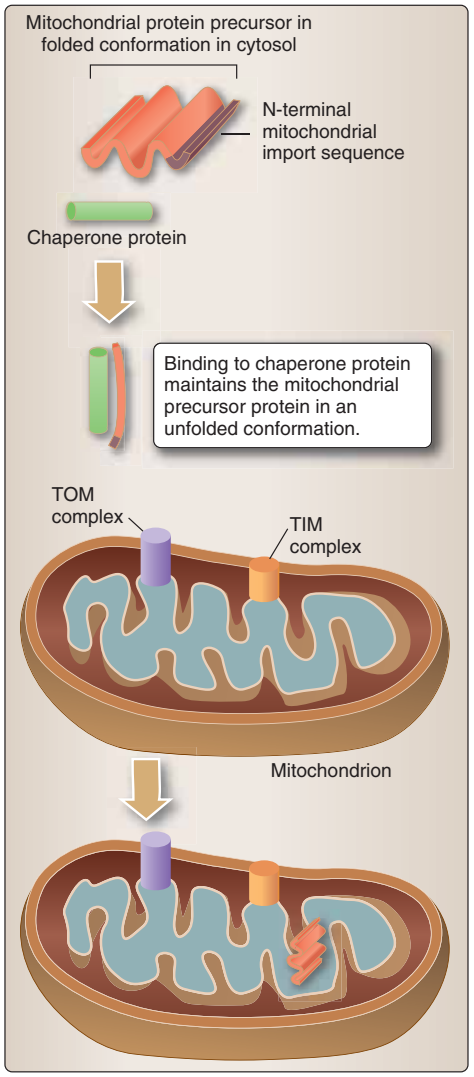


Figure 11.10
Transport into mitochondria.

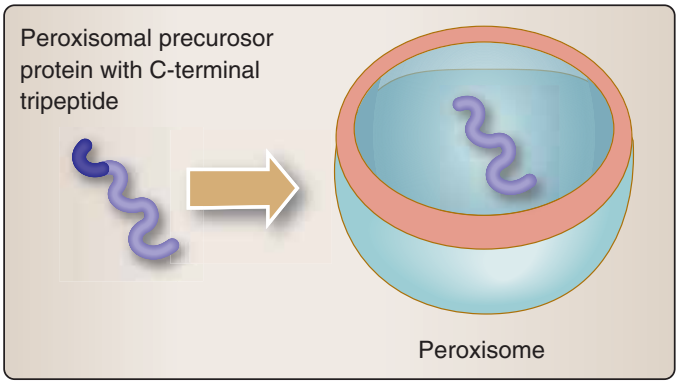


Figure 11.11
Transport into peroxisomes.

function in peroxisomes contain a C-terminal or carboxyl-terminal (the last end of the protein to be synthesized) tripeptide (series of three amino acids) that functions as a peroxisomal targeting signal (Figure 11.11). The importance of proper transport to peroxisomes is illustrated by Zellweger syndrome, caused by a defect in transport to peroxisomes in liver, kidneys, and brain. Affected individuals do not usually survive beyond 6 months of age.

Chapter Summary

- Proteins are synthesized either on free ribosomes or on ribosomes bound to endoplasmic reticulum.
- Ribosomes bind to endoplasmic reticulum when proteins they are synthesizing contain an N-terminal signal sequence or leader sequence.
- Ribosomes remain free when proteins they are synthesizing lack a leader sequence.
- The default pathway for proteins synthesized on bound ribosomes is to enter the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum, then to move to the Golgi complex, and then to be secreted from the cell.
- Proteins destined to function in lysosomes receive a mannose-6-phosphate tag in the Golgi.
- Proteins secreted from the cell are released either in a constitutive or in a regulated manner.
- Proteins synthesized on free ribosomes will remain in the cytosol unless they contain a tag to direct them to the nucleus, mitochondria, or peroxisomes.

Study Questions

11.1 A ribosome bound to endoplasmic reticulum is involved in translating a new protein. The final destination of that new protein may be

A. The cytosol
B. A lysosome
C. Mitochondria
D. The nucleus
E. A peroxisome

11.2 The intended final destination of a new protein is within a peroxisome. However, the peroxisomal targeting signal is not properly incorporated into the precursor protein. The final destination of that protein will therefore be

A. The cytosol
B. A lysosome
C. Mitochondria
D. The nucleus
E. Outside the cell

11.3 A precursor protein intended to function within a lysosome fails to receive a proper lysosomal tag while it is being processed. The protein will therefore be sent to

A. A peroxisome
B. A mitochondrion
C. The cytosol
D. The nucleus
E. Outside the cell

11.4 Which organelle is the next stop in the normal trafficking of a protein exiting the endoplasmic reticulum?

A. Golgi complex
B. Lysosomes
C. Mitochondria
D. Nucleus
E. Peroxisomes

11.5 A 3-month-old male child has a defect that results in failure to add mannose-6-phosphate to certain proteins within the Golgi complex. This defect will result in abnormal proteins in

A. The Golgi complex
B. Lysosomes
C. Mitochondria
D. Nuclei
E. Plasma membranes

11.1: Correct answer = B. Lysosomal proteins are synthesized on ribosomes bound to endoplasmic reticulum. Cytosolic, mitochondrial, nuclear, and peroxisomal proteins are all synthesized on free ribosomes.

11.2: Correct answer = A. Peroxisomal proteins are synthesized on free ribosomes and the default pathway is to remain in the cytosol. Lysosomal proteins are synthesized on bound ribosomes and traffic through the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi complex. Both mitochondrial and nuclear proteins are synthesized on free ribosomes. Both require tags different from peroxisomal targeting signals in order to enter into their destined organelles. Secretion from the cell is the default pathway for proteins secreted on bound ribosomes.

11.3: Correct answer = E. Lysosomal proteins are synthesized on bound ribosomes and the default pathway for them is to be secreted from the cell. If the mannose-6-phosphate lysosomal tag is not incorporated into an intended lysosomal precursor, then it will be sent outside the cell. Cytosolic, mitochondrial, nuclear, and peroxisomal proteins are all synthesized on free ribosomes where the default is to remain in the cytosol.

11.4: Correct answer = A. The Golgi complex is the next stop in the trafficking of a protein that is exiting the endoplasmic reticulum. Proteins within the endoplasmic reticulum are synthesized on bound ribosomes. Free ribosomes synthesize proteins in the mitochondria, nucleus, and peroxisomes. None of them enter the endoplasmic reticulum. The lysosome is the final destination for some proteins synthesized on bound ribosomes that are in the endoplasmic reticulum. After leaving the Golgi complex, lysosomal proteins are sent to the lysosome. Lysosomes are not, however, on the main trafficking route for proteins synthesized on bound ribosomes.

11.5: Correct answer = B. Mannose-6-phosphate is the tag added to lysosomal proteins. Proteins that function in the Golgi are not modified by the addition of mannose-6-phosphate. Mitochondrial and nuclear proteins are synthesized on free ribosomes and do not enter the Golgi. Proteins in the plasma membrane traffic through the Golgi but are not given mannose-6-phosphate tags which are used to direct proteins to lysosomes.

Protein Degradation 12

I. OVERVIEW

All proteins exist in dynamic equilibrium with the environment constantly adjusting to the changing physiological and environmental needs. Protein levels are maintained both at the level of synthesis as well as at the level of degradation. All proteins have a varied but finite life time within cells and are eventually degraded using specialized proteolytic systems. Proteins with a short half-life and defective proteins are generally degraded by an energy- (ATP-) dependent system. A second system operates in the lysosomes and is important for recycling amino acids of the membrane and extracellular proteins and proteins with extended half-lives.

II. INTRACELLULAR PROTEIN DEGRADATION PATHWAYS

Protein's degradation permits the cell a constant supply of amino acids as well as prevents the accumulation of abnormal proteins. There is an enormous variation in the half-life of individual proteins and it is a direct reflection of their role within the cell. Short-lived proteins with half-life in seconds and minutes are degraded utilizing an ATP-dependent protein degradation pathway which operates in the cytosol. This system is also important for the degradation of defective proteins, proteins that have suffered damage, and key regulatory enzymes of metabolic pathways. This pathway is mediated by a complex of proteins that form the proteosome and carry out the hydrolytic cleavage of different target proteins. The second system for protein degradation utilizes the lysosomes within the cells. Lysosomes form important organelles for protein degradation as they have the capacity to degrade a variety of biological molecules. Lysosomes generally degrade membrane proteins, extracellular proteins, and proteins with long half-lives (Figure 12.1).

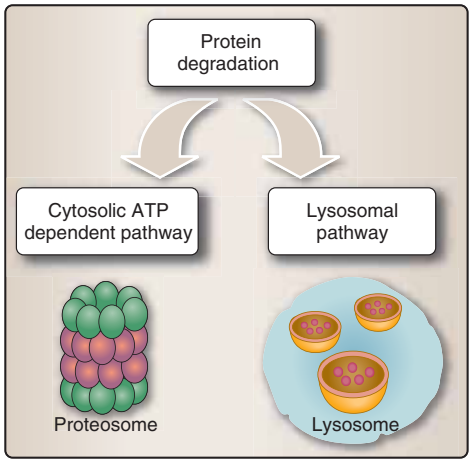


Figure 12.1
Protein degradation pathways.

A. General mechanism of lysosomal protein degradation

Lysosomes are membrane-enclosed organelles that contain digestive enzymes such as lipases, nucleases, and proteases. The interior of the lysosome is more acidic than the cytosol (pH 4.8 vs. 7.2). It is important to prevent uncontrolled degradation of cellular content and for this reason, one pathway for the uptake of proteins targeted for degradation involves **autophagy**, a process by which vesicles are formed (autophagosomes) that engulf small amounts of cytoplasm or specific organelles using portions of the endoplasmic reticulum (Figure 12.2). Fusion of the vesicles with lysosomes results in the

release of the lysosomal hydrolytic enzymes causing the degradation of macromolecules. While different autophagic pathways exist causing both selective and nonselective protein degradation, they also share a number of common steps making these pathways both specific and flexible.

Autophagy and neurodegenerative diseases

In chronic degenerative diseases such as Huntington's, Alzheimer's, and Parkinson's, there is an abnormal accumulation of defective proteins in the nervous tissue. While it was initially thought that autophagy contributed to the pathogenesis of these disorders due to the demonstration of accumulation of autophagosomes in the brains of these patients, recent more compelling evidence suggests that autophagy may actually work to protect against diverse neurodegenerative diseases. The accumulation of autophagosomes is now thought to primarily represent the activation of autophagy as a beneficial physiological response in these conditions.

Selective lysosomal degradation

Under certain conditions, lysosomes selectively degrade cytosolic proteins. One example of selective degradation is starvation during which proteins containing the amino acid sequence Lys-Phe-Glu-Arg-Gln are targeted to the lysosomes. This process also requires unfolding of the polypeptide chains of the protein (mediated by cytosolic chaperones), a lysosomal membrane receptor to transport proteins across the lysosomal membrane. The target proteins usually have long half-lives and tend to be dispensable proteins which under stress and starvation conditions are sacrificed to produce amino acids and energy for the support of basic metabolic reactions (see Figure 12.2).

B. Proteosomal degradation

The ATP-dependent pathway involves the protein **ubiquitin,** a highly conserved protein containing 76 amino acids which, as the name suggests, is ubiquitous in the eukaryotic kingdom. Proteins destined for destruction are tagged by covalent attachment of ubiquitin and subsequently degraded in a proteolytic complex called the **proteosome** (see Figure 12.1).

1. **Modes of recognition of substrates for degradation:** Half-life of proteins correlates with their amino-terminal residue. In general, proteins with N-terminal Met, Ser, Ala, Thr, Val, or Gly have half-lives greater than 20 h and proteins with N-terminal Phe, Leu, Asp, Lys, or Arg have half-lives of 3 min or less. Proteins rich in Pro (P), Glu (E), Ser (S), and Thr (T) ("PEST" proteins) are more rapidly degraded than other proteins. Other mechanisms for recognition include recognition of phosphorylated substrates, recognition of ancillary proteins bound to the substrate, and recognition of mutated abnormal protein. Different classes of enzymes (E3 ligases—see below) are involved in each pathway for degrading specific substrates as shown in Figure 12.3.

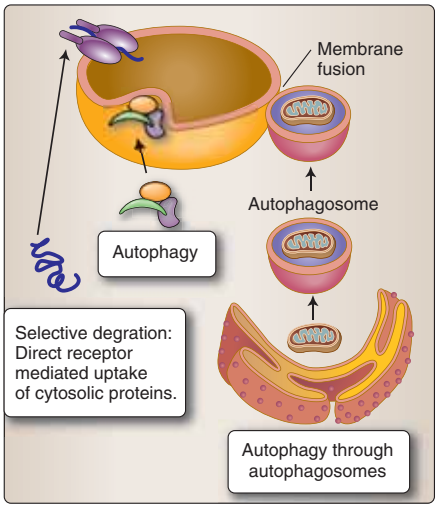


Figure 12.2
General scheme of lysosomal protein degradation.

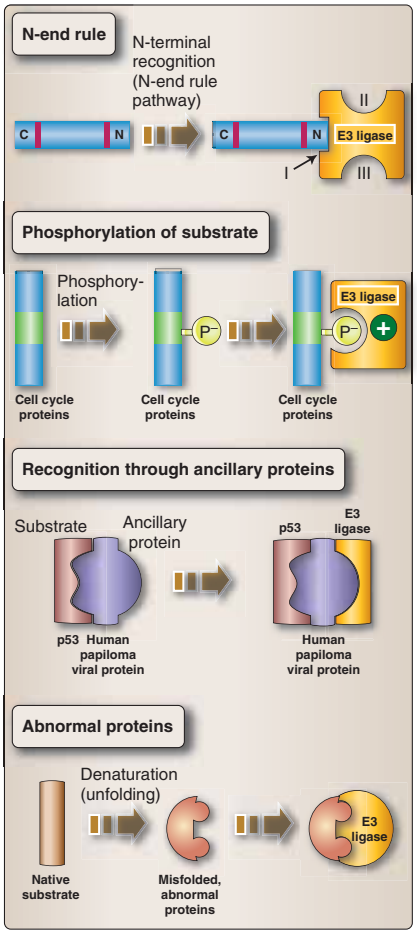


Figure 12.3
Modes of recognition of substrates for degradation.

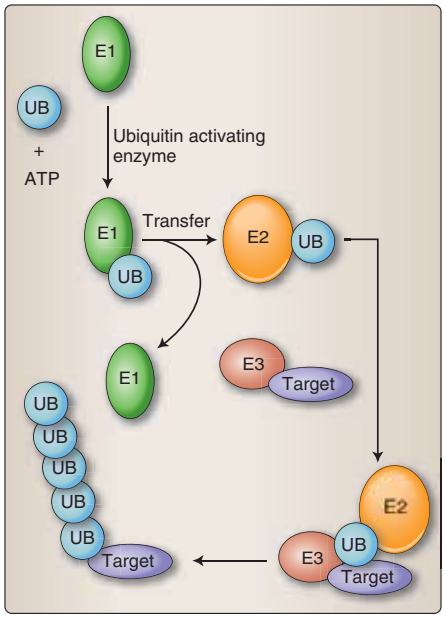


Figure 12.4
Steps in proteins ubiquitination.

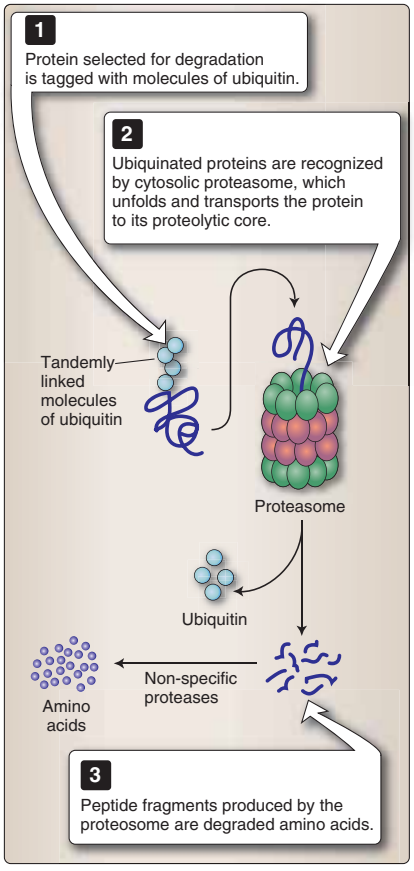


Figure 12.5
Degradation of proteins in proteosomes.

2. **Ubiquitination of proteins:** Ubiquitin is covalently linked to proteins via an ATP-dependent pathway involving three separate enzymes (E1, E2, and E3) (Figure 12.4). These reactions result in linking the carboxy-terminal glycine residue in ubiquitin to a lysine residue in the protein to be degraded. The process occurs through a sequence of three steps requiring the ubiquitin-activating enzyme (E1) to initially bind ubiquitin followed by the transfer to the ubiquitin-conjugating enzyme (E2). The ubiquitin ligase (E3) then promotes transfer of ubiquitin from E2 to the lysine residue of the protein recognized by the E3 as being slated for degradation. Generally, several ubiquitins are added to form a chain of ubiquitins linking a lysine residue in the ubiquitin to the carboxy terminal of the adjacent ubiquitin.

3. **Proteosome:** The 26S proteosome is a large complex of proteins (made up of about 60 protein subunits) and structurally resembles a large cylinder that is covered on both ends (Figure 12.5). It contains a central core (20S) and a 19S regulatory particle at either end. The central 20S core particle is barrel shaped formed of four rings. The outer rings are formed from seven alpha subunits and the inner ring is formed from seven beta subunits. Some of the beta subunits have protease activity. The 19S regulatory particle is important for recognition and binding of polyubiquitinated proteins, removal of ubiquitin, unfolding the protein substrate, and translocation into the central core. These diverse functions are facilitated by the complex composition of the 19S particles, which is made up of several ATPases and other enzymes. The unfolded proteins are then hydrolyzed within the central core into smaller peptides. These peptides emerge from the opposite end of the 20S particle and are further degraded by cytosolic peptidases (Figure 12.5).

Cancer causing HPVs target host cellular proteins for degradation

It is widely accepted that certain human papillomaviruses (HPVs), including HPV types 16 and 18, play an etiologic role in cervical carcinogenesis. The major oncoproteins of these HPVs are encoded by the E6 and E7 genes, which are the only viral genes that are generally retained and expressed in HPV-positive cancer cells. P53 tumor suppressor protein (see Chapters 21 and 22) is a target of these high-risk human papillomaviral strains. However, unlike most human cancers where p53 is inactivated by missense mutations, the mechanism of inactivation in cervical cancers is unique. P53 is targeted by the HPV E6 oncoprotein which binds it and utilizes the cell's ubiquitin-protein ligase E6-AP to target p53 for degradation (see Figure 12.3). In normal cells, p53 is generally targeted for degradation by a different ubiquitin ligase called Mdm2 (an E3 ligase) rather than E6-AP. While some classes of E3 proteins function as adaptors that bring E2 enzymes into complex with their substrates (the RING class of proteins to which Mdm2 belongs), E6-AP belongs to a class of ubiquitin-protein ligases called HECT E3 proteins which directly transfer ubiquitin to their substrates.

4. **Regulation of ubiquitination:** Ubiquitination is a highly regulated process which is important for protein degradation. While several ubiquitin molecules have to be added to the protein destined for degradation, some proteins appear to be monoubiquitinated and this type of regulation determines protein function. A minimum of four ubiquitin molecules on the target protein are critical for efficient degradation of the protein.

Proteosome inhibitors as anticancer agents

Bortezomib is the first therapeutic proteosome inhibitor to be tested in humans. It is approved for the treatment of multiple myeloma (cancer of the plasma cells) and mantle cell lymphoma (a rare cancer of the lymphocytes). The drug is a peptide and binds in the catalytic site of the 26S proteosome and inhibits the degradation of proteins. Bortezomib is thought to inhibit the degradation of proapoptotic factors, thereby increasing the death of the cancer cells through apoptosis. Other mechanisms may exist for the effectiveness of the drug.

Chapter Summary

- All proteins are degraded eventually using the cell's proteolytic system.
- The two systems for protein degradation are the lysosomal protein degradation pathway and the ATP-dependent proteosomal degradation pathway.
- Proteins with shorter half-lives are degraded through the proteosomal pathway, while proteins with longer half-lives utilize the lysosomal pathway.
- Autophagy through the lysosomal pathway is important for generation of energy and amino acids during cellular stress.
- Proteins destined for degradation are covalently attached to a chain of ubiquitin residues.
- Proteosomal degradation is initiated by a multistep process requiring enzymes that add ubiquitin to the protein targeted for degradation.
- Proteosomes are large protein complexes that carry out the actual breakdown of proteins to smaller peptides while regenerating ubiquitin.
- The half-life of the protein is determined both by the amino-terminus residue and by the amino acid composition of the protein.

Study Questions

12.1 Autophagy refers to

A. Removal and subsequent breakdown of membrane vesicles within the cells
B. Breakdown of cytoplasmic proteins in the lysosomal compartment
C. A process that generates energy and amino acids when a cell is under stress
D. The formation of an autophagosome followed by digestion by lysosomal hydrolases
E. All of the above

12.2 A protein with a short half-life

A. Usually has an N-terminus serine amino acid
B. Is preferentially degraded by the lysosomal pathway
C. Has a C-terminal phenylalanine amino acid
D. Is tagged with ubiquitin before degradation
E. Is degraded into constituent amino acids in autophagosomes

12.3 A proteosome is a(n)

A. Proteolytic complex that degrades all cellular proteins
B. Enzyme complex required for the addition of ubiquitin to proteins destined for degradation
C. Proteolytic complex consisting of ATPases and other enzymes to degrade proteins
D. Complex composed of a central core and one regulatory particle
E. Complex of proteins that is present in the lysosomes of cells

12.1: Correct answer = E. Autophagy is a process by which organelles or cytoplasmic proteins are degraded in the lysosomal compartment. This process usually proceeds through the formation of an autophagosome which then fuses with the lysosomal membrane causing the release and degradation of the contents. Autophagy is also activated when the cell is under stress and requires raw materials such as amino acids and energy.

12.2: Correct answer = D. Proteins with short half-lives are usually degraded through the proteosome pathway after tagging them with ubiquitin. Proteins with N-terminus serine have a long half-life and are preferentially degraded by the lysosomes. The C-terminal amino acid residue does not affect the half-life of a protein. Autophagosomes are intermediates in the lysosomal protein degradation pathway.

12.3: Correct answer = C. Proteosomes are barrel-like structures that are made of several protein subunits with an ability to degrade intracellular ubiquitinated proteins. This process requires ATP. It selectively degrades intracellular proteins with short half-lives and these proteins have to be ubiquitinated. Proteosomes remove ubiquitin from the target proteins and are composed of a central core and two regulatory regions. Proteosomes are present in the cytosol of cells and are distinct from the lysosomal pathway of protein degradation.

UNIT III
Membrane Transport

There is a point where in the mystery of existence contradictions meet; where movement is not all movement and stillness is not all stillness; where the idea and the form, the within and the without, are united; where infinite becomes finite, yet not

—Rabindranath Tagore (Indian poet, 1861–1941)

Oftentimes in cellular life, the concentration of a critical molecule is greater outside than within the confines of the plasma membrane. Ions and nutrients are often able to cross the barrier, nourishing and providing the cell with essential constituents. Such molecules generally move along or down the concentration gradient of the molecule in a passive manner. In the first chapter of this unit, we will consider basic concepts of transport, mainly focusing on passive transport processes. Additionally, we will consider osmosis, or movement of water. Since cells exist within an aqueous environment, water, the fluid of life, continuously flows into and out of cells via protein channels in the membrane. While water transport is constant and involves large volumes over time, there is no net movement of water when isotonic conditions exist. The vast movement appears to be negligible when it is not! At times, a cell requires a crucial molecule that is already present in higher concentration within than outside its boundaries. Contrary to what may be viewed as prudent use of energy currency, a cell may use an active transport process, powered by ATP to pump in the molecule, which is then sometimes used to generate more energy for the cell. Active transport is the topic of the second chapter in this unit. For our third chapter, we discuss in detail the transport of glucose into cells as cells have an almost insatiable need for this carbohydrate. Disruptions of glucose transport are seen in diabetes mellitus. The final chapter in this unit concerns transport of drugs. These synthetic molecules can exploit the transport mechanisms that have evolved to meet normal cellular needs. With them, we have treatments for many illnesses and perhaps even the potential for extending the finite existence of our cells and our species.

Basic Concepts of Transport

13

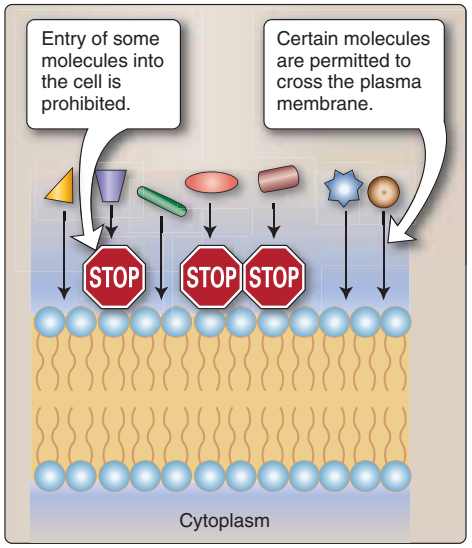


Figure 13.1
Selective permeability of the plasma membrane.

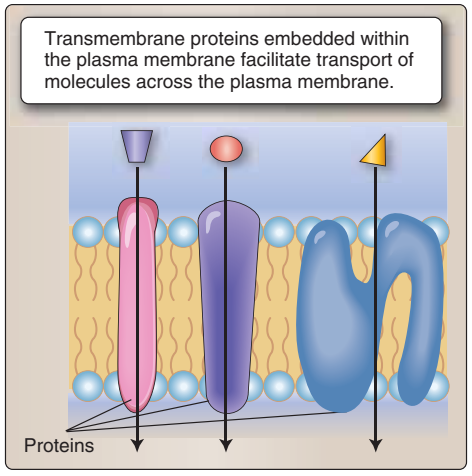


Figure 13.2
Membrane proteins facilitate transport.

I. OVERVIEW

Certain ions and molecules must enter and exit cells. Cells must maintain their volume and the necessary balance of ions for normal processes of cellular life to occur. Molecules that will serve as cellular food must also enter cells so that they can be broken down for energy. The plasma membrane protects and isolates the cytoplasm from the environment and in so doing, it presents a barrier to the entry of molecules into the cell. This barrier is **selectively permeable**, allowing physiologically important molecules to enter and exit cells, while excluding other molecules (Figure 13.1). Some drugs can also often gain access to the interior of the cell.

Proteins embedded in the plasma membrane are important in facilitating transport of ions and other molecules into cells (Figure 13.2). These proteins are **ion channels, transporters**, and pumps. Individual membrane proteins specifically bind to certain ligands (e.g., to chloride, to glucose, or to sodium and potassium) and facilitate their movement across the plasma membrane.

In most membrane transport, **passive transport** is used where molecules are moved across plasma membrane along, down, or with their concentration gradients (Figure 13.3). The molecule flows from where it is at higher concentration to where it is at a lower concentration. In contrast, in **active transport**, molecules are moved against their concentration gradient in energy-requiring processes (see also Chapter 14).

II. DIFFUSION

Knowledge of diffusion is useful in describing the movement of molecules from higher concentration to lower concentration. Diffusion is powered by the random movement of molecules in a solution, where molecules spread out until they are equally distributed within the space they occupy (Figure 13.4). The process can continue to occur at the same rate as long as the concentration gradient exists. Diffusion of one substance does not interfere with the diffusion of another substance within the same solution. The net movement or flux of a substance diffusing across a barrier depends on several criteria. First is the concentration gradient, next is the size, and then the permeability of the substance in the barrier

across which it will diffuse. Consequently, ordinary diffusion across cell membranes does not normally occur.

A. Considerations

Permeability in a membrane is an important consideration if a molecule is to cross it by diffusion. Phospholipids that constitute the plasma membrane are **amphipathic** in nature, containing both hydrophilic (water loving) and hydrophobic (water fearing) components (see also Chapter 3). Hydrophobic molecules such as steroid hormones may be able to dissolve in the interior hydrophobic core of a plasma membrane. However, the hydrophilic head groups of the phospholipids present an obstacle at the interface with the environment and with the cytosol (Figure 13.5).

B. Diffusion and plasma membranes

In sheets of cells in tissues, some molecules may diffuse through tight junctions between neighboring cells (see also Chapter 2). In this way, some molecules diffuse through the layer of cells, but not into the cytoplasm of cells. *The plasma membrane is always a barrier to diffusion* and impedes the flow of materials through it. Movement of molecules along their concentration gradient into the cytoplasm of cells occurs through membrane proteins that form channels within the plasma membrane. Some ions and small molecules (generally with a molecular weight of <80 daltons) may gain access to the cytoplasm of cells through water pores or channels. Larger molecules require specific membrane transport proteins. Water entry into cells by osmosis has been described as diffusion, but it too occurs via membrane channels.

III. OSMOSIS

Osmosis is the transfer of liquid solvent through a semipermeable membrane that does not permit dissolved solutes to pass. Water is the most important physiological solvent. By osmosis, water passes through a plasma membrane from an area of high concentration of water to an area of lower concentration of water (Figure 13.6). Plasma membranes are permeable to water but not to certain solutes in solution in the water. Protein channels known as **aquaporins** enable water to pass through the hydrophobic core of the phospholipids of the membrane. Movement of water via osmosis occurs from the region of high water concentration toward the region with lower water concentration.

A. Net movement of water

Water constantly enters and exits our cells by osmosis. However, net movement of water is usually negligible. Rates of water entry and exit are usually equal. In erythrocytes, water equal to approximately 250 times the volume of the cell enters and exits the cell each second, but with no net movement of water! In the small intestine though, there is a net movement of water across sheets of cells as water is absorbed and secreted. Also, net movement of water via osmosis occurs to concentrate the urine. There, water moves via osmosis into the blood from the filtrate that will form urine across a layer of epithelial cells lining the kidney tubules.

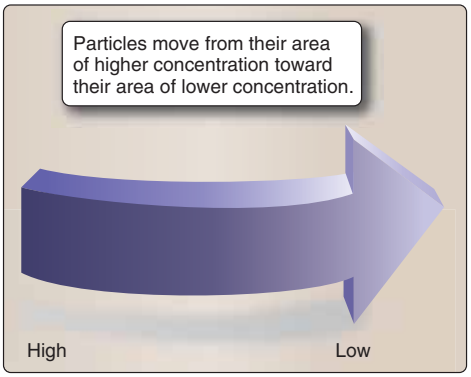


Figure 13.3
Concentration gradients of solutes to be transported.

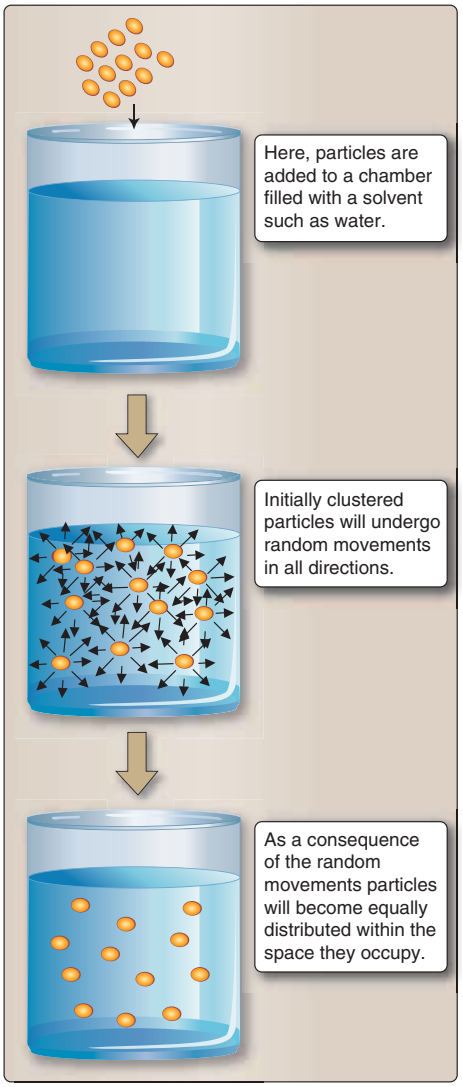


Figure 13.4
Distribution of particles in solution via diffusion.

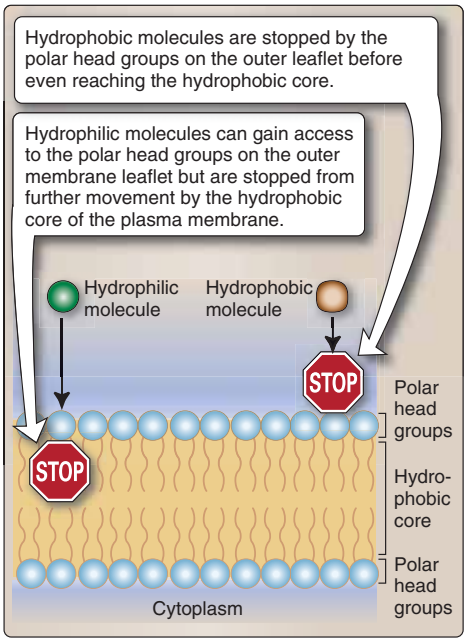


Figure 13.5
Amphipathic phospholipids as barriers to membrane diffusion.

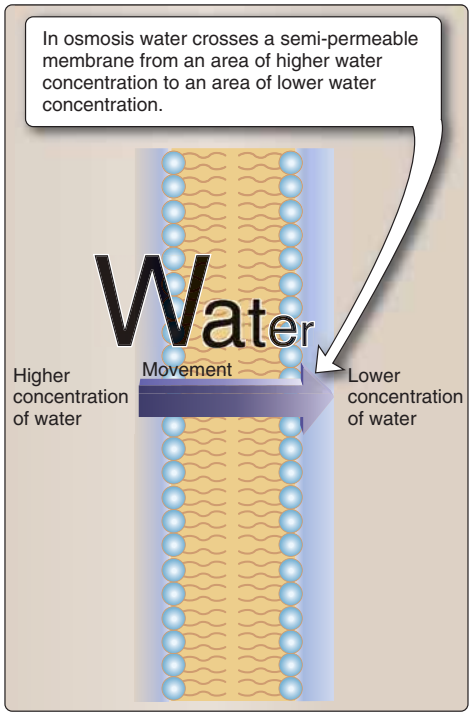


Figure 13.6
Osmosis.

Different solute concentrations result in different concentrations of free water. In a solution with a high concentration of particles or solute, there is less free water than in a solution with low solute concentration (Figure 13.7). Where there is more free water, the water molecules will strike the water channels in the membrane with greater frequency. The result will be more water leaving the area of high free water concentration. The result is net movement of water. The size or molecular weight of the solutes in water does not influence the net movement of water. When sufficient water has crossed the barrier to equalize solute concentrations on both sides, then movement of water will stop.

B. Osmotic pressure

Differences in solute concentration on opposing sides of a barrier such as a plasma membrane generate an osmotic pressure. If the pressure is raised on the side of the barrier into which water is flowing, movement of water will stop (Figure 13.8). This is referred to as the **hydrostatic** or water stopping pressure.

C. Cell volume

When the osmotic pressure is the same both inside and outside the cell, the external solution surrounding the cell is said to be **isotonic** (same). Cells maintain their volume in isotonic solutions. While osmosis occurs in both directions, in and out of the cell, there is no net movement of water when osmotic pressure is equal on both sides of the membrane (Figure 13.9). A solution with less osmotic pressure than the cytosol is **hypotonic**. Cell volume increases in hypotonic solutions. This occurs because free water is at higher concentration outside the cell. Water moves with or along its concentration gradient and there is a net movement of water into cells. If cells are instead placed in a solution with a higher osmotic pressure than their cytosol, the solution is **hypertonic**. Water will exit the cells. In this attempt to equalize osmotic pressure, cells will shrink.

IV. PASSIVE TRANSPORT

Based on their size, charge, and low solubility in phospholipids, many biologically important molecules such as ions, sugars, and amino acids would be predicted to enter into cells very slowly. However, their uptake into cells occurs at fairly rapid rates (Figure 13.10). This can occur because **ion channels** or **membrane transport proteins** facilitate the entry or exit of specific molecules into and out of cells. This process is also called **catalyzed transport** and sometimes referred to as facilitated diffusion. No direct source of energy is required to power the process.

A. Transport through ion channels

Ions gain entry into cells through ion channels, complexes of transmembrane proteins within the plasma membrane that provide a hydrophilic route for an ion to pass through the hydrophobic core of the plasma membrane (Figure 13.11). Ion channels are selective, allowing only ions of certain size and charge to enter. For example, calcium

channels are specific for calcium and sodium channels for sodium. Many types of potassium channels (at least 16 types) and chloride channels (at least 13 types) exist in plasma membranes but all are specific for uptake of either potassium or chloride. Ions move through an ion channel from their region of higher concentration to a region of lower ion concentration. Ion channels may be open or closed. The opening and closing of **gated channels** is regulated by physical or chemical stimuli. Ligand-gated channels are regulated by neurotransmitters. Voltage-gated channels are regulated by an electric field and are particularly important in the nervous system (see also *LIR Physiology*). Some other channels are regulated by G proteins (see also Chapter 17). Others respond to osmotic pressure and some are not gated. Ion channels also have properties in common with transporters, described below.

B. Transport through transporters

Transporters are transmembrane proteins that catalyze migration of molecules into or out of cells. **Uniport** is a term used to describe facilitated transport of one molecule by a transporter. Transporters or uniporters are also sometimes called **permeases** because of their enzyme-like function in catalyzing movement of their ligand across the plasma membrane barrier. Individual transporters are able to bind to and interact with only certain molecules. Their specificity is similar

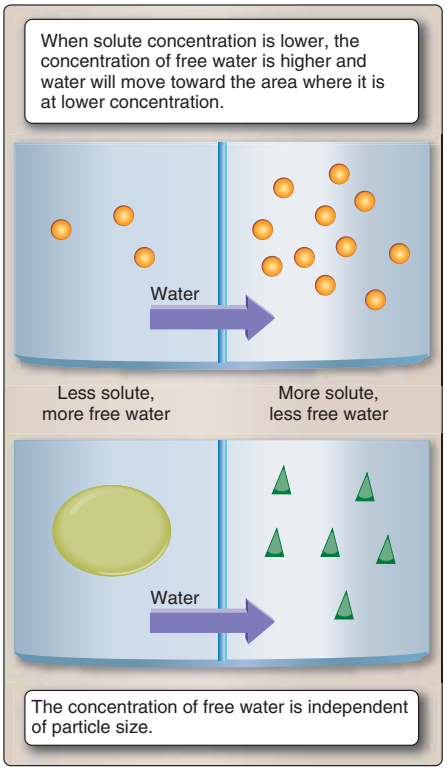


Figure 13.7
Concentrations of free water determine the direction of water movement in osmosis.

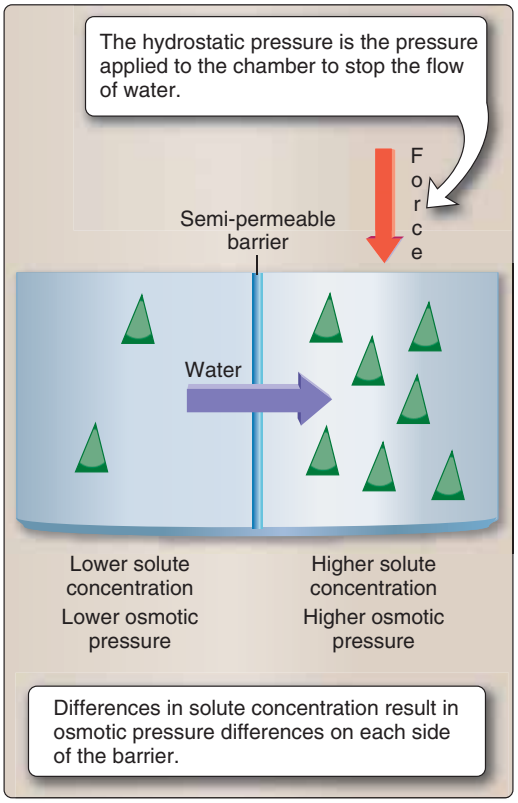


Figure 13.8
Osmotic pressure generated by differences in solute concentration on different sides of a barrier.

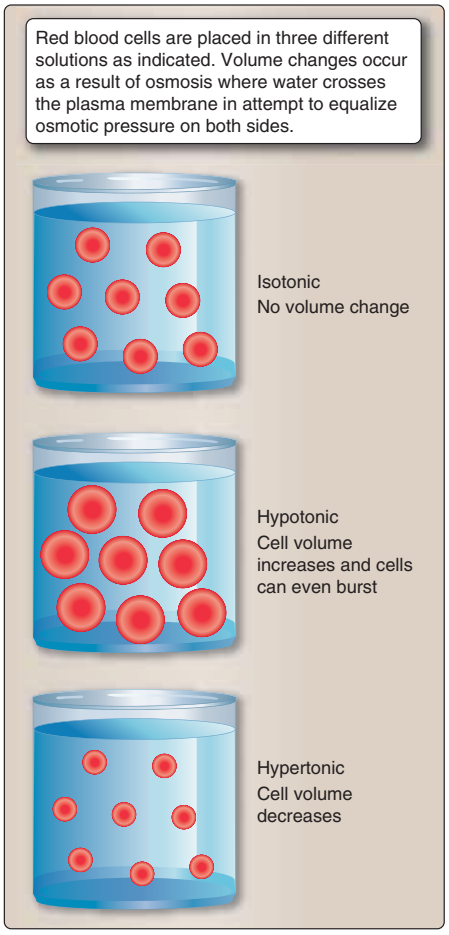


Figure 13.9
Cell volume changes as a consequence of osmosis.

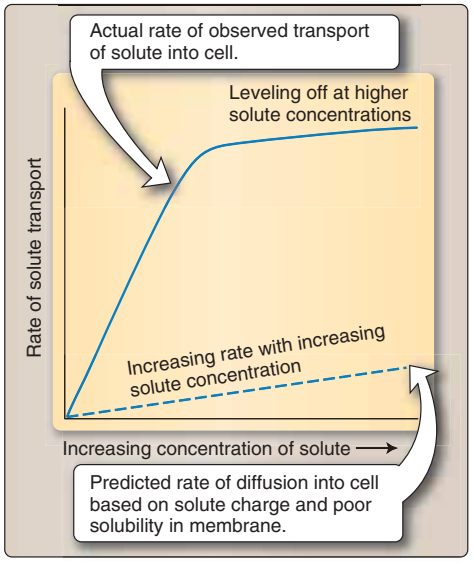


Figure 13.10
Rates of transport into cells.

Cystic fibrosis and defective chloride ion transport

Cystic fibrosis (CF) is the most common lethal genetic disease in Caucasians, with a prevalence of about 1:2,500 births. CF is also common in the Ashkenazi Jewish population but is rare in African and Asian populations. Certain mutations of the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) cause the disease. CF is inherited as an autosomal recessive trait, with approximately 1 in 25 individuals of Caucasian descent being a carrier and having one copy of a mutant CFTR gene. Inheritance of two mutant CFTR genes is necessary for a person to have the disease. While over 1,500 mutations are known in CFTR, most do not cause disease. Some disease-causing mutations result in more severe forms of disease than others.

Normal CFTR functions as a chloride channel in epithelial cells. Defective chloride ion transport occurs when two copies of disease-causing mutations in CFTR are present. Having a "salty brow" was an early diagnostic test for CF. The sweat of affected individuals contains more salt than normal, as a result of inappropriate chloride ion transport. Chloride sweat tests have been used in diagnosis of CF. Defective CFTR has much more serious consequences than causing salty sweat. Inability to transport chloride across epithelial cells leads to decreased secretion of chloride and increased reabsorption of sodium and water, resulting in the production of thick sticky secretions in the lungs and increased susceptibility to infections. The leading cause of death of persons with CF is respiratory failure often during their 20s or 30s. In the pancreas, thick mucus often prevents pancreatic enzymes from reaching the intestine to aid in digestion of dietary lipids. Most males with CF are sterile. While they make normal sperm, mutation of CFTR also usually results in the absence of the vas deferens which is needed for release of the sperm.

Treatments include percussion therapy to loosen respiratory mucus, antibiotics for infections, and pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy. With improved treatments, affected individuals may survive into their 40s or 50s, but no cure is available at present. Gene therapy continues to be a future possibility.

to an enzyme's specificity for its substrate (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 5 for a discussion of enzymes). For example, the major physiological form of glucose, D-glucose, has a much higher affinity for its transport protein than does L-glucose, a stereoisomer of glucose (see also Chapter 15).

Catalyzed transport via transporters (and ion channels) requires a concentration gradient of the solute or the substrate being transported. Molecules bind to their specific transport protein with a certain **affinity**, represented as the $\boldsymbol{K_m}$ (Figure 13.12) (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 5 for discussion of affinity of enzyme for substrate, K_m, which is analogous to affinity of transporter and solute). Numerically, K_m is equal to the concentration of solute that yields half the maximal velocity of transport. This **maximal velocity** (V_{max}) of transport will be achieved when all available transporter proteins are bound by their

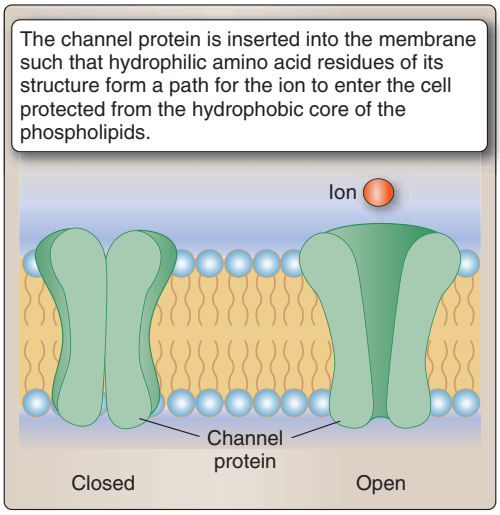


Figure 13.11
Ion channels.

specific solute. After that point, the addition of more solute will not result in an increased rate of uptake into the cells. Therefore, membrane transport via transporters (and via ion channels) is a **saturable** process (Figure 13.13).

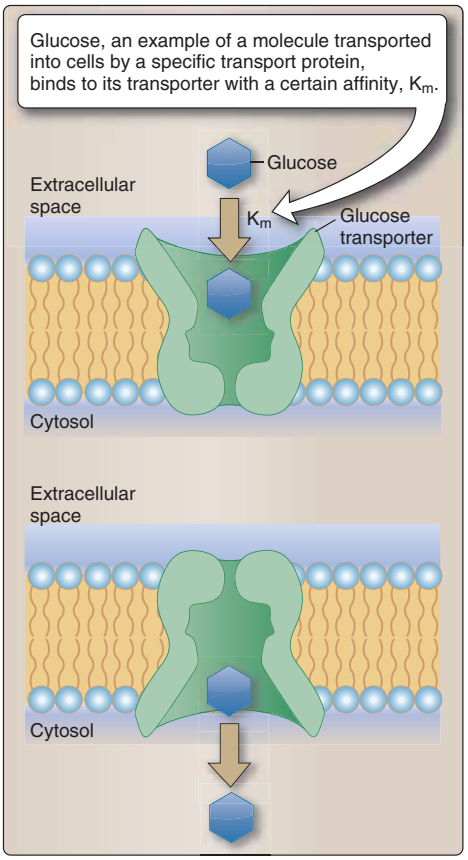


Figure 13.12
Transport proteins.

Chapter Summary

- Selective permeability of the plasma membrane allows certain materials only to enter and exit cells.
- Diffusion of particles is powered by movement of the particles within a solution and results in a distribution of particles that move from their area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration.
- Many molecules enter (or exit) cells by moving from an area of high concentration to low concentration.
- The plasma membrane is always a barrier to access the cytoplasm and entry into cells requires membrane proteins.
- Water enters and exits cells through osmosis and requires water channel proteins.
- Ion channels facilitate movement specific ions into or out of cells, along the concentration gradient of the ions.
- Transport proteins catalyze the movement of specific solutes across plasma membranes by a process called passive transport or catalyzed transport (and sometimes called facilitated diffusion).
- Channels and transport proteins bind their solute with a certain affinity and catalyze the movement of their solute across the membrane in a saturable manner.

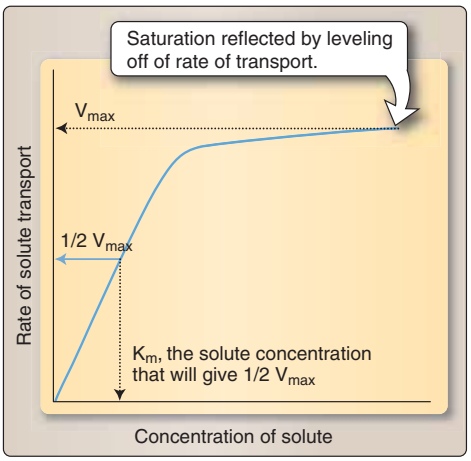
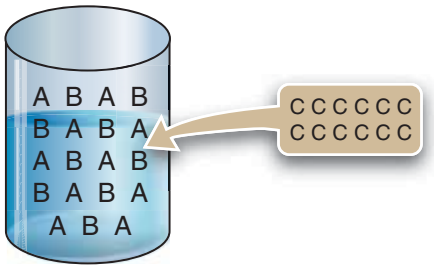


Figure 13.13
Characteristics of transport catalyzed by transporters.

Study Questions

13.1 A small volume of water containing a high concentration of particle C is added to a container of water that already contains particles A and B, as shown. Particles A, B, and C are equally soluble in water.

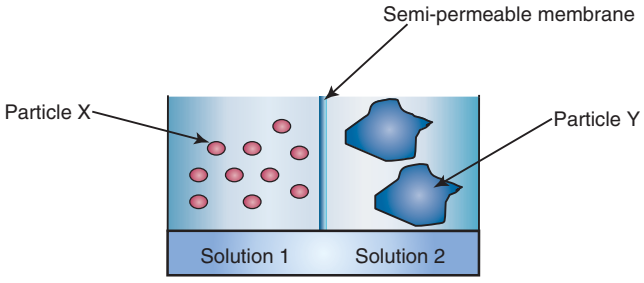


Which of the following will occur after the addition of the water containing particle C?

A. Clustering of A and B together to occupy less space within the container.
B. Competition by particles A and B with particle C for space in the container.
C. Equal distribution of C throughout the container without regard to A and B.
D. Movement of all C particles to the water beneath where A and B are found.
E. Segregation of particle C to the topmost portion of the container only.

13.1: Correct answer = C. Particle C will move by diffusion to be equally distributed throughout the solution without regard to particles A or B. No competition or clustering will occur. Since all three types of particles are equally soluble in water, random movement of all three will occur, resulting in their equal distribution within the container.

13.2 Two different aqueous solutions are placed in equal-sized chambers on either side of a semipermeable membrane as shown. The membrane is impermeable to the particles but permeable to water. Which of the following will occur?



A. No net movement of water or of solutes will occur.
B. One molecule of particle Y will move to solution 1.
C. Osmosis will cause water to exit solution 1.
D. Particle X will move from solution 1 to solution 2.
E. Water will leave solution 2 and enter solution 1.

13.2: Correct answer = E. Water will leave solution 2 in an attempt to equalize the osmotic pressure on both sides of the barrier that is permeable to water. Particle size has no bearing on the process. More free water exits in solution 2 than in solution 1. Neither particle X nor particle Y can cross the membrane since it is impermeable to both solutes. Since water moves by osmosis from its area of higher to lower concentration, it cannot move from solution 1 to solution 2 because solution 1 has less free water than solution 2. There is net movement of water in this process.

13.3. Erythrocytes are placed in a hypertonic solution of sodium chloride. Which of the following will be an effect of the osmosis that will occur?

A. Cells will burst.
B. Cells will shrink in volume.
C. Net movement of sodium chloride will occur into the cells.
D. Osmotic pressure will decrease inside the cells.
E. Water will enter into the cells.

13.4 Cells are placed in an environment where the concentration of extracellular sodium is greater than the intracellular concentration of sodium but the extracellular concentration of calcium is less than the intracellular concentration of calcium. Which of the following will occur?

A. Calcium movement outside the cell to balance the sodium concentration.
B. Calcium competing with sodium binding to sodium ion channels outside the cell.
C. Diffusion of sodium directly through the hydrophobic core of the plasma membrane.
D. Sodium binding to a sodium ion channel and being transported along its gradient.
E. Sodium preventing calcium from binding to calcium channels outside the cell.

13.5 Transport of glutamine through a glutamine transporter into certain cells is observed to be 0.5 picomole (10^{-12} mole) per million cells per second when the extracellular concentration of glutamine is 150 micromolar (10^{-6} moles/L) and 1 picomole per million cells per second when the concentration of glutamine is 3,000 micromolar. However, the rate of transport is also 1 picomole per million cells per second when the concentration of glutamine is 3,500 micromolar, 4,000 micromolar, and 6,000 micromolar. These data demonstrate

A. Lack of a concentration gradient for glutamine.
B. Low affinity of glutamine for its transporter.
C. Nonspecificity of the glutamine transporter.
D. Saturation of the glutamine transporter with glutamine.
E. That V_{max} cannot be achieved under these conditions.

13.3: Correct answer = B. Cells reduce their volume when placed in hypertonic solutions. In such an instance, there is more free water inside cells than outside cells. Water moves via osmosis out of the cells, reducing the cell volume. Cells do not burst, which could occur in hypotonic solutions where there is net movement of water into cells by osmosis. Sodium chloride does not move by osmosis, which is the movement of water through plasma membranes. The osmotic pressure within the erythrocytes will increase and not decrease as a result of loss of water, which will effectively increase the internal concentration of sodium chloride.

13.4: Correct answer = D. Sodium is at higher concentration outside the cell than inside the cell. Sodium ion channels will facilitate its movement along its concentration gradient to the inside of the cell. Calcium is at higher concentration inside the cell than outside, so it will not move against its concentration gradient. Sodium will have a much higher affinity for a sodium ion channel than calcium and calcium will not compete with sodium, particularly when calcium does not have a strong concentration gradient. Since sodium is a charged particle, it cannot simply diffuse unaided through the hydrophobic core of the plasma membrane. No concentration gradient exists for calcium from outside to inside the cell, therefore the presence of sodium will not interfere with the working of calcium channels designed to transport calcium into cells.

13.5: Correct answer = D. The glutamine receptor is saturated with glutamine and cannot transport glutamine any faster than the V_{max} of 1 picomole per million cells per second that has already been achieved. A concentration gradient must exist in order for glutamine to be taken up by its transporter. Since saturable transport is occurring, the transporter must have specificity for glutamine, with sufficiently high affinity that transport is occurring. V_{max} has been achieved. It is the maximal velocity of transport, 1 picomole per million cells per second.

Active Transport 14

I. OVERVIEW

Active transport occurs when molecules or ions are moved *against* their concentration gradients across cell membranes (Figure 14.1). Energy is required to move these solutes into and out of cells. The energy used is derived from adenosine triphosphate or **ATP.** The membrane proteins that bind to and transport the molecules or ions against their gradients possess the enzymatic activity to hydrolyze or break down ATP to harness its energy. Known as ATPases, these transporters are ATP-powered pumps that directly hydrolyze ATP to ADP and inorganic phosphate (Pi) in **primary active transport**.

A consequence of primary active transport is the establishment of **ion gradients**. Certain ions such as sodium are pumped out of cells while others, such as potassium, are pumped into cells by primary active transport. Sodium is therefore found at much higher concentration outside of cells than inside of cells and potassium is at higher concentration inside cells than outside as a consequence of primary active transport. The tendency of these ions will be to move down their concentration gradients. Such strong concentration gradients, like those for sodium, can be used to power the transport of other solutes against their own concentration gradient. These other molecules can make use of the concentration gradient and travel along with it, even against the direction of their own concentration gradient. **Secondary active transport** is the process by which ion gradients generated by ATP-powered pumps are used to power transport of other molecules and ions against their own concentration gradients.

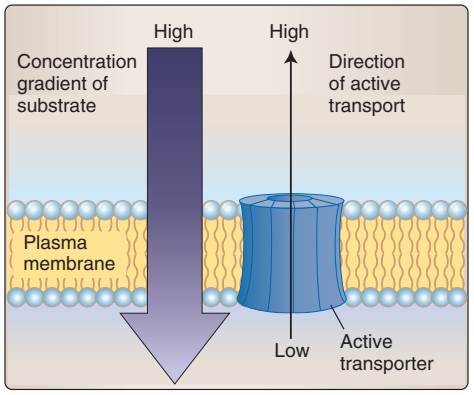


Figure 14.1
Active transport moves substrates against their concentration gradients.

II. PRIMARY ACTIVE TRANSPORT

Four classes of transport proteins function as ATP-powered pumps to transport ions and molecules against their concentration gradients (Figure 14.2). All have ATP-binding sites on the cytosolic side of the membrane. ATP hydrolysis is coupled to the transport of the substrates of the ATP-powered pump. ATP is only broken down to ADP + Pi when ions or molecules are transported. The classes differ in the types of ions/molecules they transport and in the mechanisms they use to catalyze ATP-powered transport.

Class	Substrate(s) transported
P	Ions (H^+, Na^+, K^+, Ca^{2+})
F	H^+ only
V	H^+ only
ABC	Ions, drugs, xeonbiotics

Figure 14.2
Four classes of primary active transporters.

A. P-class pumps

The P class of pumps is named for the phosphorylation of one of the subunits of the transport protein that occurs during the transport process. The transported substrates are moved through the phosphorylated

subunit of the transport protein. A member of this class is the **sodium-potassium ATPase** that is present on the plasma membranes of all animal cells (Figure 14.3). It functions to maintain extracellular sodium concentrations and intracellular potassium concentrations. Three sodium ions are pumped out of the cell and two potassium ions are pumped in for each ATP hydrolyzed by the sodium-potassium ATPase.

Other members of this class are calcium ATPases that pump calcium out of the cytosol into either the extracellular environment or the intracellular storage locations that are also members of the P class of primary active transporters. Even very small increases in the concentration of free calcium ions within the cytosol can cause cellular responses to occur. Maintaining the concentration of free calcium ions in the cytosol at a low level is an important function of these calcium ATPases.

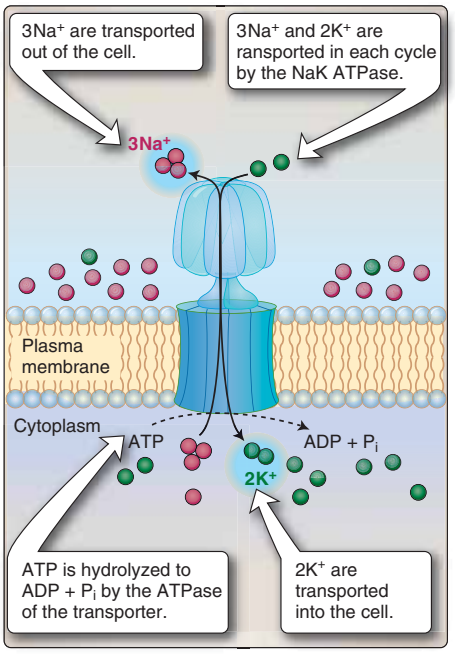


Figure 14.3
The sodium-potassium ATPase pump.

Inhibition of the sodium-potassium ATPase to decrease heart rate

Cardiac glycosides are inhibitors of the sodium-potassium ATPase and include ouabain and digoxin. These agents prevent cells from maintaining their normal sodium-potassium balance. When heart cells (myocytes) are exposed to a cardiac glycoside, there is an increased intracellular concentration of sodium since sodium is not pumped out by the inhibited sodium-potassium ATPase. The sodium ion gradient is much less than normal. Thus, transport via a sodium-calcium exchanger is altered since it depends on the sodium gradient in order to transport calcium out of cells. The intracellular concentration of calcium then rises since less calcium is transported out of the cell. As a result, there is an increased cardiac action potential (the electrical signal generated by nerves that results from changes in the permeability of nerve cells to certain ions), an increase in the force of contraction, and a decrease in heart rate. Drugs such as digoxin are now most commonly used to treat atrial fibrillation, an abnormal heart rhythm involving the upper chambers (atria) of the heart.

B. F-class and V-class pumps

Both F-class and V-class pumps transport **protons** (H^+). V-class pumps maintain the low pH of lysosomes by pumping protons into the lysosomes, against their electrochemical gradient, in an ATP-dependent process. Bacterial F-class pumps transport protons. In mitochondria, the F-class pump known as **ATP synthase** works in reverse. There, movement of electrons between protein complexes allows protons to be pumped from the mitochondrial matrix to the intermembrane space, creating an electrical gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane (with more positive charges on the outside of the membrane) and also a pH gradient (the outside of the membrane is at a lower pH than the inside). The proton gradient is used by ATP synthase to drive synthesis of ATP from ADP + Pi by allowing for passive flux of protons across the membrane back into the matrix along their concentration gradient (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, pp. 77–80).

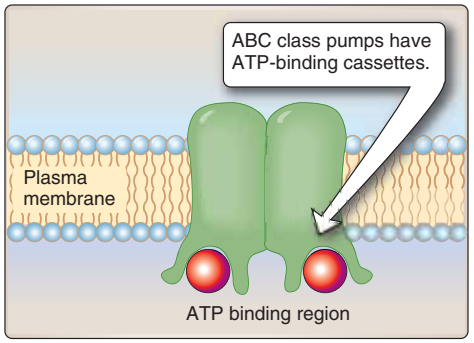


Figure 14.4
ABC-class transporters have ATP-binding cassettes.

C. ABC-class pumps

The fourth class of primary active transport proteins is known as the ABC superfamily. This name is derived from ATP-binding cassettes characteristic of these proteins. All ABC proteins have two cytosolic ATP-binding domains and two transmembrane domains that form the passageway for the transported molecules (Figure 14.4). The ABC cassettes bind and hydrolyze ATP, causing conformational changes in the membrane-spanning domains, inducing the translocation of substrate from one side of the membrane to the other. Forty-eight human ABC transporters have been characterized. All are involved in transport of ions, drugs, or xenobiotic compounds (natural substances that are foreign to the human body). CFTR, the cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator, is a chloride ion channel defective in cystic fibrosis which is a unique ABC transporter since it functions as a channel. CFTR uses ATP to regulate the flux of chloride ions. The molecular basis for CFTR's activity as an ATPase continues to be explored (see also Chapter 13 for more discussion of CFTR).

ABC transporters and multidrug resistance

Cells exposed to toxic compounds can develop resistance to them by decreasing their uptake, by increasing their detoxification, by altering target proteins of the drug, and/or by increasing excretion of the drug. In this way, cells can become resistant to several drugs in addition to the initial compound. Cells resistant to a drug no longer respond to its therapeutic effects. This phenomenon is known as multidrug resistance (MDR) and is a major limitation to cancer chemotherapy. Cancer cells often become resistant to the effects of several different drugs designed to kill them. The ABC transporter ABCB1 or P-glycoprotein is associated with MDR. Inhibitors of ABCB1 have been developed and clinical research to attempt to block the development of drug resistance has been conducted. The high concentrations of inhibitors necessary to inhibit ABCB1 are often toxic to the patient. Investigation of new approaches to circumvent MDR continues to be explored.

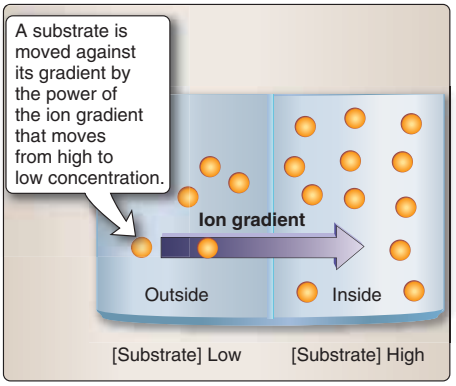


Figure 14.5
Cotransport of substrates in secondary active transport.

III. SECONDARY ACTIVE TRANSPORT

In addition to ATP-powered pumps, cells may use an active form of transport powered by the energy stored in electrochemical gradients. Ion concentration gradients of protons and sodium, generated by primary active transport, can power the movement of substrates against their gradients (Figure 14.5). Because the transport of one solute is coupled to and dependent upon the transport of another solute, this process is described as **cotransport**. Transport proteins that function in secondary transport do not possess ATPase activity. Instead, they depend indirectly on ATP hydrolysis since it is required for the primary active transport that establishes the ion gradients that power secondary active transport. Cotransport can allow substrates to cross the membrane in the same direction as each other or can allow for entry of one substrate and exit of another. While **uniporters**

transport one type of molecule by facilitated transport, **symporters** and **antiporters** are cotransporters that function in secondary active transport.

A. Symporters

Symporters are secondary active transporters that move substrates in the same direction across plasma membranes (Figure 14.6). Both substrates will enter or both substrates will exit a cell by symport. One substrate is transported in an energetically favorable direction along its concentration gradient established by primary active transport. The second substrate is actively transported, against its gradient, with the energy of the concentration gradient of its cotransported substrate powering the process. The sodium-glucose transporter is a well-described symporter that transports glucose against its concentration gradient into the intestinal epithelial cells using the strong concentration gradient of sodium to power the transport. Both glucose and sodium are taken into the cells (see also Chapter 15 for more discussion of glucose transport). Sodium-dependent amino acid transport proteins also function in symport.

B. Antiporters

Antiporters cotransport molecules in opposite directions across plasma membranes (Figure 14.7). The movement of one substrate into a cell is coupled to the movement of another substrate out of the cell. One substrate is moved along its gradient and the other moved against its gradient. The sodium-calcium antiporter in cardiac muscle cells is an example of an antiporter. This system maintains low calcium in the cytosol so that an increase in calcium can then trigger muscle contraction. Three sodium ions are moved into the cell, along the sodium gradient, while one calcium ion is moved out of the cell, against its gradient. The sodium-calcium antiporter thereby decreases the cytosolic concentration of calcium and reduces the strength of heart muscle contraction (see also information about inhibition of the sodium-potassium ATPase earlier in this chapter). Another antiporter is the sodium-proton exchanger that catalyzes the electroneutral exchange of sodium ions and protons and regulates salt concentration and pH. The bicarbonate/chloride antiporter in the stomach is another example.

Chapter Summary

- Active transport involves the movement of ions or molecules against their concentration gradient in an energy-dependent process.
- Primary active transport requires the direct hydrolysis of ATP by the primary active transport protein.
- Four classes of ATPases function in primary active transport. P-class transporters move ions against their gradients, F-class and V-class transporters pump protons against their concentration gradients, and ABC-class transporters move drugs, ions, and xenobiotics against their gradients.

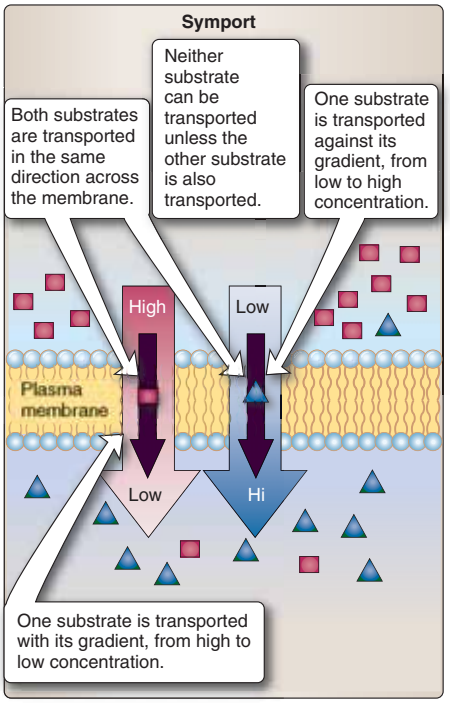


Figure 14.6
Symport involves cotransport of substrates in the same direction across membranes.

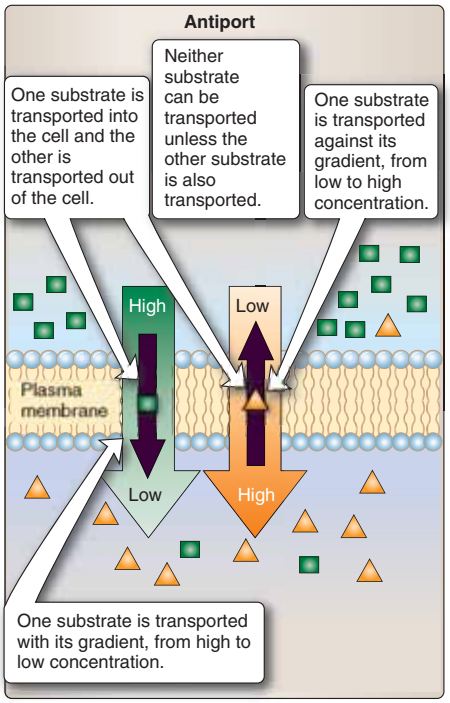


Figure 14.7
Antiport involves cotransport of substrates in opposite directions across membranes.

- Ion gradients are generated and maintained by primary active transport.
- The ion gradients established by primary active transport can drive the transport of ions and small molecules against their concentration gradients in secondary active transport.
- Symporters are secondary active transporters that move substrates in the same direction (to the inside or to the outside) across membranes.
- Antiporters move one substrate into the cell and another substrate out of the cell by secondary active transport.

Study Questions

14.1 A membrane-spanning protein hydrolyzes ATP when it transports its substrate across the plasma membrane of the cell against its concentration gradient. Which of the following is the most likely identity of this membrane protein?

A. ABC transporter
B. Bicarbonate/chloride antiporter
C. Glucose uniporter
D. Sodium-dependent amino acid transporter
E. Sodium-glucose transporter

14.2 The sodium-potassium ATPase is inhibited by a drug. Which of the following consequences may be expected in response to this inhibition?

A. Buildup of potassium within the cells
B. Excess loss of sodium from the cells
C. Failure to establish an adequate sodium gradient
D. Inability to pump protons into the cell
E. MDR of the sodium-potassium ATPase

14.1: Correct answer = A. The protein described is an ATPase pump that functions in primary active transport. ABC transporters are ATPase pumps that transport drugs and function in glucose transport. GLUT 5 transports fructose and not glucose. Both SGLT 1 and SGLT 2 are sodium-dependent glucose transporters that transport glucose against its concentration gradient. The bicarbonate/chloride transporter is an antiporter that functions in secondary active transport and does not directly hydrolyze ATP. A glucose uniporter transports glucose by facilitated diffusion, without ATP hydrolysis and along the concentration gradient of glucose. The sodium-glucose and sodium-amino acid transporters are both symporters that use secondary active transport and do not hydrolyze ATP themselves.

14.2: Correct answer = C. Inhibition of the sodium-potassium ATPase would impair the establishment of sodium gradients normally generated and maintained by this primary active transporter. Sodium ions are pumped out of cells by the sodium-potassium ATPase while potassium ions are normally pumped into cells. Inhibition of the ATPase would result in less sodium being pumped outside of cells and less potassium being pumped inside cells. The sodium-potassium ATPase does not pump protons. MDR can develop when members of the ABC class of ATPases pump out drugs that are being delivered as therapy, causing the cells to become resistant. The sodium-potassium ATPase is a P-class ATPase and not an ABC transporter. Inhibition of the sodium-potassium ATPase would not cause the sodium-potassium ATPase to become resistant to drugs.

14.3 A 48-year-old male patient with lung cancer is given chemotherapy treatment. Initially, the treatment appears to be successful. With time, MDR develops. Which of the following consequences would be expected?

A. Increased transport of drugs into the cancer cells
B. Inhibition of ABC transporters on the cancer cells
C. Reduced hydrolysis of ATP to ADP and Pi
D. Secondary active transport of drugs out of the cells
E. Survival of the cancer cells

14.4 Sodium-dependent amino acid transporters are symporters that allow for movement of amino acids into cells against their concentration gradient. The energy for this process is derived from

A. ATP hydrolysis by the sodium-dependent amino acid transporter.
B. A sodium ion concentration gradient.
C. Antiport of amino acids with sodium ions.
D. Hydrolysis of ATP by the sodium-dependent amino acid transporter.
E. Primary active transport.

14.5 The sodium-proton exchanger is an antiporter. Therefore, it transports

A. Both sodium ions and protons against their concentration gradients.
B. By hydrolyzing ATP to power movement of both substrates.
C. Individual substrates one at a time across the plasma membrane.
D. Sodium ions and protons in opposite directions across a membrane.
E. Sodium into the cell against its concentration gradient.

14.3: Correct answer = E. Cancer cells survive and are not killed by chemotherapy drugs when MDR develops. ABC transporters move the drugs out of the cancer cells so that the drugs do not cause damaging effects to the cancer cells. ABC transporters are not inhibited and their ability to hydrolyze ATP is not impaired. In fact, ABC transporters are more active when MDR occurs. Secondary active transport is not the mechanism by which drugs are transported out of cells in MDR. ABC transporters are used and they hydrolyze ATP as primary active transporters.

14.4: Correct answer = B. A sodium ion gradient (generated and maintained by the sodium-potassium ATPase) drives the transport of amino acids against their concentration gradient by the sodium-dependent amino acid symporter. ATP is not hydrolyzed by symport proteins as they function in secondary active transport. Amino acids are symported with sodium, not antiported. Antiport would not power the process. Symport is a form of secondary active transport and not primary active transport.

14.5: Correct answer = D. Antiporters function in secondary active transport to move substrates in opposite directions across a membrane. In antiport, one substrate will be moved along its concentration gradient. Antiporters are cotransporters that move both substrates together and not individually across membranes. ATP is not directly hydrolyzed during secondary active transport by an antiporter. The gradient for sodium is higher outside cells (owing to the sodium-potassium ATPase) than inside cells.

Glucose Transport 15

	Location	Function
GLUT 1	Most tissues	Basal glucose uptake
GLUT 2	Liver, kidneys, pancreas	Removes excess glucose from blood
GLUT 3	Most tissues	Basal glucose uptake
GLUT 4	Muscle and fat	Removes excess glucose from blood
GLUT 5	Small intestine, testes	Transport of fructose

Figure 15.1
Tissue distribution of glucose transporters.

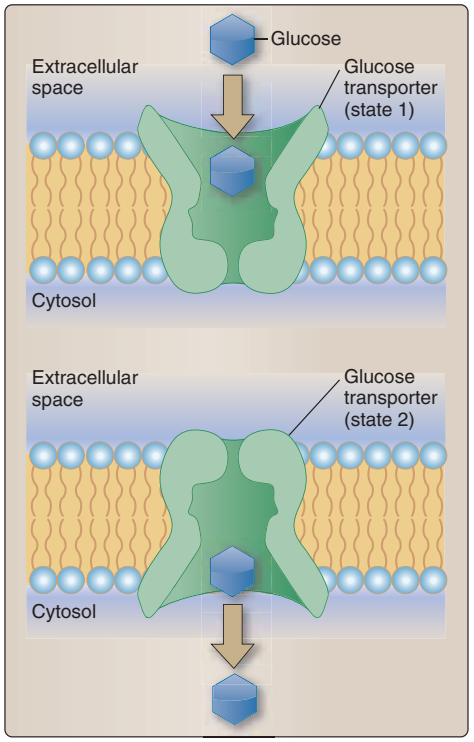


Figure 15.2
Facilitated transport of glucose through a plasma membrane.

I. OVERVIEW

Glucose is essential for life. It is the major energy source for mammalian cells and its transport into cells is crucial for survival of both the cell and the individual. Most cells use facilitated transport for uptake of glucose by uniport since a concentration gradient often exists for glucose between extracellular fluids and the cytoplasm. A family of glucose transport proteins catalyzes facilitated transport of glucose. Distinct members of this family are expressed in most cell types. In other cells, such as intestinal epithelial cells, glucose must be transported against its concentration gradient. There, an active form of glucose transport is necessary and another family of transport proteins participates in this process (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, pp. 96–97).

II. FACILITATED TRANSPORT OF GLUCOSE

The family of glucose transporters (GLUTs) that functions in facilitated transport of glucose includes at least 14 members, 11 of which are involved in glucose transport. GLUTs 1 to 5 are the most commonly expressed. **GLUT**s have specific tissue locations with an affinity for glucose that permits their function within a particular tissue environment (Figure 15.1). GLUTs 1, 3, and 4 are primarily involved in glucose uptake from the blood. GLUT 1 and GLUT 3 are found in most tissues. GLUT 4 is found in skeletal muscle and adipose (fat) cells. GLUT 2 transports glucose into liver and kidney cells when blood glucose levels are high and transports glucose out of cells into the blood when blood glucose levels are low. GLUT 2 is also found in pancreatic β cells. GLUT 5 is unusual in that it is the primary transporter for fructose (instead of glucose) in the small intestine and testes.

A. Mechanism of glucose transport

GLUT family members transport glucose from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration. In order to be transported, the sugar molecule binds to the GLUT protein (state 1) and then the membrane direction of the sugar-GLUT complex is reversed (state 2) so that the sugar is released to the other side of the membrane (Figure 15.2). After the sugar has dissociated, the GLUT flips orientation and is readied for another cycle of transport.

B. General considerations

Glucose transport depends upon the **concentration of glucose** and on the **number of GLUT proteins** present on the plasma membrane.

GLUT family members have the capacity to transport glucose in both directions across membranes. However, in most cells, the cytoplasmic glucose concentration is lower than the extracellular concentration of glucose. Its transport can proceed only along (down or with) its concentration gradient, from the exterior environment into the cell. In liver and kidney cells that synthesize glucose (via gluconeogenesis), the intracellular concentration of glucose can be greater than the blood glucose concentration surrounding the cell (see also *LIR Biochemistry* Chapter 10 for discussion of gluconeogenesis). Then, transport of glucose out of liver and kidney cells occurs. GLUT 2 proteins export glucose from these cell types.

C. Role of insulin

Insulin is a regulatory hormone secreted by β cells of the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas in response to glucose (and other carbohydrates) and proteins (amino acids) (Figure 15.3). Epinephrine, a hormone released in response to stress, inhibits insulin release (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 23). Insulin coordinates the use of fuel by tissues and is required for normal metabolism. The importance of insulin to health is illustrated by **type 1 diabetes mellitus** in which β cells of affected individuals are destroyed and no insulin is produced (Figure 15.4). They must receive exogenous insulin in order to survive. Insulin's metabolic effects are **anabolic**, favoring the building of stores of carbohydrates, fats, and proteins. Failure of cells to respond properly to insulin, known as insulin resistance, is characteristic of **type 2 diabetes mellitus**. Insulin therapy may or may not be required by individuals with type 2 diabetes. Therapies for type 2 diabetes include agents designed to decrease blood glucose (hypoglycemic agents) as well as diet and exercise. (Weight loss often improves insulin resistance.) One important normal response to insulin is to initiate transport of glucose into certain cell types.

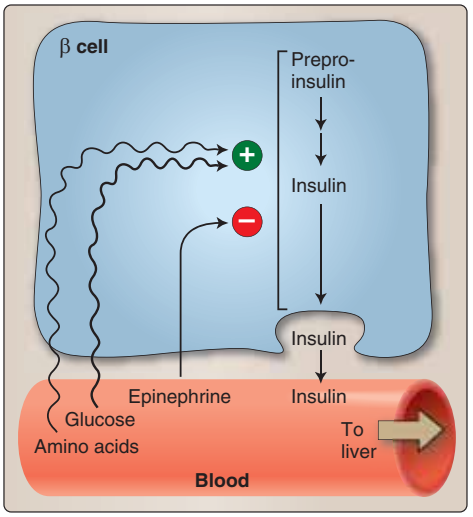


Figure 15.3
Regulation of insulin release from pancreatic β cells.

	Defect	Treatment
TYPE 1	β cells destroyed, no insulin produced	Insulin
TYPE 2	Insulin resistance	Diet, exercise, oral hypoglycemic agents Insulin may or may not be necessary

Figure 15.4
Comparison of type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus.

Glucose transport and insulin secretion

GLUT 2 glucose transporters are found in pancreatic β cells. These cells must have the capability to sense a higher concentration of glucose in order to release insulin when appropriate. GLUT 2 transporters are low affinity glucose transporters (with high K_m) and only transport glucose when the concentration of circulating glucose is greater than 5 mM, the normal concentration of glucose in blood. In this manner, glucose is only transported into the β cells when glucose levels increase from basal levels after consumption of carbohydrates.

	Active transport	Facilitated transport
Insulin-sensitive		Skeletal muscle and Adipose tissue
Insulin-insensitive	Epithelia of intestine Renal tubules Choroid plexus	Most tissues including: Erythrocytes Leukocytes Lens of eye Cornea Liver Brain

Figure 15.5
Characteristics of glucose transport in various tissues.

1. **Insulin-insensitive glucose transport:** Most cell types do not require insulin in order to transport glucose along its concentration gradient into cells (Figure 15.5). Glucose transport into erythrocytes, leukocytes, liver, and brain cells requires only a concentration gradient for glucose since sufficient GLUT proteins are expressed on

the surface of these cells. GLUT 1, GLUT 2, GLUT 3, and GLUT 5 are insulin-independent transporters.

2. **Insulin-sensitive glucose transport:** In skeletal muscle and fat cells (adipocytes), GLUT 4 proteins reside within intracellular vesicles, inactive and bound to the Golgi complex (Figure 15.6). Expression of GLUT 4 on the membrane surface plays a rate-limiting role in glucose utilization by skeletal muscle and adipose cells where glucose transport is stimulated by a series of events. Consumption of carbohydrates stimulates insulin release from β cells of the pancreas. Insulin circulates throughout the blood and binds to insulin receptors on many cell types. Intracellular signaling pathways initiated by insulin binding then stimulate movement of GLUT 4 from intracellular vesicles to the membrane surface through multiple, highly organized membrane trafficking events. Actin remodeling beneath the plasma membrane must occur so that GLUT 4–containing vesicles can fuse with the plasma membrane. Once GLUT 4 is expressed on the surface of the cell, then glucose transport occurs while the glucose concentration gradient exists. GLUT 4 proteins are removed from the plasma membrane

Glucose transport in diabetes mellitus

Individuals with type 1 diabetes mellitus do not produce insulin. Approximately 10% of individuals with diabetes mellitus in the United States have the type 1 form. Their pancreatic β cells have been destroyed and insulin production is no longer possible. Insulin must be supplied exogenously to control hyperglycemia (high blood levels of glucose) and to prevent diabetic ketoacidosis (breakdown of fats that occurs in the absence of insulin with the potentially life-threatening consequence of acidifying the blood). In order for glucose transport to occur into the insulin-dependent skeletal muscle and fat cells, exogenous insulin must be administered. Otherwise, glucose cannot enter those cells and excessive glucose concentrations result in the blood. In persons with type 2 diabetes mellitus, peripheral tissues have become resistant to the effects of insulin. Insulin secretion may be impaired but persons with type 2 diabetes mellitus do not require insulin to sustain life. In this group that constitutes approximately 90% of persons with diabetes mellitus in the United States, insulin signaling is ineffective in tissues such as skeletal muscle and adipose. While insulin is present, the cells do not respond to it. Insulin-dependent glucose transport does not occur efficiently and glucose remains in the blood at too high a concentration. Drug therapies for type 2 diabetes include agents that improve insulin signaling (see also ***LIR Biochemistry***, Chapter 25 for a discussion of diabetes mellitus and Chapter 18 for a discussion of insulin signaling). Long-standing elevation of blood glucose in both types of diabetes mellitus causes chronic complications including premature atherosclerosis (including cardiovascular disease and stroke), retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy.

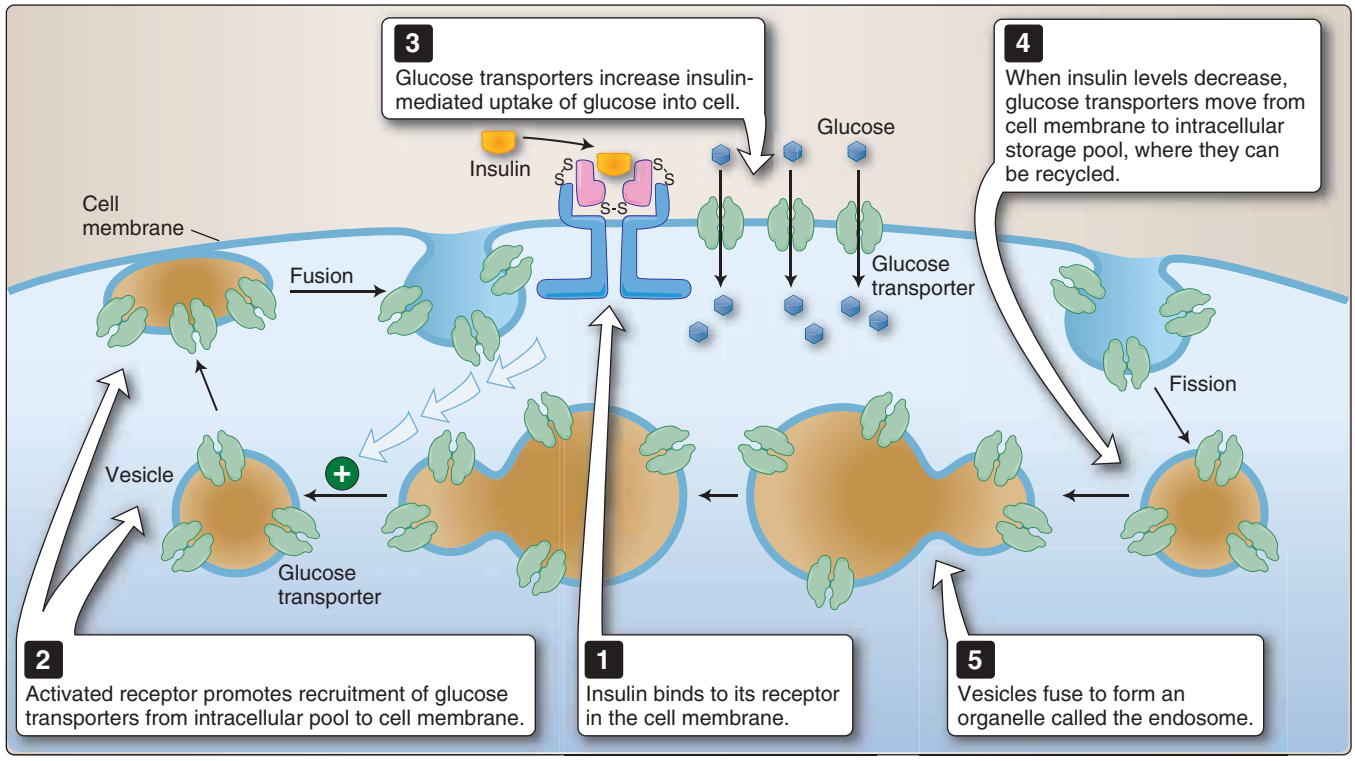


Figure 15.6
Insulin causes some cells to recruit transporters from intracellular stores.

by endocytosis and recycled back to their intracellular storage compartment when insulin stimulation is withdrawn.

III. ACTIVE TRANSPORT OF GLUCOSE

There are three main locations where glucose is found at a higher concentration inside cells than out and glucose must be transported against its gradient to enter those cells. The first is the **choroid plexus**, the second is the **proximal convoluted tubules of the kidney,** and the third is the **epithelial cell brush border of the small intestine**. The epithelial cells lining the small intestine are a barrier between the lumen of the small intestine and the bloodstream (Figure 15.7). Dietary glucose must be absorbed by the epithelial cells and then transferred to the underlying connective tissue so that it can enter into the blood circulation. GLUT proteins cannot be used to transport glucose into these cells because glucose is at a higher concentration inside the cells than outside the cells. (Note that the volume of the small intestine is much greater than the volume of an epithelial cell and that concentration is dependent on volume.) The apical membranes (facing the lumen) of the epithelial cells contain **sodium-glucose transport proteins (SGLT)** that catalyze transport of glucose against its concentration gradient. Six members of the SGLT family have been reported but only SGLT 1 and SGLT 2 are well characterized.

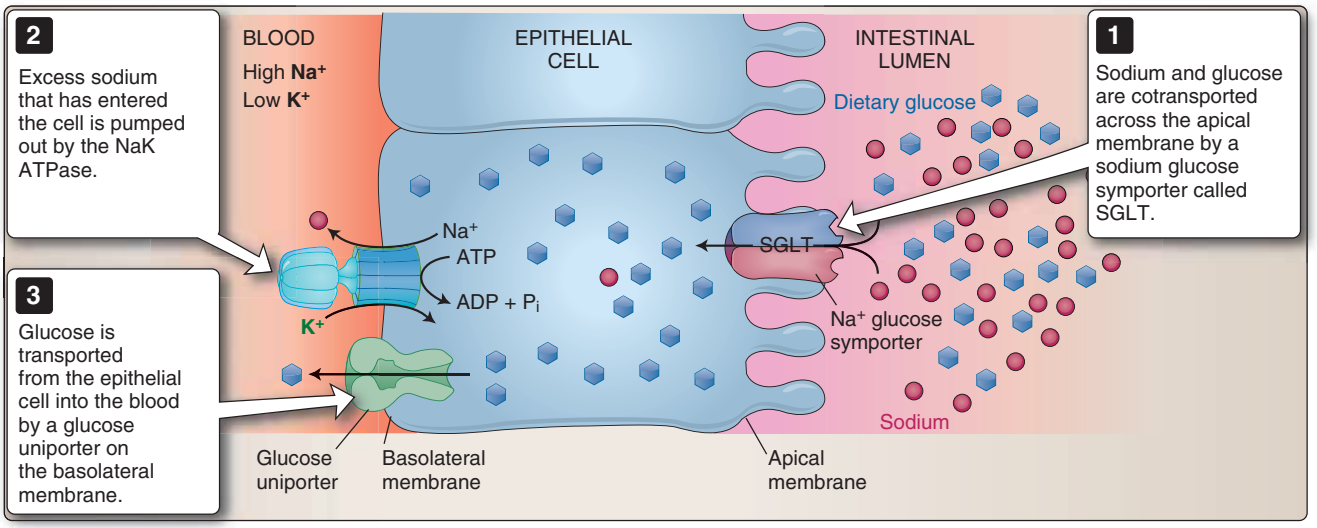


Figure 15.7
Glucose transport from the intestinal lumen to the bloodstream.

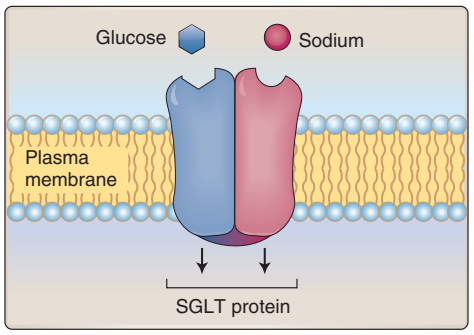


Figure 15.8
Sodium-glucose transporters cotransport sodium and glucose in a symport process.

This process of glucose transport against its concentration gradient is an example of **secondary active transport** (see also Chapter 13). Glucose transport by SGLTs can only occur when sodium is present and is cotransported with glucose (Figure 15.8). Since both glucose and sodium are transported in the same direction (both into the cell), this is **symport** process. The energy required to power the transport of glucose against its gradient is derived from the electrochemical gradient of sodium that is created and maintained by the sodium-potassium ATPase, a primary active transport system (see also Chapter 14). Since sodium has such a strong concentration gradient from outside to inside the cell, its tendency to move down its gradient is great. On the apical membrane of intestinal epithelial cells, the only transporter for sodium is a sodium-glucose transporter. Sodium is transported only when glucose is cotransported. Glucose effectively gains a free ride into the cell owing to the strong concentration gradient of sodium. Once inside the cell, the glucose can then be transported out of the cell and into the blood by a GLUT protein on the basolateral (opposite to apical) membrane.

Glucose-sodium cotransport in the kidney, implications in diabetes treatment

Under normal circumstances, the kidney filters glucose in the glomerulus and into Bowman's space and the renal tubules. The amount filtered is related to the glucose concentration in blood. All this glucose is normally reabsorbed in the proximal tubule (by transport into the epithelial cells lining the proximal tubule) with none appearing in urine. Blood glucose concentration is normally approximately 5 mM and epithelial cells within the proximal tubule have a glucose concentration of 0.05 mM. The glucose must cross through these epithelial cells

into the interstitial fluid (5 mM glucose) and back into blood. The gradient up which glucose must be pumped is 0.05 mM to 5 mM. As this process continues, more and more glucose is removed from the tubular fluid and the concentration drops as low as 0.005 mM, increasing the concentration gradient tenfold. Secondary active transport is used to move glucose up this gradient. A sodium-glucose symport protein is used. SGLT 2 is responsible for 90% of the glucose transported (reabsorbed) in the first segment of the proximal tubules, with one sodium ion transported per glucose molecule. SGLT 1 transports the remaining 10% of glucose in the distal segments of the proximal tubules, transporting 2 sodium ions with every glucose molecule. The sodium gradient is generated by the sodium-potassium ATPase pump so that the concentration of sodium outside the cells is approximately 140 mM and the concentration inside is approximately 10 mM.

In individuals with diabetes, elevated blood glucose levels cause a greater amount of glucose to be filtered by the kidney. The ability of the kidney to reabsorb all of the glucose is often exceeded and glucose appears in the urine. The amount of glucose appearing in the urine is the amount that exceeds the reabsorption capacity of the kidney. It has been suggested that inhibition of SGLT 2 in individuals with type 2 diabetes would lead to decreased reabsorption of glucose and increased excretion of glucose into urine. Increased glucose excretion in urine would result in decreased plasma glucose levels. It would also result in excretion of calories (from glucose) in the urine, with the potential for weight loss. Weight loss often improves the insulin resistance seen in type 2 diabetes. Several SGLT 2 inhibitors are in clinical development now for possible use in treating individuals with type 2 diabetes.

Chapter Summary

- Most cells use facilitated transport of glucose mediated by GLUT proteins.
- In most cases, glucose is moved from higher concentration outside the cell toward the lower concentration inside the cell.
- Most cells have insulin-independent glucose transport.
- Skeletal muscle and adipose cells require insulin to stimulate movement of GLUT proteins from intracellular vesicles to the plasma membrane where they can function to take up glucose.
- If insulin is absent (type 1 diabetes) or does not signal properly (type 2 diabetes), then insulin-dependent glucose transport will cease or be impaired.
- Secondary active transport of glucose occurs via symport with sodium, using SGLT proteins, in the choroid plexus, proximal tubules of kidneys, and the intestine.

Study Questions

15.1 Glucose transport proteins are observed on a cell's surface. The intracellular glucose concentration is 2 mM and the extracellular concentration is raised to 5 mM. The transporters begin to transport glucose inside the cell. Which of the following is the type of glucose transport protein involved in this transport?

A. GLUT 1
B. GLUT 4
C. GLUT 5
D. SGLT 1
E. SGLT 2

15.1: Correct answer = A. GLUT 1 transporters reside on the cell's surface and transport glucose from an area of higher to lower concentration. GLUT 4 transporters are insulin-dependent transporters in skeletal muscle and liver. They do not reside on the cell's surface prior to their function in glucose transport. GLUT 5 transports fructose and not glucose. Both SGLT 1 and SGLT 2 are sodium-dependent glucose transporters that transport glucose against its concentration gradient.

15.2 An adipocyte is carrying out insulin-dependent glucose transport. Insulin's role in this process is to promote

A. Cotransport of glucose with sodium against the glucose concentration gradient.
B. Hydrolysis of ATP to power glucose transport against its concentration gradient.
C. Movement of glucose from inside the cell to the extracellular environment.
D. Primary active transport of glucose with potassium into the cell.
E. Translocation of GLUT proteins from intracellular vesicles to the cell's surface.

15.2: Correct answer = E. Insulin promotes movement of GLUT transporters from intracellular vesicles to the surface of the cell to allow for glucose transport from high to low concentration of glucose. Insulin is not involved with cotransport of glucose with sodium. Insulin does not promote ATP hydrolysis or movement of glucose from inside to outside of cells. Glucose is not transported by primary active transport with potassium.

15.3 A 56-year-old male with type 2 diabetes has a fasting blood glucose of 150 mg/dL (reference range 70–100 mg/dL). Transport of glucose is impaired into which of the following cell types?

A. Brain cells
B. Eye cells
C. Liver cells
D. Red blood cells
E. Skeletal muscle cells

15.3: Correct answer = E. Skeletal muscle cells have insulin-dependent glucose transport. If insulin signals are not received properly, as in type 2 diabetes, insulin-dependent glucose transport into skeletal muscle cells will be impaired. Brain cells, eye cells, liver cells, and red blood cells have insulin-independent glucose transport.

15.4 The energy to power transport against its concentration gradient into intestinal epithelial cells is derived from

A. ATP hydrolysis by the SGLT.
B. A sodium ion concentration gradient.
C. Antiport with sodium ions.
D. GLUT hydrolysis of ATP.
E. Primary active transport.

15.4: Correct answer = B. A sodium ion gradient (generated and maintained by the sodium-potassium ATPase) drives the transport of glucose against its concentration gradient into the intestinal epithelial cells. Neither SGLTs nor GLUTs hydrolyze ATP. Glucose is transported by symport with sodium, not by antiport with sodium. Glucose-sodium symport is a form of secondary active transport and not primary active transport since ATP is not directly hydrolyzed by the transport protein itself.

15.5 A drug designed to inhibit SGLT 2 in the kidneys of individuals with type 2 diabetes would function in part by increasing

A. Reabsorption of glucose.
B. Glucose secretion into urine.
C. Glucose transport into epithelial cells.
D. Primary active transport of glucose.
E. Sodium transport into epithelial cells.

15.5: Correct answer = B. Inhibition of the SGLT sodium glucose symporter in kidneys would result in more glucose being secreted into urine since absorption of glucose would be impaired. Glucose absorption is not increased but decreased because transport of glucose into the epithelial cells is being inhibited. Sodium transport is also inhibited and not increased. Inhibition of SGLT would not result in an increased function of any primary active transporter. Glucose is never transported by primary active transport. SGLTs facilitate secondary active transport of glucose.

Drug Transport

16

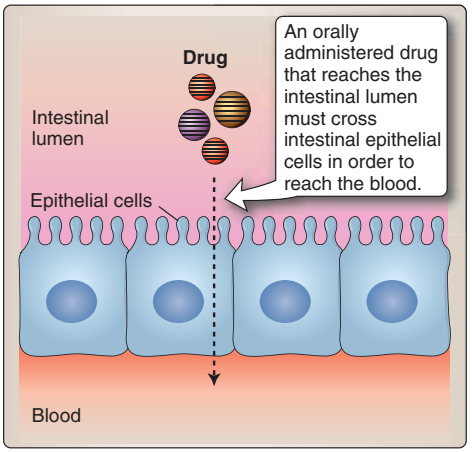


Figure 16.1
Orally administered drugs must penetrate the epithelial cells of the intestinal mucosa in order to enter the circulation.

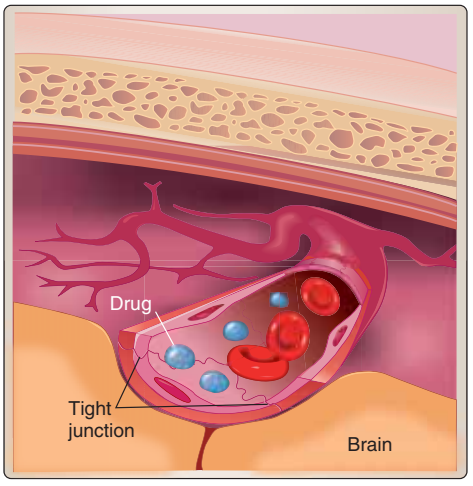


Figure 16.2
The blood-brain barrier restricts entry of drugs to the central nervous system.

I. OVERVIEW

Most drugs must be transferred from their site of administration to the bloodstream in order to reach their target tissues within the body. Drugs administered intravenously are completely absorbed and the total dose of intravenously administered drugs reaches the systemic circulation. But drugs administered other ways may be only partially absorbed. Oral administration is the most common route. It requires that a drug dissolve in the gastrointestinal fluid and then penetrate the epithelial cells of the intestinal mucosa in order to access the bloodstream (Figure 16.1). Drugs designed to reach the central nervous system must cross the blood-brain barrier formed by endothelial cells that line blood vessels in the central nervous system. These cells form tight junctions that restrict the entry of molecules greater than 400 daltons in size. This barrier is a major obstacle for development of drugs to treat central nervous system disorders including neurodegenerative diseases (such as multiple sclerosis, Alzheimer's disease, and Parkinson's disease), psychiatric illnesses (such as anxiety, depression, and schizophrenia), and stroke and cerebrovascular disorders (Figure 16.2).

Most drugs are either weak acids or weak bases. Concentrations of permeable forms of drugs are sometimes determined by relative concentrations of their charged and uncharged forms since uncharged molecules are thought to pass through membranes more readily than charged molecules. Studies of relationships of acid and base concentrations to pH have been done to determine the amount of drug that will be found on each side of a membrane (see also *LIR Pharmacology*, pp. 4–6). While it has long been assumed that lipid soluble drugs diffuse across cell membranes, barriers to diffusion do exist in the hydrophilic head groups of membrane phospholipids (see also Chapter 13). Some small water soluble molecules may be able to use water channels or pores to cross membranes (Figure 16.3). It is becoming increasingly recognized that transport proteins facilitate the movement of drugs across biological membranes. Active transport processes appear to be most commonly used by drugs.

II. CLASSES OF DRUG TRANSPORTERS

Many drug transporters function as primary and secondary **active transporters** (see Chapter 15 for a discussion of active transport). Based on sequence similarities, drug transporters have been classified as

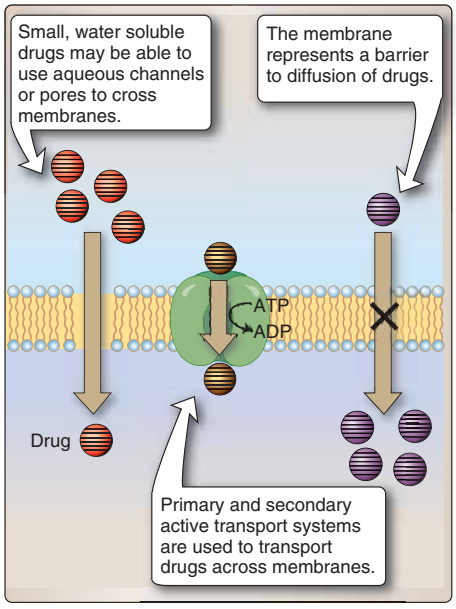


Figure 16.3
Mechanisms of drug crossing the intestinal epithelial cells.

Drug Transporters	Transport
Solute carriers (SLC's):	*Secondary active transport*
PEPT Peptide transporters	Proton (H^+) and di-and tri-peptide cotransport
OATP Organic anion transporting polypeptides	Amphipathic organic compounds
Organic ion transporters	Organic ions
H^+/organic cation antiporters	Organic cations are excreted and H^+ taken up
ABC transporters	*Primary active transport* Export of ions, drugs and xeonbiotics

Figure 16.4
Drug transporters include SLCs and ABC transporters.

solute carriers (SLCs) and **ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters (**Figure 16.4). The structures, functions, and tissue distributions of drug transporters within each group can vary widely.

A. Solute carriers

The SLCs are classified into four major families: peptide transporters (PEPT), organic anion-transporting polypeptides (OATP), organic ion transporters, and H^+/organic cation antiporters.

1. **Peptide transporters:** Protons (H^+) and peptides are cotransported by PEPT proteins that transport small peptides (two and three amino acids) but not individual amino acids or larger peptides. These are responsible for transporting drugs such as β-lactam antibiotics (including penicillin) and ACE inhibitors (**a**ngiotensin **c**onverting **e**nzyme inhibitors, used to treat hypertension) across the intestinal epithelium. In order to increase absorption of certain anticancer and antiviral drugs, some are being converted into better PEPT substrates by modification of their amino acid sequences.

2. **Organic anion-transporting polypeptides:** These transporters catalyze the movement of amphipathic organic compounds such as bile salts, steroids, and thyroid hormones. One member of this family, OATP1B1, is responsible for hepatic (liver) uptake of pravastatin, an inhibitor of cholesterol synthesis, and of the ACE inhibitor enalapril. Individual genetic variations in OATP1B1, known as gene polymorphisms, cause altered transport of pravastatin and differences in individual patients' responses to the drugs.

3. **Organic ion transporters:** This family makes up a large group of drug transporters. Some are uniporters while others are symporters or antiporters. Various members of this family are expressed in liver, kidney, skeletal muscles, and the intestinal brush border. Renal secretion of drugs and toxins is mediated in part by organic ion transporters. The drug metformin (a hypoglycemic agent used to treat elevated blood glucose in type 2 diabetes) is taken up by a transporter in this family.

4. **H^+/organic cation antiporters:** Organic cations are excreted by the proton/organic cation antiporter in brush border membranes. An oppositely directed proton gradient is the driving force of the transport.

B. ABC transporters

These ATP-binding proteins that use primary active transport are responsible for exporting ions, drugs, and xenobiotics from cells (see also Chapter 15). There is a growing list of substrates of ABC transporters including anticancer agents, antiviral agents, calcium channel blockers, and immunosuppressive agents. **Multidrug resistance** (MDR) can develop when cells expel the therapeutic agents designed to inhibit or kill them (Figure 16.5). Cancer cells that develop MDR do not respond to chemotherapy. Inhibitors of ABC transporters are being explored as a way to prevent MDR. **ABCB1** or **P-glycoprotein**

(P-gp) is an ABC transporter often implicated in MDR and is responsible for extruding chemotherapeutic agents from cancer cells. ABCB1 is also expressed in normal tissues. For example, in the intestinal epithelial brush border, ABCB1 is responsible for the efflux of xenobiotics before they reach the circulation. Herbals such as St. John's wort and the antituberculosis drug rifampin are known to induce intestinal expression of ABCB1. Such increased expression decreases the absorption of ABCB1 substrates such as digoxin (used to increase heart muscle contraction and to decrease heart rate) because these drugs are exported by ABCB1 that is expressed at higher levels on the intestinal epithelial cells.

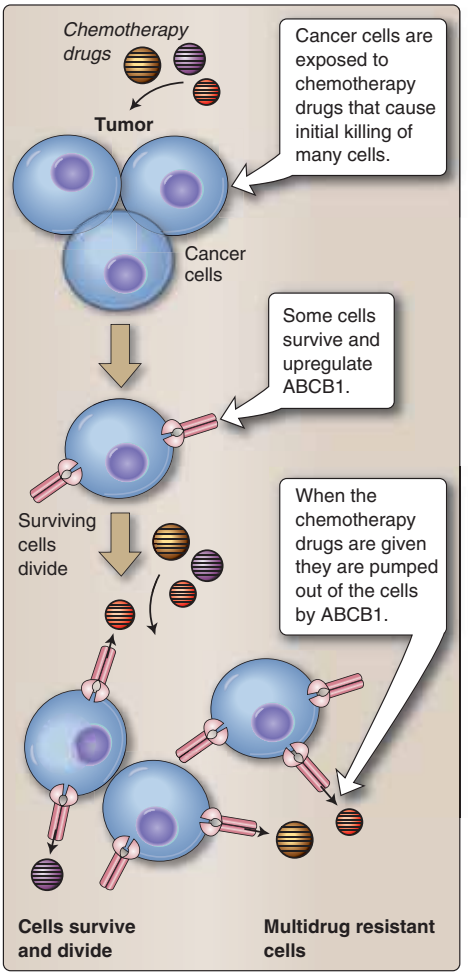


Figure 16.5
Development of MDR.

Chapter Summary

- Drugs administered by the oral route must cross barriers presented by plasma membranes in the intestinal epithelium in order to be absorbed into the blood circulation.
- Endothelial cells lining blood vessels in the central nervous system form a blood-brain barrier to drugs aimed at the central nervous system.
- While passive diffusion has long been described as a mechanism of drug transport into cells, the plasma membranes of these cells represent a barrier to diffusion.
- Drug transport proteins are being identified on many cell types in the body.
- Drug transport proteins include SLCs and ABC transporters.
- Many drug transporters use active transport, either primary or secondary.
- While SLCs transport drugs into cells, ABC transporters export drugs and xenobiotic compounds from cells.
- ABC transporters mediate MDR that develops when cells expel drugs designed to inhibit or kill them, such as cancer cells exporting chemotherapy agents.

Study Questions

16.1 A person swallows aspirin tablets to attempt to relieve muscle soreness. In order for the aspirin to take effect, it must

A. Bind to P-gp to stimulate MDR.
B. Cross intestinal epithelial cells to enter the circulation.
C. Stimulate ATP hydrolysis of an ABC transporter.
D. Undergo antiport from the stomach.
E. Use an ABC transporter to enter the liver.

16.1: Correct answer = B. Drugs taken by the oral route have to cross the barrier of epithelial cell membranes in the intestine in order to enter the circulation. P-gp is an ABC transporter involved in MDR. It transports drugs out of cells and would not aid in the absorption of aspirin. ABC transporters transport drugs out of cells and not into them. Antiport from the stomach would not enable the drug to enter into the circulation since it must still cross the barrier of intestinal epithelial cells in order to enter the circulation.

16.2 A new protein drug is being developed with the goal of treating Huntington's disease, a neurodegenerative disorder. The main obstacle to delivery of this drug to the central nervous system will most likely be

A. Absorption by the gastrointestinal tract.
B. Endothelial cells lining blood vessels within the central nervous system.
C. Lack of an ABC transporter to deliver the drug to appropriate cells.
D. MDR developing quickly.
E. Poor solubility in aqueous solutions of the body.

16.3 A 24-year-old female is given a β-lactam antibiotic to treat a bacterial infection. This drug will most likely cross intestinal epithelial cells to gain access to the circulation by

A. ABC transporter–mediated transport.
B. Binding to P-gp on the surface of epithelial cells.
C. Inhibiting ATP hydrolysis of an ABC transporter.
D. Passively diffusing through intestinal epithelial cells.
E. PEPT transporter–mediated passage.

16.4 A 38-year-old male has been taking St John's wort for 2 years. He obtains this herbal preparation over the internet and has never mentioned his use of St John's wort to his physician. He develops atrial fibrillation (abnormal heart rhythm) and is prescribed digoxin. Therapy with digoxin is ineffective. These findings are best explained by

A. Competition of St John's wort and digoxin for the same SLC transporter.
B. MDR developing from St John' wort and digoxin.
C. Poor solubility of digoxin in the plasma membrane of intestinal epithelial cells.
D. St John's wort having greater affinity for a transporter than digoxin.
E. St John's wort upregulation of P-gp which interferes with digoxin absorption.

16.5 A patient's cancer cells develop MDR to chemotherapy agents. Expression of which of the following proteins may be expected on the cancer cells?

A. OATP
B. OATP1B1
C. ABCB1
D. PEPT
E. SLC

16.2: Correct answer = B. The main barrier to delivery of drugs to the central nervous system is the blood-brain barrier. Endothelial cells lining the blood vessels within the central nervous system form this barrier that excludes most of the large molecules (>400 daltons) from entering. Absorption by the gastrointestinal tract may occur, but if the drug cannot access the central nervous system owing to the blood-brain barrier, then effects will not be observed. ABC transporters transport drugs out of cells. Lack of expression of an ABC transporter could improve the delivery of the drug across the blood-brain barrier. MDR develops in response to actions of ABC transporters, particularly P-gp. Solubility in aqueous solutions could be very high but if the drug cannot cross the blood-brain barrier, it will not gain access to the central nervous system to treat the disorder.

16.3: Correct answer = E. β-lactam antibiotics are transported by PEPT transporters. ABC transporters transport drugs out of cells, not into them. Inhibition of ATP hydrolysis of an ATP transporter would not affect entry of a β-lactam antibiotic into intestinal epithelial cells. P-gp is an ABC transporter. Passive diffusion is no longer believed to be an important route of drug entry into cells.

16.4: Correct answer = E. St John's wort upregulates P-gp, an ABC transporter. Overexpression of P-gp prevents the absorption of some other drugs, including digoxin, because P-gp exports the drug out of the cell. St John's wort and digoxin do not compete for binding to the same receptor and receptor affinity would not be an important factor. Digoxin is normally transported across intestinal epithelial cells (when P-gp is not overexpressed) and its solubility in the membrane is not a consideration since a transporter is normally used.

16.5: Correct answer = C. ABCB1 is the ABC transporter involved in MDR. It exports drugs from cells rendering the cells resistant to the effects of the drugs. SLCs are solute-linked carriers that transport many drugs into cells. OAT, OATB1P, and PEPT are examples of SLCs.

UNIT IV
Cell Signaling

Good communication is as stimulating as black coffee
and just as hard to sleep after.
—Anne Morrow Lindbergh (American author and aviator, 1906–2001)
In: *Gift from the Sea* (1955)

Soluble chemical signals sent from one cell to another are a basic means by which cell communication takes place. Hormones, growth factors, and neurotransmitters are chemical communication signals. The cellular recipient of the signal is known as the target cell and binds the signaling molecule via a protein receptor that may be on the cell surface or within its cytoplasm or nucleus. The binding to the receptor initiates the signaling process and results in a cascade of reactions that amplify the signal and produce the desired effect within the cell. The types of receptors that are engaged by signaling molecules are grouped into distinct cell signaling mechanisms for purposes of study and description, although a great deal of overlap exists in these classifications. Biochemical processes within target cells are regulated in response to signaling molecules. The first cell signaling chapter focuses on G protein signaling. Receptors coupled to G proteins amplify the message sent by the signaling molecule by regulating the production of intracellular signaling molecules. The second chapter in this unit concerns signaling by catalytic receptors that possess their own enzymatic activity which is stimulated by ligand binding to the receptor. The third chapter in the unit examines steroid hormone signaling, which is readily distinguished from the other two forms by the location of steroid hormone receptors in the interior of the cell as opposed to on the membrane's surface. G protein and catalytic receptor signaling, and steroid hormone signaling to some extent, involves phosphorylation of amino acid residues within cellular proteins by protein kinases. While cellular programs are turned on for hours or more when serine or threonine residues are phosphorylated, the stimulatory effects of tyrosine phosphorylation are more fleeting, and a rapid cellular response ensues. Overstimulation of critical signaling pathways can cause heightened activation within a cell, with malignant consequences and no rest for the cell if the inappropriate stimulation cannot be halted.

G Protein Signaling 17

G proteins – Bind to GTP; Hydrolyze GTP to GDP	
Heterotrimeric G proteins	**Ras superfamily G proteins**
Three subunits, α, β, γ	Monomers resemble α subunit of heterotrimeric G proteins
Use G-protein linked receptors	Use catalytic receptors
Regulate second messengers	

Figure 17.1
Heterotrimeric and Ras superfamily G proteins.

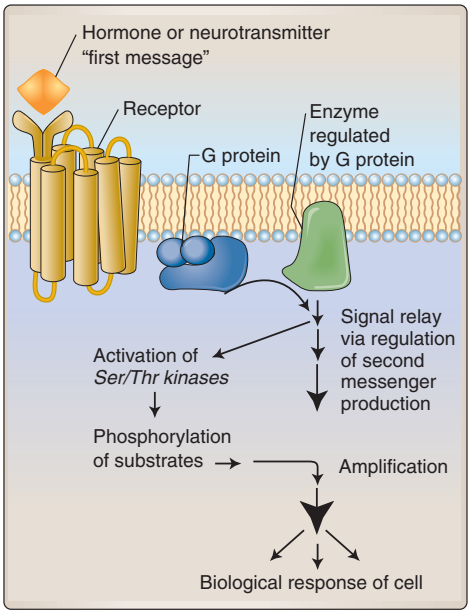


Figure 17.2
Overview of G protein signaling.

I. OVERVIEW

G proteins are intracellular signaling proteins that are named for their ability to bind to guanosine triphosphate (**GTP**). They also possess **GTPase** activity, the ability to hydrolyze GTP to GDP. Two categories of G proteins are described: **heterotrimeric G proteins** and the **Ras superfamily** of G proteins (Figure 17.1).

Ras superfamily members are often called "small G proteins" since they are monomers that resemble one subunit of the heterotrimeric G proteins. Ras proteins receive their signals from catalytic receptors that have been activated by their ligand (see Chapter 18). The overall effects of Ras signaling often involve induction of cell proliferation, cell differentiation, or vesicle transport.

Heterotrimeric G proteins consist of three subunits, α, β, and γ. The signaling process is initiated by ligand binding to receptors linked to G proteins tethered to the inner membrane leaflet. Activation of the G protein then enables it to regulate a specific membrane-bound enzyme. Products of reactions catalyzed by activated enzymes include **second messengers** that amplify the signal sent to the cell by the hormone or neurotransmitter that bound to its receptor and acted as the first message (Figure 17.2). Many second messengers activate **serine/threonine protein kinases**, enzymes that phosphorylate their substrates on serine and threonine amino acid residues. Changes in phosphorylation status of target proteins, many of which are enzymes, can alter their activity. The overall result is the biological response of the cell to the hormone or neurotransmitter. The biological response is often the regulation of a biochemical pathway or the expression of a gene.

II. RECEPTORS AND HETEROTRIMERIC G PROTEIN SIGNALING

Many hormones and neurotransmitters have receptors on their target cells that are linked to G proteins. G protein–linked receptors are the most common form of cell surface receptor. These receptors have extracellular hormone-binding regions as well as intracellular portions that interact with the G protein to send the message from the hormone into the cell to evoke a response.

A. G protein–linked receptors

G protein–linked receptors are transmembrane proteins with seven membrane-spanning regions (Figure 17.3). Close to 400 distinct G protein–coupled receptors have been identified in humans (367 were reported through 2009). Most are expressed in multiple tissues. Over 90% of them are expressed in the brain. All use the same basic process to stimulate G proteins to regulate the production of second messengers.

B. Signaling mechanism

All heterotrimeric G proteins use the same basic scheme shown for the G_s type of G protein (Figure 17.4). An unoccupied G protein–linked receptor does not interact with the G protein in close proximity to its intracellular domain, such as the G_s shown here. Ligand binding to the receptor creates an occupied receptor that undergoes a conformational change and is then able to interact with the G protein. (A ligand is a molecule that binds specifically to a particular receptor. Hormones and neurotransmitters are ligands of G protein–linked receptors.) In response to the receptor binding to the G protein complex, the Gα subunit of the G protein releases GDP and binds GTP. The G protein is now active and the α subunit dissociates from the β and γ subunits. The active α subunit then interacts with an enzyme whose function is regulated by the G protein. Adenylyl cyclase is the enzyme activated by G_s protein signaling to have the ability to convert ATP to **cyclic AMP** (cAMP) and inorganic phosphate (PP_i). cAMP is the **second messenger** in G_s signaling. The type of G protein that is activated and the second messenger it regulates depend on the ligand, the type of receptor, and the type of target cell. When hormone is no longer present, the receptor will revert to its resting state. GTP is hydrolyzed to GDP (by the GTPase of the G protein), the enzyme, such as adenylyl cyclase, is inactivated, and the α subunit will reassociate with β and γ subunits to stop the signaling process.

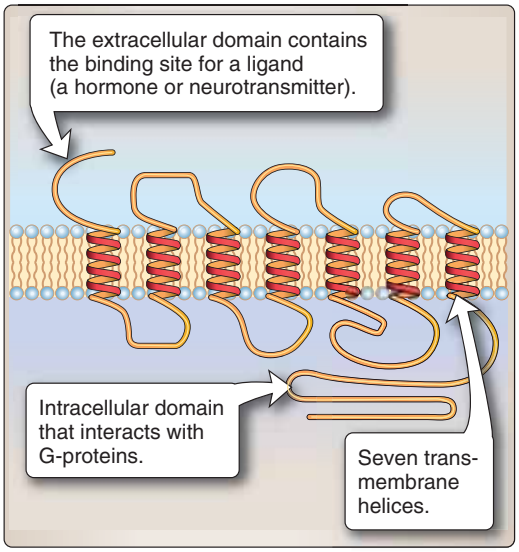


Figure 17.3
Structure of G protein–coupled receptors.

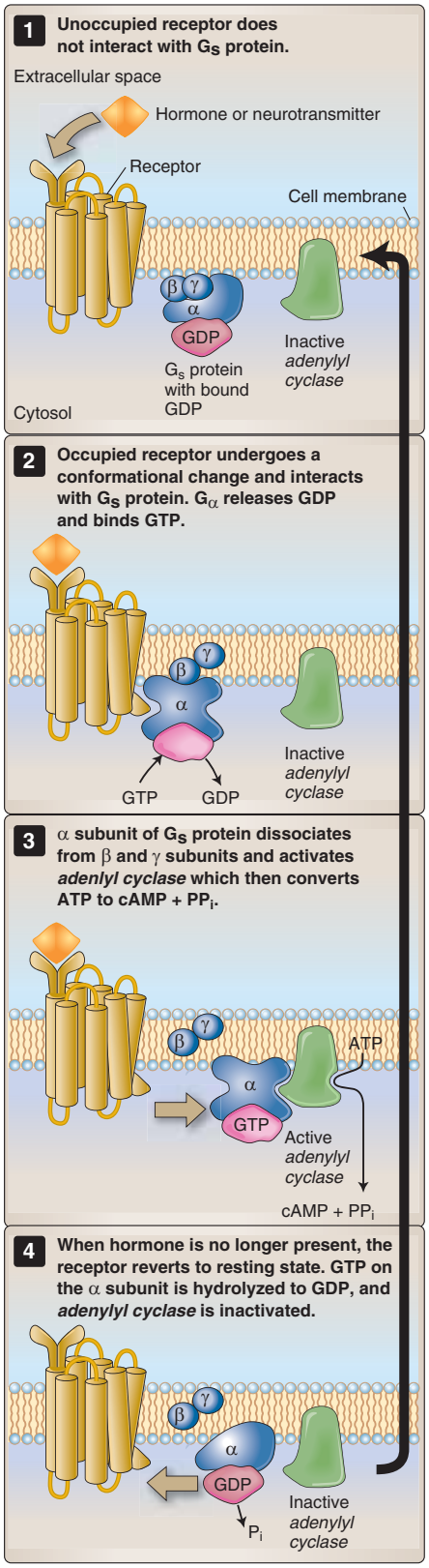


Figure 17.4
Activation of G proteins.

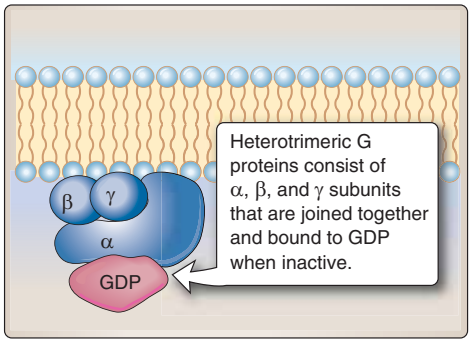


Figure 17.5
Heterotrimeric G proteins.

III. HETEROTRIMERIC G PROTEINS AND THE SECOND MESSENGERS THEY REGULATE

Distinct members of the heterotrimeric G protein family exist through the association of various forms of the three subunits, α, β, and γ (Figure 17.5). At least 15 different α subunits are known. Combinations of different α, β, and γ subunits form the heterotrimeric subunits. GDP is bound to the α, subunit of the G protein when all three subunits are joined together in the inactive form. Certain Gα subunits interact with certain enzymes. For example, G_s interacts with adenylyl cyclase as described above. Gα subunits are distinguished from each other by subscripts including s, i, and q ($G\alpha_s$, $G\alpha_i$, and $G\alpha_q$). The identity of the enzyme determines which second messengers will be produced (or inhibited). Adenylyl cyclase and phospholipase C are two enzymes regulated by G proteins that are responsible for regulating messengers with important signaling roles.

A. Adenylyl cyclase

Two different Gα proteins regulate the activity of adenylyl cyclase; the $G\alpha_s$ system stimulates its activity while the $G\alpha_i$ inhibits it. Epinephrine (adrenaline) is a hormone that signals with cAMP as the second messenger. In liver, muscle, and adipose cells, the biological response that results is the breakdown of stored carbohydrates (glycogen) and fat for use as energy. Glucagon is a hormone that also stimulates glycogen breakdown in liver (see also *LIR Biochemistry*, pp. 131–134). In the heart, the number of beats per minute (heart rate) is increased by this signaling process.

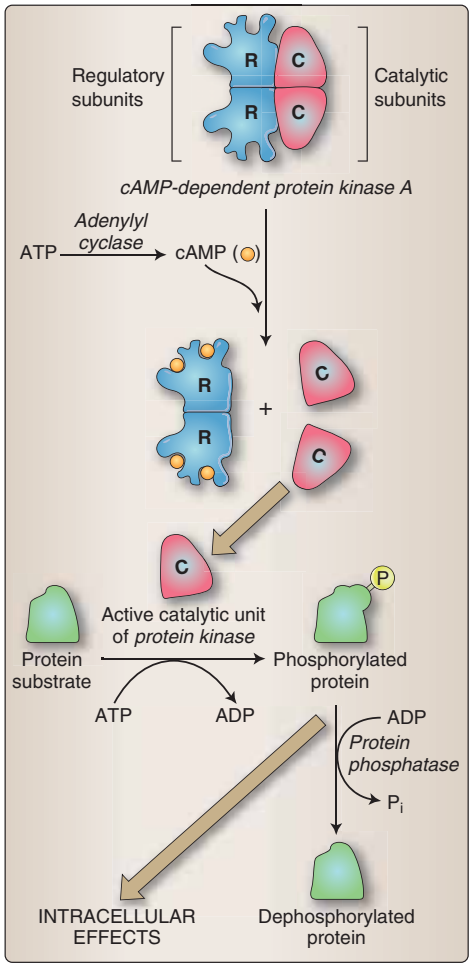


Figure 17.6
Activation of PKA by cAMP.

1. **$G\alpha_s$:** The active Gα stimulates adenylyl cyclase (see Figure 17.4). This enzyme uses ATP as a substrate to produce the second messenger cAMP. The enzyme **phosphodiesterase** converts cAMP to 5′-AMP, ensuring that the amount of cAMP in the cell is low. cAMP activates cAMP-dependent protein kinase A, known as **protein kinase A** (PKA) (Figure 17.6). The activation process involves cAMP binding to the regulatory or R subunits of PKA, enabling the release of catalytic or C subunits. Freed C subunits of PKA are active. PKA phosphorylates its protein substrates, many of which are enzymes, on serine and threonine residues. Phosphorylation regulates the activity of proteins and enzymes and can lead to intracellular effects. Protein phosphatases can dephosphorylate the phosphorylated proteins to regulate their activity. Over time, the $G\alpha_s$ will hydrolyze GTP to GDP to terminate the activation of adenylyl cyclase and the production of cAMP.

2. **$G\alpha_i$:** When $G\alpha_i$ is activated, it interacts with the active adenylyl cyclase to inhibit its ability to produce cAMP. In response, PKA will not be activated and its substrates will not be phosphorylated.

B. Phospholipase C

A variety of neurotransmitters, hormones, and growth factors initiate signaling through $G\alpha_q$ (Figure 17.7). After a hormone binds to its

Toxins and Gα proteins that regulate adenylyl cyclase

Both cholera and pertussis toxins alter Gα subunits and higher than normal concentrations of cAMP in infected cells. Cholera toxin is produced by *Vibrio cholera* bacteria that produce cholera toxin when they infect intestinal epithelial cells. This toxin modifies the $G\alpha_s$ subunit so that it cannot hydrolyze GTP and adenylyl cyclase remains active indefinitely. Diarrhea and dehydration result from excessive outflow of water into the gut in response to excess cAMP. Cholera can be fatal without appropriate hydration therapy. ***Bordetella pertussis*** is a bacterium that infects the respiratory tract and causes pertussis or whooping cough. Vaccination now prevents many young children from dying from the effects of pertussis. However, it remains a major health threat. The World Health Organization reports that there were 39 million cases and 297,000 deaths attributed to pertussis in 2000. Ninety percent of all cases are reported in developing countries but the numbers of cases have been rising in the United States each year. This devastating disease is caused by pertussis toxin produced by the infecting bacteria. It inhibits $G\alpha_i$ so that $G\alpha_i$ cannot inhibit adenylyl cyclase. Adenylyl cyclase remains active indefinitely, producing excess cAMP. Coughing can lead to vomiting and dehydration. Antibiotics and hydration therapy are used in treatment.

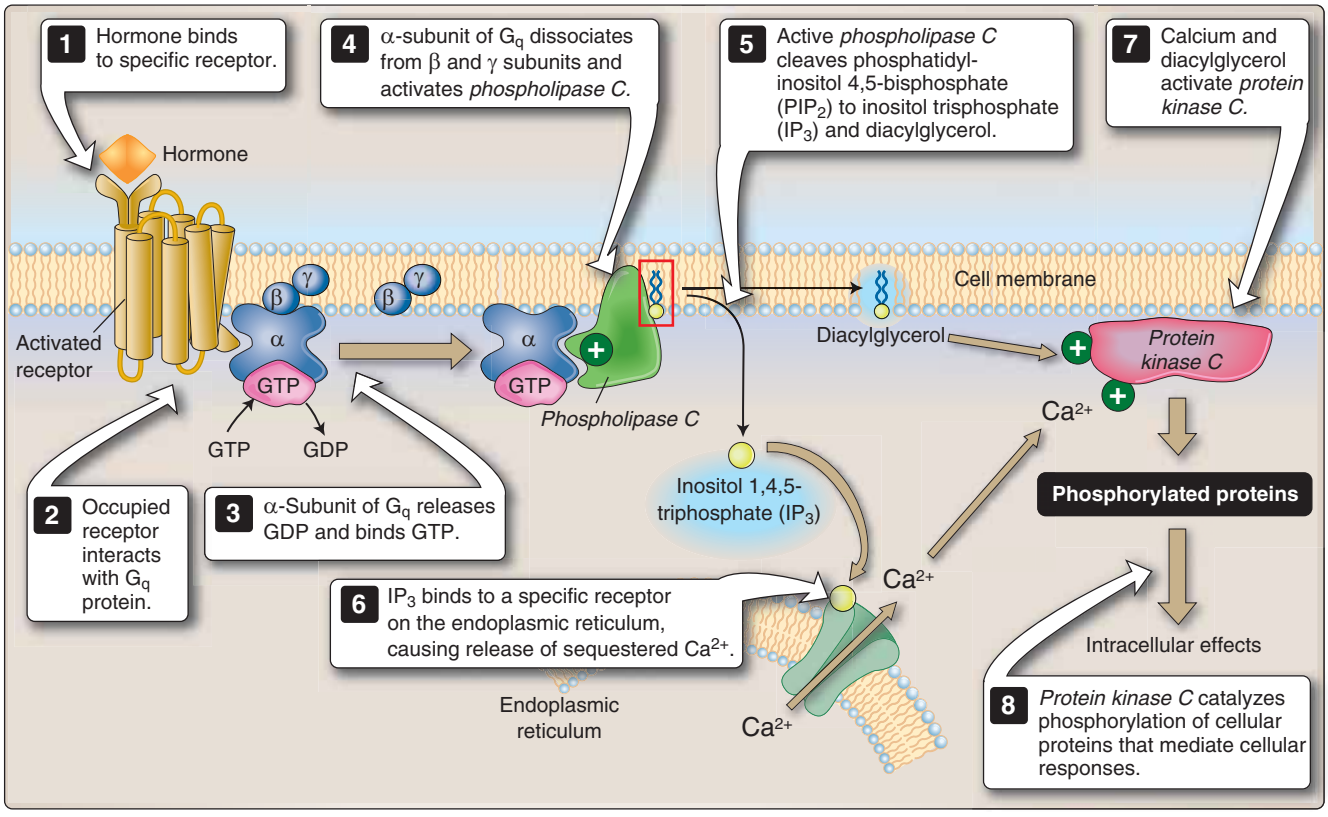


Figure 17.7
Generation of second messengers in response to $G\alpha_q$ activation of phospholipase C.

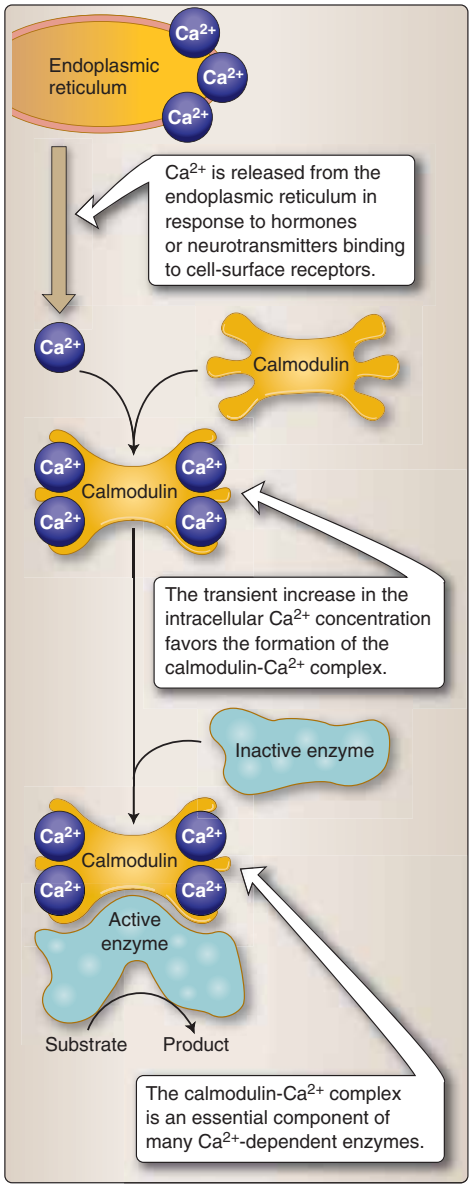


Figure 17.8
Calmodulin mediates many effects of intracellular calcium.

G_q-linked receptor, the intracellular domain of the occupied receptor interacts with G_q. The α subunit of G_q releases GDP and binds GTP. The α subunit dissociates from the β and γ subunits and then the α subunit activates phospholipase C to cleave the membrane lipid phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP_2). The products of this cleavage are **inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate** (IP_3), which is released into the cytosol, and **diacylglycerol** (DAG), which remains within the plasma membrane. IP_3 binds to a specific receptor on the endoplasmic reticulum, causing release of sequestered calcium. Calcium and DAG together activate the calcium-dependent protein kinase named **protein kinase C** (PKC). IP_3, DAG, and calcium are second messengers in this system. PKC catalyzes phosphorylation of cellular proteins that mediate cellular responses. Effects of intracellular calcium are mediated by the calcium-binding protein **calmodulin** (Figure 17.8). After calcium is released from the endoplasmic reticulum in response to the signaling of hormones or neurotransmitters, the transient increase in intracellular calcium concentration favors formation of the calmodulin-calcium complex. The calmodulin-calcium complex is an essential component of many calcium-dependent enzymes. Binding of the complex to inactive enzymes results in their conversion to active enzymes.

IV. RAS G PROTEINS

Ras G proteins are homologous to the α subunits of heterotrimeric G proteins. They do not regulate membrane-bound enzymes or induce the production of second messengers. Instead, their activation by GTP allows them to initiate a cytoplasmic phosphorylation cascade that terminates with activation of gene transcription. In this signaling scheme, Ras proteins are viewed as relay switches between cell surface receptors and a cascade of serine/threonine kinases that regulate nuclear transcription factors. Such signaling is important in the regulation of cell proliferation. The aberrant function of Ras proteins may contribute to the malignant growth properties of cancer cells.

A. Signaling mechanism

Ras proteins are involved in signaling by certain hormones and growth factors that are ligands of catalytic receptors (see also Chapter 18). A linear pathway from the cell surface to the nucleus has been described, with Ras acting as an intermediary (Figure 17.9). Ligand binding to catalytic receptors can cause phosphorylation of tyrosine residues within the receptors. The receptor's phosphotyrosines provide "docking" or binding sites for intracellular adaptor proteins such as SHC and Grb2 that contain regions known as SH2 domains. Ras-specific guanine exchange factor (GEF) SOS joins the complex, followed by Ras. The SHC-SOS-Ras complex exchanges GTP for GDP on Ras, activating Ras. Ras-GTP promotes binding and phosphorylation of Raf, a serine protein kinase (also known as MAPKKK for **m**itogen-**a**ctivated **p**rotein **k**inase **k**inase **k**inase). A phosphorylation cascade then includes mitogen-activated protein kinases kinases (such as MEK) that phosphorylate and activate mitogen-activated protein

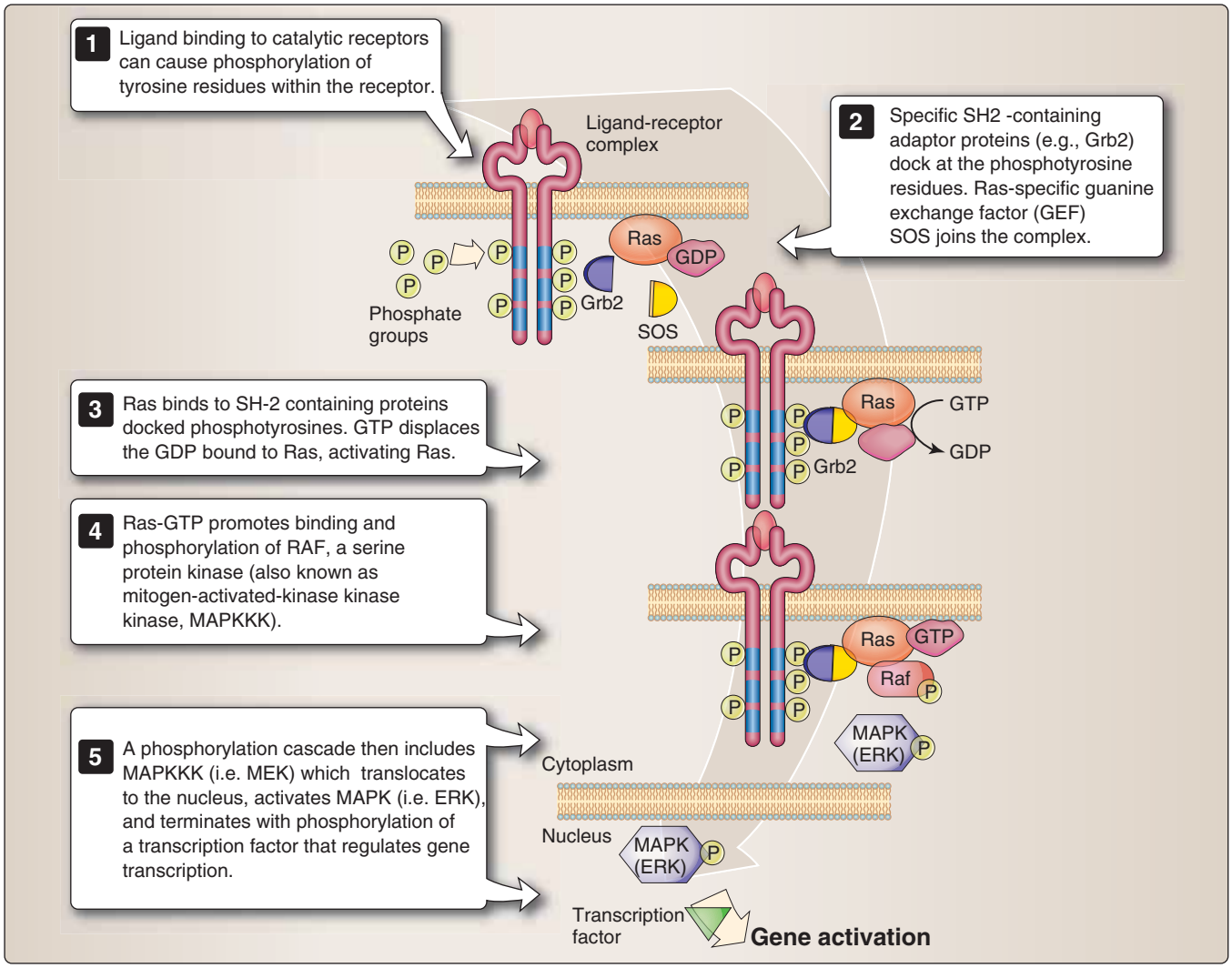


Figure 17.9
Ras signaling via activation of a cytoplasmic serine/threonine cascade.

kinase (MAPK, also known as extracellular signal-regulated kinases or ERK), enabling it to translocate to the nucleus where it phosphorylates a transcription factor (such as ELK). The cascade terminates with transcription of genes for immediate early genes involved in cell division. Hydrolysis of GTP to GDP by Ras terminates the signaling process.

This linear pathway is now recognized to be only a part of a very complex signaling circuit in which Ras proteins are involved. Ras signaling involves a complex array of pathways, where cross talk, feedback loops, branch points, and multicomponent signaling complexes are seen.

B. Ras mutations and cell proliferation

Mutations in *Ras* genes result in Ras proteins that cannot hydrolyze GTP to GDP to inactivate the signaling process. The Ras protein then remains in the active state without stimulation of the receptor and continues to send signals to induce progression through the cell cycle. The result is excessive cell proliferation that can lead to malignancy.

Chapter Summary

- G proteins are intracellular signaling proteins named for the ability to bind to and hydrolyze GTP.
- Two categories of G proteins are described: heterotrimeric G proteins that regulate second messenger production and Ras superfamily small G proteins.
- Heterotrimeric G proteins are composed of α, β, and γ subunits and are activated by ligand binding to G protein–linked receptors.
- Active G protein–linked receptors interact with membrane-bound enzymes and regulate their function.
- Products of reactions catalyzed by G protein–linked enzymes are second messengers that amplify the signal sent to the cell by the ligand. Second messengers often regulate the activity of certain serine/threonine protein kinases.
- Adenylyl cyclase and phospholipase C are enzymes regulated by G proteins.
- Adenylyl cyclase is regulated by G_s proteins that stimulate its activity and G_i proteins that inhibit its activity.
  - cAMP is the second messenger whose production is regulated by adenylyl cyclase.
  - cAMP activates PKA.
- Phospholipase C is activated by G_q proteins that stimulate its activity to cleave the membrane lipid PIP_2.
  - IP_3 and DAG are products of this cleavage and are the second messengers.
  - IP_3 induces the release of calcium from the endoplasmic reticulum.
  - Calcium and DAG activate PKC.
  - Calcium binds to calmodulin which regulates the activity of other proteins.
- The GTP-binding protein Ras is an intermediary in signaling via some catalytic receptors.
- Activated Ras can stimulate the MAP kinase cascade of serine/threonine phosphorylations that can result in stimulation of gene transcription.
- Ras signaling is involved in the stimulation of cell proliferation. Mutations in *Ras* can cause unregulated cell division and malignancy.

Study Questions

17.1 Adenylyl cyclase is activated by a G protein. Which of the following second messengers will be generated?

A. ATP
B. cAMP
C. Calcium
D. DAG
E. IP_3

17.1: Correct answer = B. cAMP is the second messenger generated by activated adenylyl cyclase that uses ATP as a substrate to produce the cAMP. Calcium, DAG, and IP_3 are generated in response to phospholipase C activation. PIP_2 is cleaved by phospholipase C to generate DAG and IP_3.

17.2 Manic-depressive illness may result from the overproduction of IP_3 and DAG and the accompanying signaling processes in certain CNS cells. Lithium is often useful in treating this illness. Lithium most likely functions to inhibit

A. Adenylyl cyclase activity.
B. $G\alpha_s$ protein function.
C. Phospholipase C activity.
D. PKA activity.
E. Tyrosine kinase activity.

17.2: Correct answer = C. Phospholipase C is the enzyme regulated by G_q that catalyzes the production of IP_3 and DAG. Lithium's inhibition of phospholipase C inhibits the production of IP_3 and DAG. Adenylyl cyclase catalyzes the production of the second messenger cAMP when stimulated by active Gsα. PKA is regulated by cAMP. Tyrosine kinase activity is not involved in the production of DAG and IP_3.

17.3 A 6-month-old male patient presents with slight fever, rhinitis, and sneezing as well as forceful coughs ending with the loud inspiration (whoop). *Bordetella pertussis* was cultured from the nasopharynx. The toxin from this microorganism prevents the normal function of the $G\alpha_i$ protein in cells of the respiratory tract. Which of the following disruptions in cell signaling will result in the respiratory tract response to this infection?

A. Calcium being unable to bind to calmodulin
B. Impaired IP_3-stimulated release of calcium from endoplasmic reticulum
C. Increased phospholipase C activity and PIP_2 cleavage
D. Increased stimulation of PKC activity
E. Overproduction of cAMP from uninhibited adenylyl cyclase

17.3: Correct answer = E. Overproduction of cAMP from uninhibited adenylyl cyclase will occur when G_i is inhibited by pertussis toxin. G_i normally inhibits adenylyl cyclase. Calcium is released in response to activation of phospholipsase C. PKC is also activated as a consequence of phospholipase C activation.

17.4 Protein kinase A

A. Activation by Ras stimulates gene transcription.
B. Induces the release of calcium from endoplasmic reticulum.
C. Is activated via G_q stimulation of phospholipase C.
D. Phosphorylates protein substrates on serine/threonine residues.
E. Stimulates the cleavage of PIP_2.

17.4: Correct answer = E. St John's wort upregulates P-gp, an ABC transporter. Overexpression of P-gp prevents the absorption of some other drugs, including digoxin, because P-gp exports the drug out of the cell. St John's wort and digoxin do not compete for binding to the same receptor and receptor affinity would not be an important factor. Digoxin is normally transported across intestinal epithelial cells (when P-gp is not overexpressed) and its solubility in the membrane is not a consideration since a transporter is normally used.

17.5 A constitutively overactive mutant form of *Ras* is present in cells from a breast biopsy sample. Therefore, *Ras* in these cells

A. Acts as a serine/threonine kinase to terminate cell proliferation.
B. Binds adenylate cyclase to overstimulate cAMP production.
C. Catalyzes the breakdown of PIP_2.
D. Is found in the nucleus bound to transcription factors.
E. Overstimulates the MAP kinase cascade causing abnormal growth.

17.5: Correct answer = E. Constitutively activated Ras will overstimulate the MAP kinase cascade and cause abnormal cell growth. Ras is not a protein kinase and does not bind to adenylyl cyclase. Ras does not participate in the PIP_2 signaling system. Ras is a cytoplasmic factor and does not enter the nucleus.

Catalytic Receptor Signaling

18

I. OVERVIEW

Growth factors, cytokines (growth factors of the immune system), and some hormones are signaling molecules that use catalytic or enzymatic receptors to stimulate their target cells (see also *LIR Immunology*, Chapter 6). Most catalytic receptors are single-chain transmembrane proteins that associate with other single-chain transmembrane proteins upon ligand binding and signal via phosphorylation of tyrosine (Tyr) residues. The **Tyr kinase** activity responsible for the production of phosphotyrosines may belong to the receptor itself or to a Tyr kinase that associates with the receptor. As a consequence of ligand binding to the receptor, intracellular portions of the receptor protein become phosphorylated on Tyr residues, then in a regulated manner, protein Tyr **phosphatases** rapidly dephosphorylate phosphotyrosines. The short-lived appearance of phosphotyrosines is a potent signal to the cell. Phosphorylated Tyr residues within the receptor induce binding of other proteins that serve as adaptors in the relay of the signal deeper into the cell. The original signal from the ligand may be split along several intracellular pathways as the signal is sent further onward with the goal of evoking a biological response to the ligand.

II. RECEPTORS WITH INTRINSIC TYROSINE KINASE ACTIVITY

Many **growth factors** signal via receptors with intrinsic Tyr kinase activity. Examples include transforming growth factor, epidermal growth factor, and platelet-derived growth factor. **Insulin**, a hormone, also signals via intrinsic catalytic receptors. Receptors with intrinsic Tyr kinase activity contain latent catalytic or enzymatic domains that are activated upon ligand binding. While many distinct catalytic receptors exist, they all share some common structural characteristics.

A. Receptor structure

Most catalytic receptors are formed by associations of two or more single transmembrane protein chains. Each of the single transmembrane chains has three domains: a ligand-binding portion that contains the amino- (NH_2) terminus of the protein, an α helical domain that spans the lipid bilayer, and an effector region that extends into the cytoplasm that contains the catalytic domain with Tyr kinase activity (Figure 18.1).

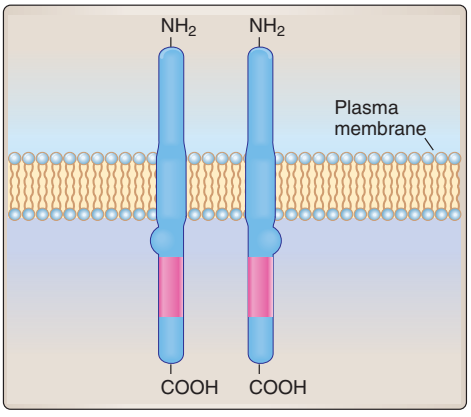


Figure 18.1
Structure of catalytic receptors.

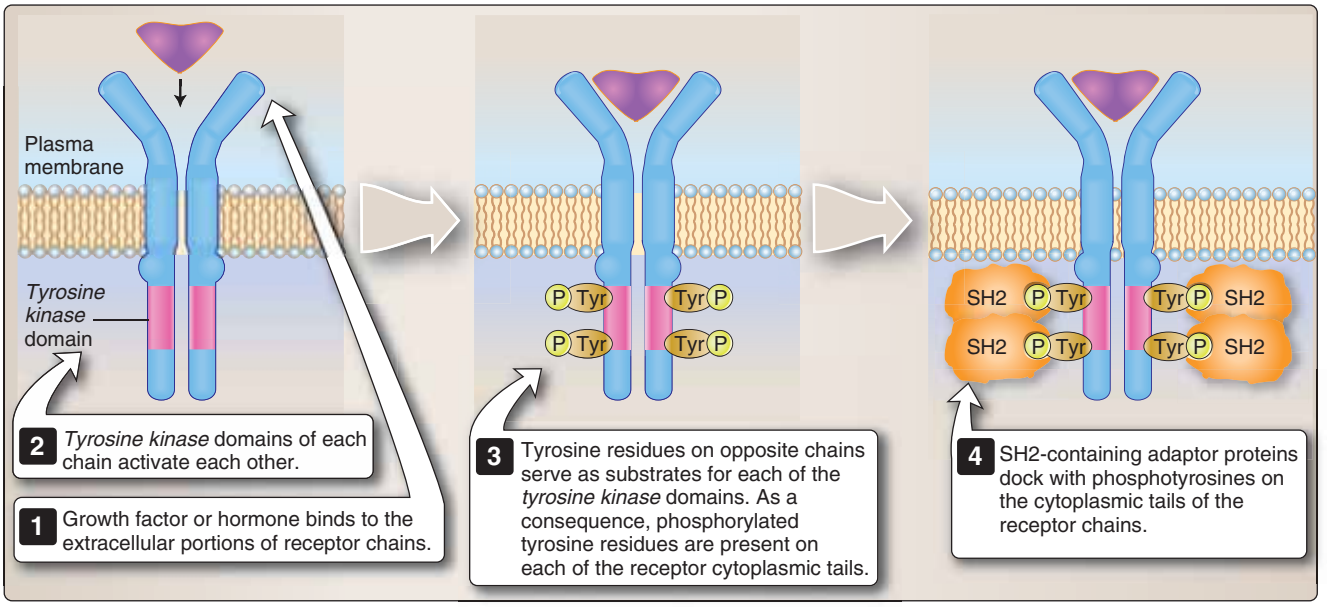


Figure 18.2
Initial steps in signaling by catalytic receptors with intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity.

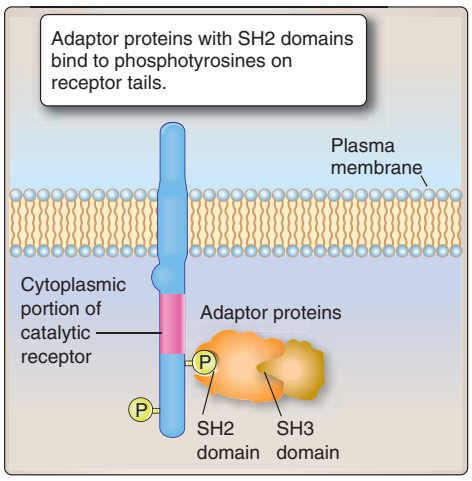


Figure 18.3
Binding of adaptor proteins.

B. Mechanism of signaling

In response to ligand binding, the individual transmembrane protein chains are brought physically closer together, often forming dimers (Figure 18.2). Tyr kinase domains of each receptor chain activate the other and the Tyr kinase within each receptor tail phosphorylates Tyr residues on intracellular portions of the other receptor chain. Tyr residues within the receptor itself serve as substrates for the receptor's Tyr kinase. This process is known as **autophosphorylation** since Tyr residues within the receptor protein are phosphorylated by enzymatic activity within the receptor itself. As a consequence, phosphotyrosine residues are present on each of the receptor cytoplasmic tails. Tyr phosphorylation triggers assembly of an elaborate intracellular signaling complex on the receptor tails (cytoplasmic domains). Intracellular proteins, known as **adaptor proteins**, which contain highly conserved domains (regions) known as SH2 and SH3 domains (named for their **S**rc **h**omology) dock with phosphotyrosines of the cytoplasmic tails of the receptor chains (Figure 18.3). Different receptors recruit distinct collections of SH2-containing adaptor proteins.

C. Important adaptor molecules

Adaptor molecules can function in signaling initiated by different growth factors or hormones. Certain adaptor molecules are known to be critically important in multiple signaling processes.

1. **Ras:** Ras is a small GTP-binding protein and serves as a molecular switch for key signaling in the control of growth and differentiation (see also Chapter 17, Figure 17.9). Ras does not contain an SH2 domain itself but it binds to SH2-containing adaptor proteins that bind to phosphorylated Tyr residues within receptor tails. Ras activates a

serine/threonine phosphorylation cascade called the **MAP kinase cascade**. Serine and threonine phosphorylations are longer lived than Tyr phosphorylations. The final enzyme in this cascade, mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), becomes phosphorylated, translocates to the nucleus, and phosphorylates transcription factors. Phosphorylated transcription factors induce transcription of genes that allow the cell to proliferate or differentiate, depending on the nature of the signaling molecule at the cell's surface.

2. **STATs:** STATs are named for their function as **s**ignal **t**ransducers and **a**ctivators of **t**ranscription. They are SH2-containing latent, cytoplasmic proteins that can bind to phosphorylated Tyr residues within the cytoplasmic domains of receptors with their own catalytic activity and are also involved in signaling by nonreceptor Tyr kinases. After ligand binding has induced receptor dimerization and Tyr phosphorylation of receptor tails, STATs dock with a phosphotyrosine on a receptor tail (Figure 18.4). When the STAT is bound to a phosphorylated Tyr residue, the Tyr kinase sees the STAT as a substrate and phosphorylates Tyr residues within the STAT protein. Tyr-phosphorylated STATs form dimers and translocate to the nucleus to bind to DNA and induce transcription of certain responsive genes.

D. PI3 kinase pathway

Another major signaling pathway stimulated by catalytic receptors is the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase or PI3 kinase pathway that is important in promoting cell survival and cell growth. Following ligand binding to a catalytic receptor, receptor dimerization, and phosphorylation of Tyr residues within the cytoplasmic tail of the receptor, PI3 kinase

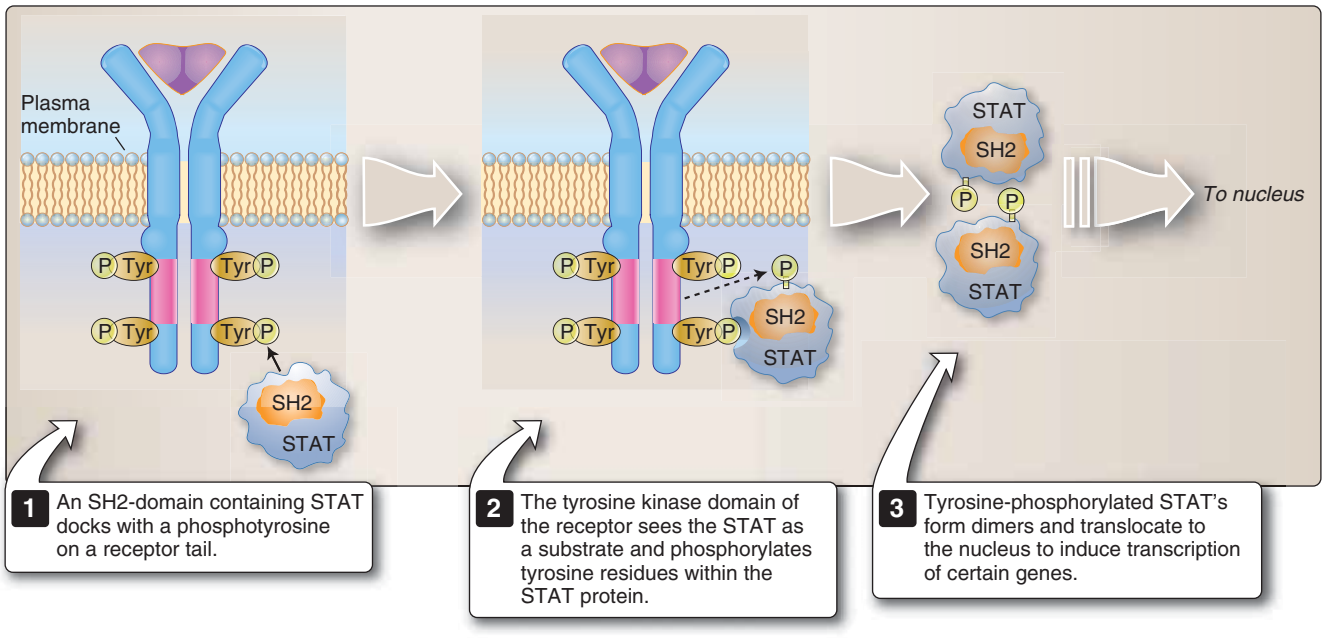


Figure 18.4
STATs in signal transduction.

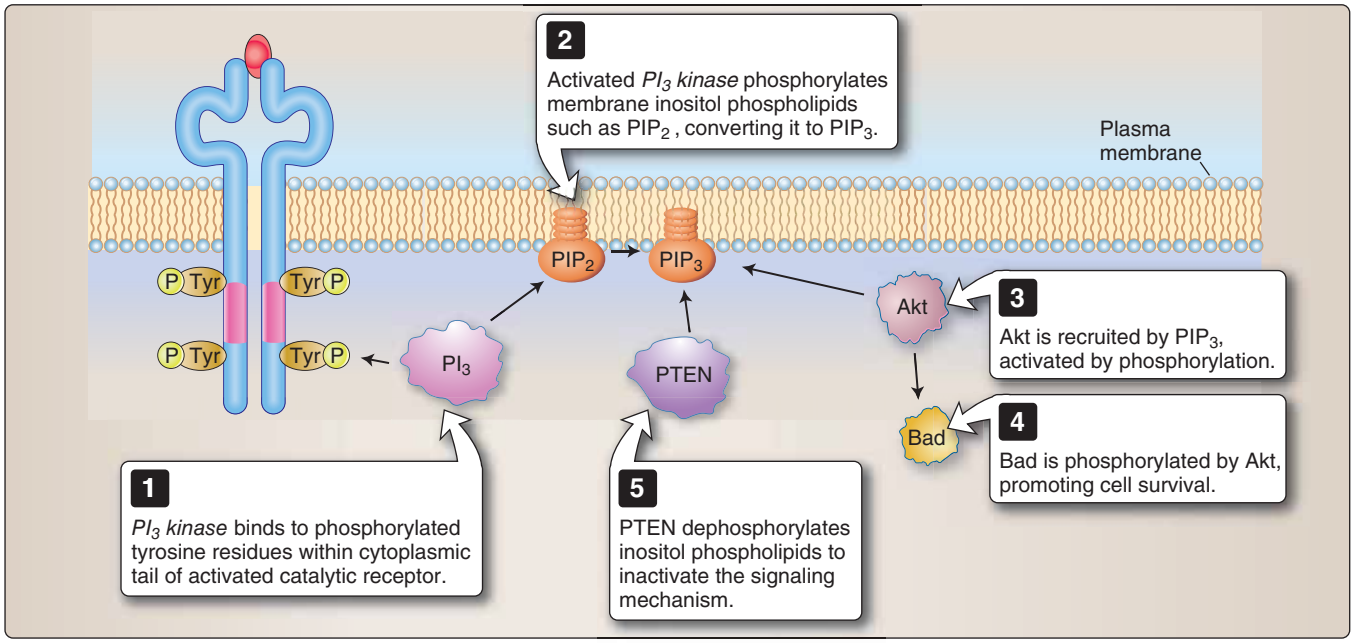


Figure 18.5
PI3 kinase pathway.

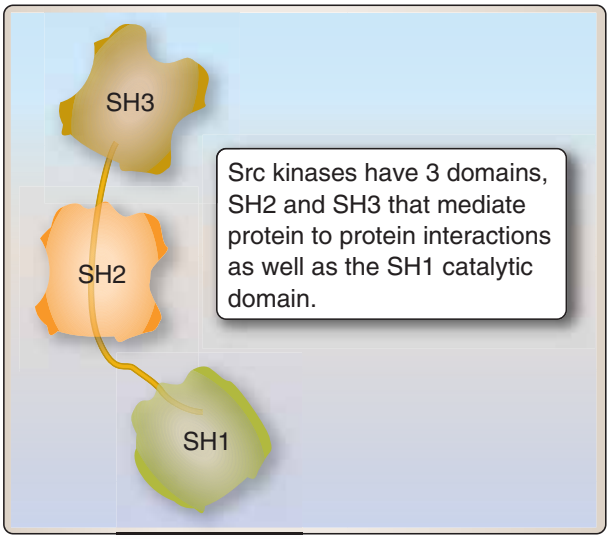


Figure 18.6
Src family of tyrosine kinases.

binds to the phosphorylated Tyr residues (Figure 18.5). Activated PI3 kinase phosphorylates membrane inositol phospholipids (on their three position), such as phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP_2). PIP_2 is converted to PIP_3 in response to PI3 kinase action. Phosphorylated inositol lipids are docking sites for intracellular signaling proteins. **Akt**, also called protein kinase B, is recruited by PIP_3 and activated by

phosphorylation. **Bad** is then phosphorylated by Akt, inactivating Bad and preventing it from inducing programmed cell death (apoptosis). Thus, cell survival is promoted. PIP_3 remains in the membrane until it is dephosphorylated by inositol phospholipid phosphatases, including **PTEN,** whose actions halt the signaling mechanism. (If a mutation occurs in PTEN, signaling through PI3 kinase can continue for prolonged periods and can promote cancer development.)

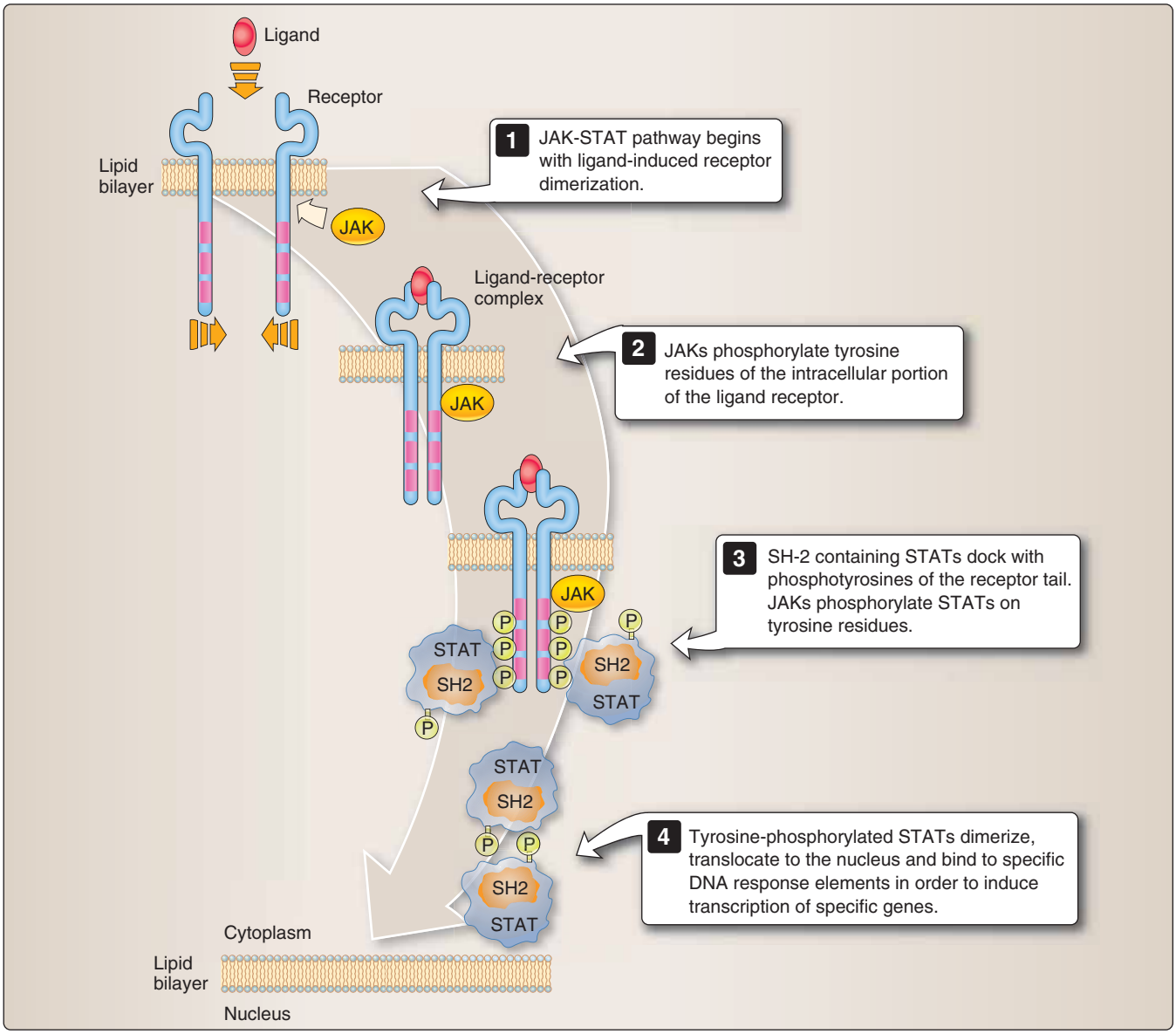


Figure 18.7
Janus kinase signaling.

III. SIGNALING VIA NONRECEPTOR TYROSINE KINASES

Receptors for cytokines (interleukins and interferons) and for some hormones (such as prolactin and growth hormone) do not possess their own Tyr kinase activity but activate nonreceptor Tyr kinases to carry out their signaling process (see also *LIR Immunology*, pp. 66–73). The cytoplasmic domains of these receptors noncovalently associate with cytoplasmic Tyr kinase proteins and phosphorylate Tyr residues within the receptor tail. Several nonreceptor Tyr kinases have been identified but two of the best characterized include the Src and Janus kinase families.

A. Src family tyrosine kinases

Src was the first nonreceptor Tyr kinase discovered. There are at least eight members of this nonreceptor protein Tyr kinase family including Blk, Fgr, Fyn, Hck, Lck, Lyn, Src, and Yes. All of these contain SH2 and SH3 domains that mediate protein to protein interactions as well as an SH1 catalytic domain (Figure 18.6). Different members of the family are found in different cell types. For example, Fyn, Lck, and Lyn function in lymphocyte signal transduction. Various members of the Src family can phosphorylate Tyr residues of many of the same target proteins. Src family members are regulated by phosphorylation on Tyr residues and by protein to protein interactions. Src proteins are normally inactive and are switched on only at crucial times. If Src remains active, uncontrolled growth and malignancy can result. Mutations in Src are found in many cancers.

B. Janus kinases

Janus kinases, referred to as **JAK**s, are latent cytosolic Tyr kinases activated by certain cytokine and hormone receptors. JAKs phosphorylate Tyr residues of the intracellular portion of the receptor chains. STATs bind to these phosphotyrosines and are phosphorylated on Tyr residues by the JAK (Figure 18.7). This signaling process is often referred to as the JAK-STAT pathway. Tyr-phosphorylated STATs form dimers and translocate to the nucleus as previously described.

IV. INSULIN SIGNALING

Insulin signals via catalytic receptors with intrinsic Tyr kinase activity. The insulin receptor is preformed in the membrane with all chains joined together prior to hormone binding. After insulin binds to the extracellular

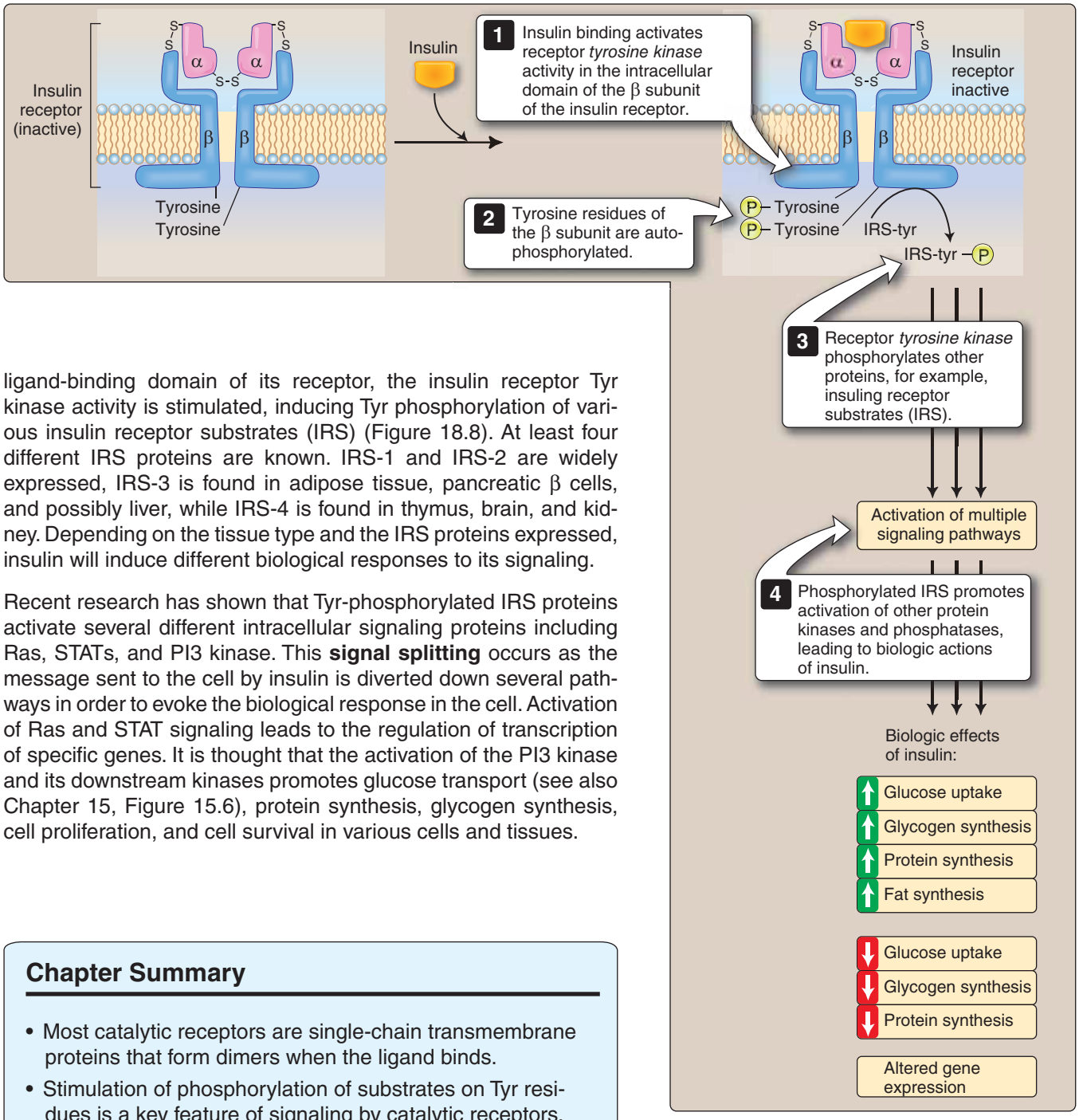


Figure 18.8
Insulin receptor autophosphorylation and IRS function.

ligand-binding domain of its receptor, the insulin receptor Tyr kinase activity is stimulated, inducing Tyr phosphorylation of various insulin receptor substrates (IRS) (Figure 18.8). At least four different IRS proteins are known. IRS-1 and IRS-2 are widely expressed, IRS-3 is found in adipose tissue, pancreatic β cells, and possibly liver, while IRS-4 is found in thymus, brain, and kidney. Depending on the tissue type and the IRS proteins expressed, insulin will induce different biological responses to its signaling.

Recent research has shown that Tyr-phosphorylated IRS proteins activate several different intracellular signaling proteins including Ras, STATs, and PI3 kinase. This **signal splitting** occurs as the message sent to the cell by insulin is diverted down several pathways in order to evoke the biological response in the cell. Activation of Ras and STAT signaling leads to the regulation of transcription of specific genes. It is thought that the activation of the PI3 kinase and its downstream kinases promotes glucose transport (see also Chapter 15, Figure 15.6), protein synthesis, glycogen synthesis, cell proliferation, and cell survival in various cells and tissues.

Chapter Summary

- Most catalytic receptors are single-chain transmembrane proteins that form dimers when the ligand binds.
- Stimulation of phosphorylation of substrates on Tyr residues is a key feature of signaling by catalytic receptors.
- Some receptors have intrinsic Tyr kinase activity while others associate with nonreceptor Tyr kinases.

- Receptors for growth factors and for the hormone insulin contain intrinsic Tyr kinase activity that is stimulated by ligand binding.
- Adapter molecules containing SH2 domains bind to the phosphorylated Tyr residues within the receptor cytoplasmic tails when the catalytic receptor is activated by its ligand. STATs are such adapter proteins that are activated to stimulate gene transcription.
- The PI3 kinase pathway promotes cell growth and survival and is stimulated by many catalytic receptors. Phosphorylation of inositol phospholipids stimulates additional signaling reactions.
- Src and Janus kinases are intracellular nonreceptor Tyr kinases.
- Insulin signals its catalytic receptor to undergo autophosphorylation on Tyr residues. The activated Tyr kinase domain of the receptor then phosphorylates various IRSs to send the signal onward in the cell.

Study Questions

18.1 Prolactin's stimulation of its target cell begins by its catalytic receptor

A. Activating G proteins.
B. Catalyzing production of second messengers.
C. Dephosphorylating serine/threonine residues.
D. Forming dimers in the membrane.
E. Stimulating Tyr phosphorylation of Ras.

18.1: Correct answer = D. Dimerization of receptor chains within the membrane is an initial step of catalytic receptor signaling following ligand binding. Catalytic receptors do not activate G proteins or catalyze the production of second messengers. Dephosphorylation of serine/threonine residues is not a consequence of catalytic receptor signaling. Ras functions as a GTP-binding protein and does not become phosphorylated on Tyr residues.

18.2 Interleukin-2 binds to its catalytic receptor on a T lymphocyte. In response, which of the following will change within the cell?

A. Activity of adenylyl cyclase
B. Calcium concentration
C. Level of phosphotyrosine
D. Ras movement to the nucleus
E. Second messengers

18.2: Correct answer = C. The level of phosphotyrosine within a cell will change in response to catalytic receptor signaling. Second messengers, including calcium, will not be altered by catalytic receptor signaling. Adenylyl cyclase is an enzyme linked to some G proteins. Its activity will not be affected by catalytic receptor signaling.

18.3 STATs function in signal transduction by

A. Activating GTP binding to the α subunits of G proteins.
B. Binding receptors phosphorylated on serine/threonine residues.
C. Linking to G protein–coupled transmembrane receptors.
D. Phosphorylating substrates on Tyr residues.
E. Stimulating transcription of responsive genes.

18.4 Insulin binds to an insulin receptor of an adipocyte (fat cell). Which of the following is a signaling process that will occur in response?

A. Activation of protein kinase C to phosphorylate substrates
B. Adenylyl cyclase stimulation of cAMP production
C. G protein activation of second messenger production
D. Translocation of the insulin receptor to the cell's nucleus
E. Tyr phosphorylation of IRS

18.5 A cell has a mutant form of PTEN. As a result, which of the following signaling molecules will remain active longer than usual?

A. G protein
B. JAK kinase
C. PI3 kinase
D. Protein kinase C
E. STATs

18.3: Correct answer = E. STATs function in signal transduction by stimulating the transcription of responsive genes. STATs are first activated by phosphorylation of Tyr residues by either receptor Tyr kinases or JAK kinases. Tyr-phosphorylated STATs dimerize, translocate to the nucleus, and bind to DNA, stimulating transcription. STATs function independently of G proteins. They do not activate or bind to them. STATs do not bind to phosphorylated serine/threonine residues on receptors. STATs do not possess kinase activity and therefore do not phosphorylate substrates.

18.4: Correct answer = E. Insulin signaling involves phosphorylation of IRS on Tyr residues. Insulin signaling does not activate the serine/threonine kinase, protein kinase C, which results from second messenger activation. Second messengers, such as cAMP, are not utilized in insulin signaling. The insulin receptor remains embedded in the plasma membrane and does not translocate to the cell's nucleus.

18.5: Correct answer = C. PI3 kinase will remain active when mutant PTEN is unable to dephosphorylate inositol phospholipids. G protein signaling does not involve PTEN. Protein kinase C activity is stimulated by G protein–stimulated second messengers and does not depend upon PTEN. Both JAK kinases and STATs function independently of PTEN.

Steroid Receptor Signaling

19

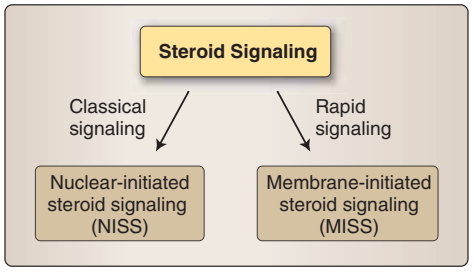


Figure 19.1
Mechanisms of steroid signaling.

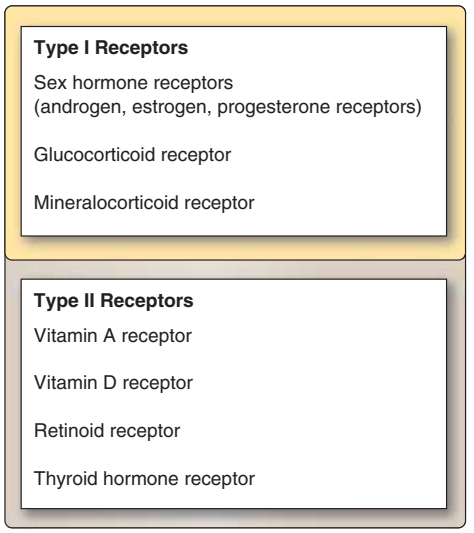


Figure 19.2
Categories of steroid receptors.

I. OVERVIEW

The use of intracellular receptors distinguishes classical steroid hormone signaling from signaling by hydrophilic signaling factors including peptide hormones and growth factors that use membrane-bound receptors. Intracellular receptors for steroids are located in the cytoplasm or in the nucleus of target cells. Steroid hormone receptors act as **ligand-activated transcription factors**, since their ligand (hormone) binds to them and activates them so that they can bind to DNA and regulate transcription (production of mRNA) for a specific gene, which is then translated into a protein. This classical form of steroid signaling is known as **nuclear-initiated steroid signaling** (NISS) (Figure 19.1). In this way, the steroid has an effect on the cell's genome. It can take minutes, hours, or days for the effects of classical steroid hormone signaling to induce a biological response in the target cell in the form of production of a new protein.

Within seconds or minutes after addition of some steroid hormones, some other signaling effects can be observed in target cells. These include changes in intracellular calcium concentration, activation of G proteins, and stimulation of protein kinase activity, which are not mediated by classical intracellular steroid receptors but through steroid receptors in the plasma membrane. **Membrane-initiated steroid signaling** (MISS) is now described in addition to classical steroid signaling. At present, less detailed information is known about MISS than about NISS, although MISS is an active area of research investigation. Both types of signaling are believed to be important for normal function of steroid hormones.

Molecules that signal target cells using NISS and MISS include sex steroid hormones, glucocorticoids, and mineralocorticoids as well as vitamins A and D, retinoids, and thyroid hormones. Classical intracellular receptors have been grouped into two categories, type 1 receptors and type 2 receptors based on the details of their signaling mechanisms (Figure 19.2). Sex hormone, glucocorticoid, and mineralocorticoid receptors are type 1 receptors, while vitamin A, vitamin D, retinoid, and thyroid hormone receptors are type 2. In order to bind to and activate their intracellular receptors, the steroid hormones and vitamins must first move from the blood circulation across cell membranes. Steroid hormones are synthesized from a common precursor and have structures that enable them to enter into their target cells.

II. STEROID HORMONES

Cholesterol is the precursor of all classes of steroid hormones: glucocorticoids (e.g., cortisol), mineralocorticoids (e.g., aldosterone), and sex hormones—androgens, estrogens, and progestins (Figure 19.3). (Note: Glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids are collectively called corticosteroids.) Cholesterol is first converted to pregnenolone and then to progesterone, which is a common precursor to all steroid hormones. Corticosteroids such as cortisol and aldosterone are produced from progesterone. While testosterone (an androgen) is also produced from progesterone, estradiol (an estrogen) is produced from testosterone (see *LIR Biochemistry*, Chapter 18 for more information regarding cholesterol).

Synthesis and secretion of steroid hormones occur in the adrenal cortex (cortisol, aldosterone, and androgens), ovaries and placenta (estrogens and progestins), and testes (testosterone) (Figure 19.4). Hormones exert their effects at the cellular level, as evidenced by aldosterone stimulation of renal reabsorption of sodium and excretion of potassium. Other biological effects of steroid hormones include cortisol's stimulation of gluconeogenesis, estrogen's regulation of the menstrual cycle, and

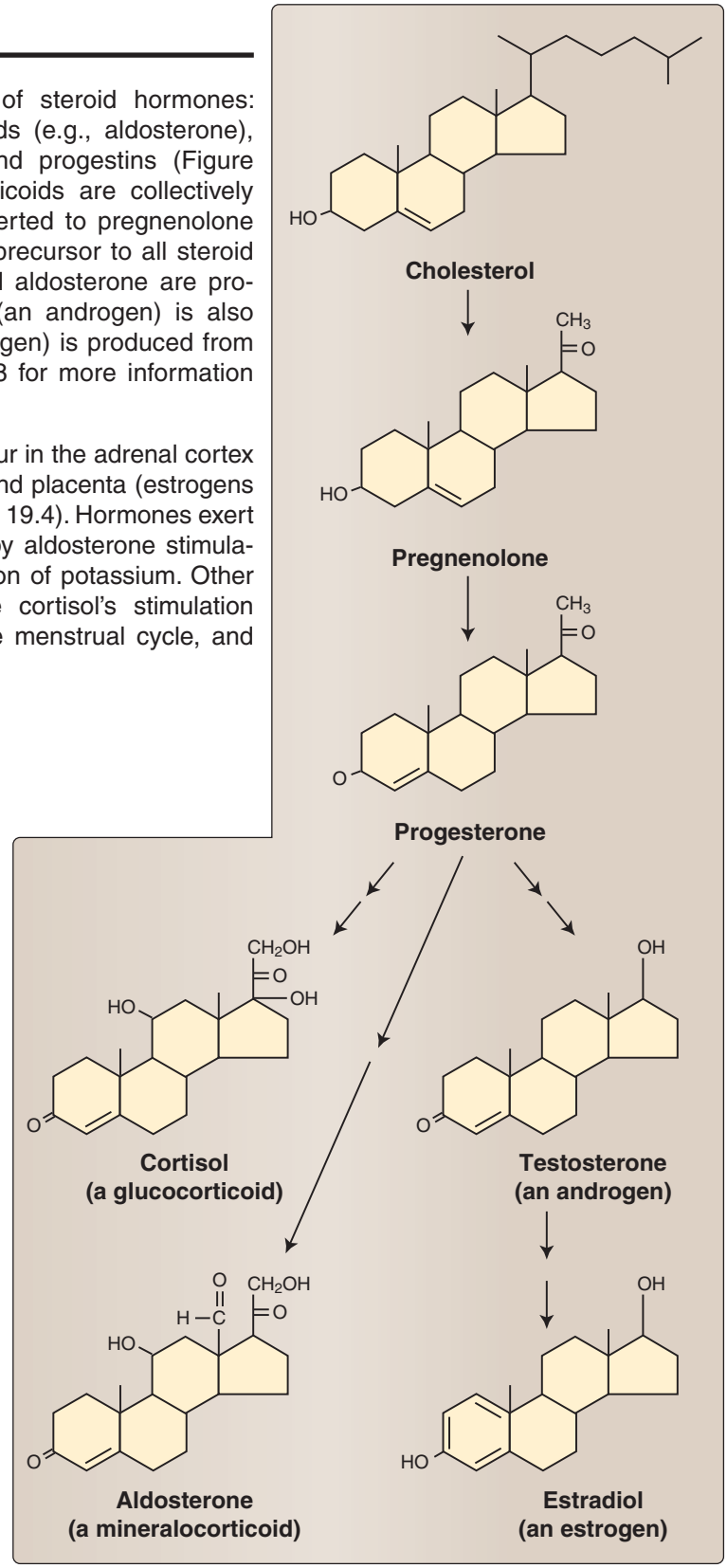


Figure 19.3
Key steroid hormones produced from cholesterol.

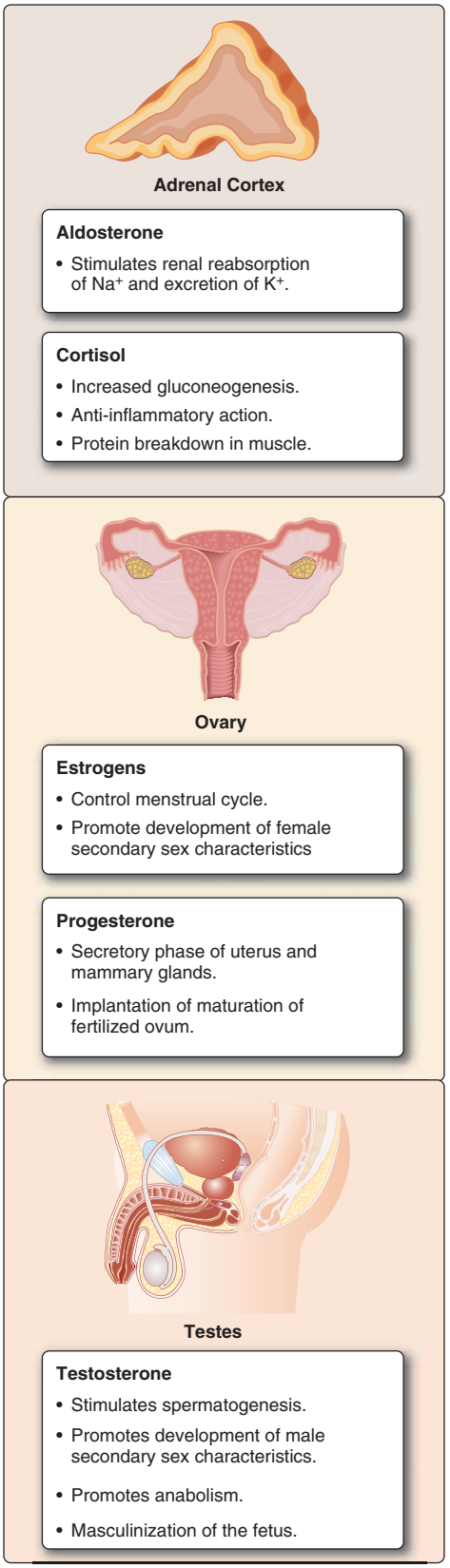


Figure 19.4
Actions of steroid hormones.

testosterone's promotion of anabolism. In order to exert such biological consequences, steroid hormones are transported by the blood from their sites of synthesis to their target organs. Because of their lipid nature and hydrophobicity, they must be complexed with a plasma protein in the aqueous environment of blood plasma. Plasma albumin can act as a nonspecific protein carrier and does carry aldosterone. However, specific steroid-carrier plasma proteins bind the steroid hormones more tightly than does albumin, for example, corticosteroid-binding globulin (transcortin) is responsible for transporting cortisol and sex hormone–binding protein transports sex steroids.

Inhibitors of steroid hormone synthesis as cancer therapy

Estrogen is derived from testosterone by the action of the enzyme aromatase. Aromatase inhibitors are used in the treatment of estrogen-responsive breast cancer in postmenopausal women. After menopause, the main source of estrogen is from aromatization of adrenal-produced androgens. Inhibitors of aromatase can reduce estrogen levels significantly and remove the main source of growth stimulation from estrogen-responsive tumors. Arrest of tumor growth and/or initiation of apoptosis (cell death) of estrogen-responsive breast tumors occur as a result of therapy with aromatase inhibitors.

III. NUCLEAR-INITIATED STEROID SIGNALING

In classical steroid signaling, NISS, steroid hormones must leave the circulation and cross the plasma membrane of a target cell. Once inside the cell, they will encounter a specific receptor in the cytosol or in the nucleus. Hormone binding modifies the receptor, enabling it to regulate the transcription of specific genes.

A. Intracellular receptor structure

Intracellular receptors for steroid hormones are a highly conserved group of proteins that contain three major functional domains (Figure 19.5). The **hormone (or ligand)-binding domain** is in the COOH-terminal region of the receptor protein while the NH_2-terminal region contains the **gene regulatory domain**. The **DNA-binding domain** of the protein forms an additional functional region. This region is highly conserved and contains **zinc finger motifs** containing cysteine amino acid residues that bind zinc and dictate DNA sequences to which the receptor will bind. Since these receptor proteins must enter the nucleus in order to bind to DNA and regulate transcription, they contain nuclear localization signals (NLS) to permit their trafficking into the nucleus (see also Chapter 11, Figure 11.9 for more information on trafficking of proteins into the nucleus).

B. Mechanism of nuclear initiated steroid signaling

In the absence of hormone, estrogen and progesterone receptors are principally located in the nucleus of the target cell and glucocorticoid and androgen receptors are located in the cytoplasm. Receptors for vitamins A and D, retinoids, and thyroid hormone (type 2 steroid receptors) are found in the nucleus (see also Figure 19.2). Regardless of the receptor's intracellular location, binding of a steroid hormone to its intracellular receptor causes activation of the receptor and enables it to translocate to the nucleus (Figure 19.6). The steroid hormone–receptor complex binds to the hormone response element (HRE) of the enhancer region and activates the gene promoter, causing transcription.

1. **Sex steroid receptors, glucocorticoid receptors, and mineralocorticoid receptors:** The activated receptor-ligand complex associates with coregulator or coactivator proteins that promote transcription. The receptor-ligand-coregulator complex binds to regulatory DNA sequences called HREs through zinc finger motifs. Ligand-bound type 1 receptor complexes bind to DNA as homodimers (two identical ligand-receptor complexes binding together). Binding of the activated hormone-receptor complexes to an HRE positions the activated receptor so that its gene regulatory domain interacts with proteins of the transcriptional complex bound to a promoter.

2. **Vitamins A and D, retinoid, and thyroid hormone receptors:** For these type 2 steroid receptors, unoccupied receptors are complexed in the nucleus with corepressor proteins, inhibiting them from inducing transcription. Ligand binding to the receptor causes release of the corepressor proteins and allows for binding to coactivator proteins. Other type 2 receptors form heterodimers with the retinoid X receptor when binding to DNA to regulate the transcription of vitamin- or hormone-responsive genes.

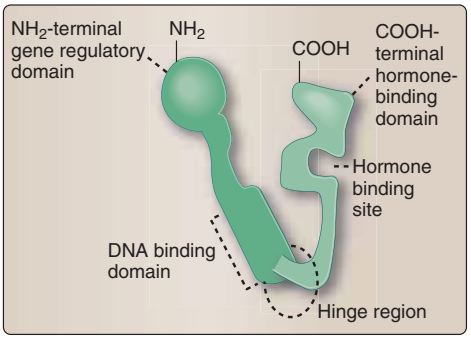


Figure 19.5
Structure of steroid hormone receptors.

C. Hormone specificity of gene transcription

An HRE is found in the promoter (or an enhancer element) for genes that respond to a specific steroid hormone, thus ensuring coordinated regulation of these genes. For example, a glucocorticoid-response element or GRE allows for a transcriptional response to a glucocorticoid such as cortisol. Each of the cortisol-responsive genes is under the control of its own GRE. Binding of the receptor-hormone complex to the glucocorticoid receptor (GR) causes a conformational change in the receptor that uncovers its zinc finger DNA-binding domain (Figure 19.7). The steroid-receptor complex then interacts with specific regulatory DNA sequences and the hormone-receptor complex in association with coactivator proteins controls the transcription of targeted genes. Overall, this process allows for the coordinate expression of a group of target genes, even when these genes are located on different chromosomes. The GRE can be located upstream or downstream of the genes it regulates and is able to function at great distances from those genes. The GRE, then, can function as a true enhancer.

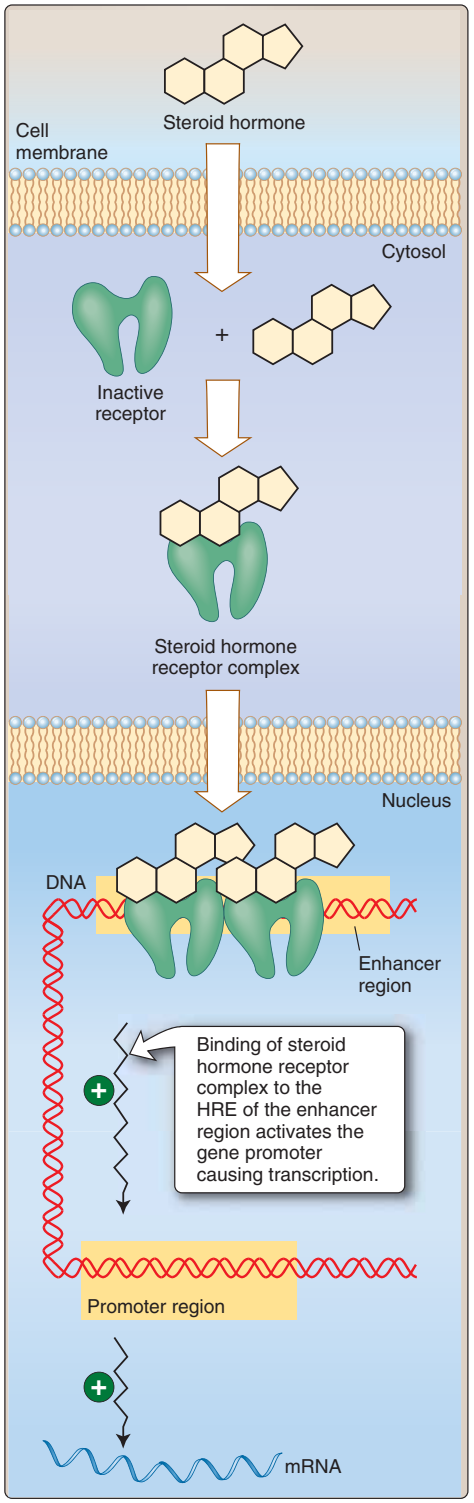


Figure 19.6
The nuclear-initiated steroid signaling (NISS) mechanism involves the activation of transcription by interaction of steroid hormone–receptor complex with hormone response element (HRE).

Hormone receptor antagonists as cancer therapies

Receptor antagonists bind to the hormone receptor and prevent binding of the natural hormone to its receptor. Selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs) are important therapies for treatment and prevention of breast cancer. Owing to their selectivity, SERMs have different effects in different tissues. One, tamoxifen, blocks estrogen receptors in breast, thereby inhibiting estrogen-dependent growth of tumors. Tamoxifen is used in premenopausal women with estrogen-receptor positive breast cancer. Tamoxifen has other effects in other tissues. For example, it can increase estrogen signaling in the endometrium, with the potential for endometrial malignancy.

IV. MEMBRANE-INITIATED STEROID SIGNALING

Rapid effects of steroid hormones that occur within seconds to minutes after exposure of target cells to steroid hormones are now believed to result from actions of steroid receptors localized to the plasma membrane. MISS induces biological effects more quickly than classical NISS since it promotes modifications to existing proteins (e.g., phosphorylation) and does not require synthesis of new proteins. Details remain to be determined for many aspects of MISS; however, some details of this signaling process are known, particularly for membrane estrogen receptors. Membrane forms of androgen, glucocorticoid, progesterone, mineralocorticoid, and thyroid hormones have also been identified and have similar signaling processes to the membrane estrogen receptor. Evidence also exists for the presence of membrane-bound vitamin D receptors. Cross talk between intracellular and membrane-bound pools of steroid receptors is believed to occur and both NISS and MISS mechanisms can be used to evoke biological responses. Convergence of signals at the membrane, cytoplasm, and nucleus causes the overall biological effects of steroid hormones. For example, kinases activated by MISS may phosphorylate coactivators required for transcriptional activation via NISS. Additionally, signaling from membrane steroid receptors may contribute to gene transcription independently of nuclear steroid receptors.

A. Membrane receptors

Membrane steroid receptors are believed to have the same protein structure as intracellular steroid receptors but are localized to membrane caveolae, invaginated regions of the membrane that have a flask-like shape (Figure 19.8) (see also Chapter 3, Figure 3.13). In its membrane-bound form, the steroid hormone receptor may either associate with the outer surface of the plasma membrane in the flask of an individual caveola or may be tethered by a scaffolding protein to the plasma membrane. After the receptor is bound by its specific steroid hormone, it becomes activated and may form homodimers or heterodimers with other membrane steroid receptors.

B. Mechanism of membrane-initiated steroid signaling

Activated receptors bound by their specific steroid hormone then associate with a complex of signaling proteins that can include G proteins,

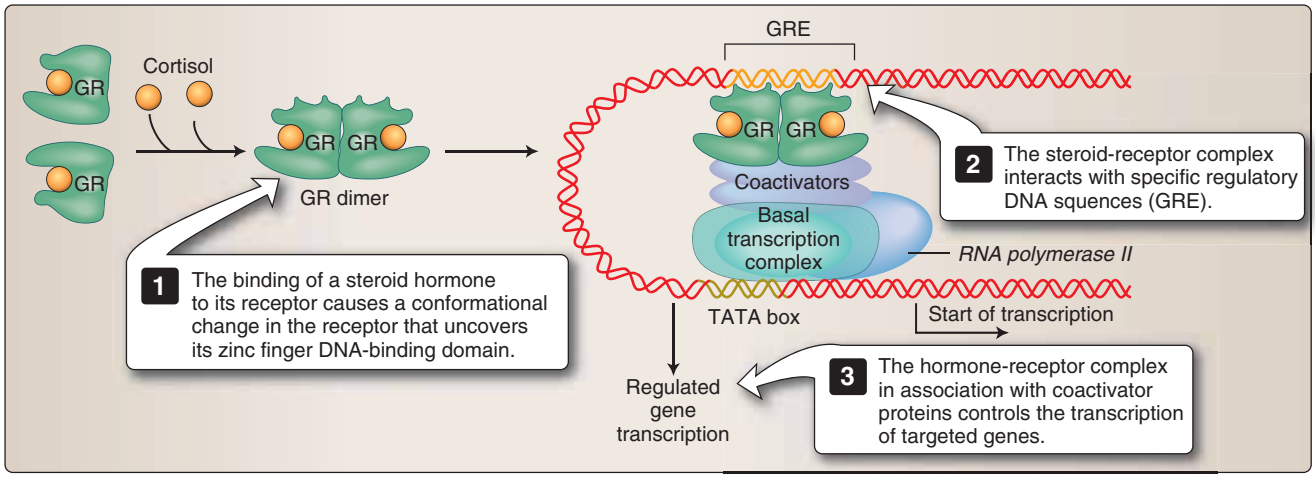


Figure 19.7
Transcriptional regulation by intracellular steroid hormone receptors. GRE, glucocorticoid response element (an example of an HRE); GR, glucocorticoid receptor.

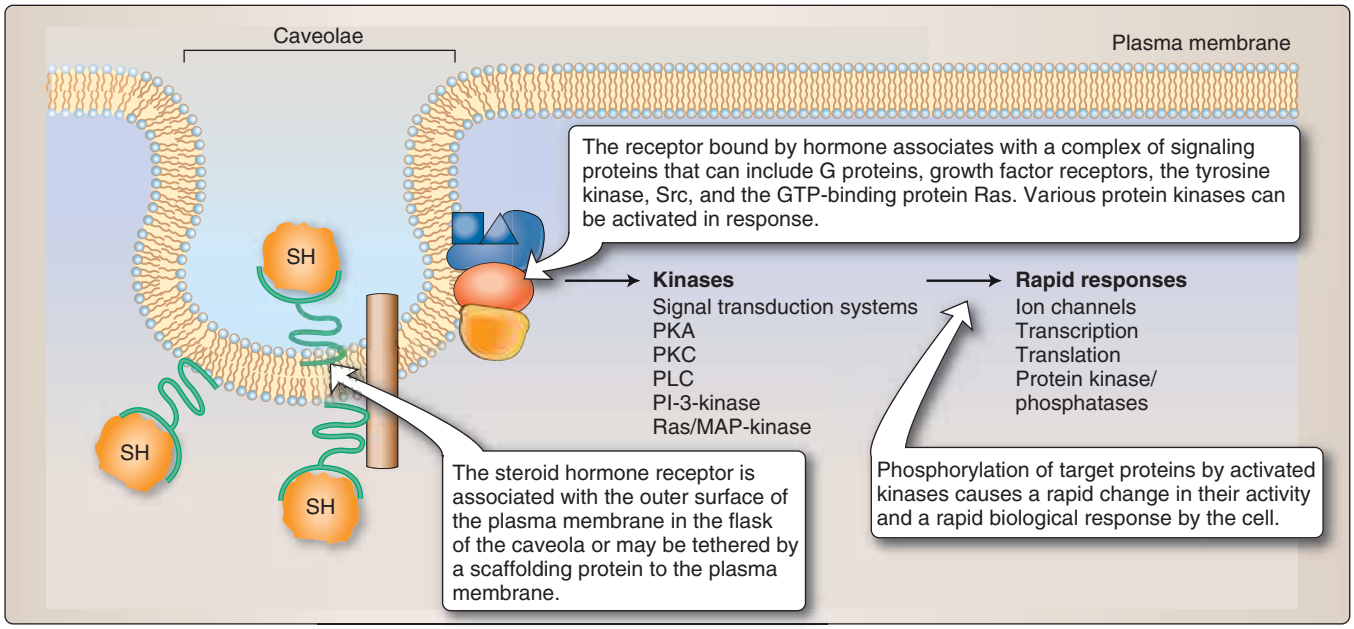


Figure 19.8
Membrane-initiated steroid signaling (MISS). SH, steroid harmone.

growth factor receptors, the tyrosine kinase Src, and the GTP-binding protein Ras. The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) is often implicated in MISS, and its activation can result in sustained MAP kinase signaling in a cell responding to a steroid via MISS. Second messengers can be induced and ion channels regulated. Protein kinases that often function in response to G protein activation, including serine/threonine kinases PKA and PKC, can be activated as well as PI3 kinase that functions in catalytic receptor signaling (see also Chapters 17 and 18). Phosphorylation of target proteins by activated kinases causes a rapid change in their activity and a rapid biological response by the cell.

Chapter Summary

- Classical steroid signaling involves the use of intracellular receptors that function as ligand-activated transcription factors and therefore regulate the synthesis of new cellular proteins. This form of steroid signaling is referred to as NISS.
- Steroid hormones are synthesized from cholesterol and exert actions on the adrenal cortex, the ovaries, and the testes.
- Intracellular steroid receptors are present in the cytosol or nucleus of the target cell. They contain ligand-binding, gene regulatory, and DNA-binding domains.
- Hormone binding to its intracellular receptor results in receptor dimerization and activation. If in the cytosol, hormone-receptor complexes will first traffic to the nucleus. Once in the nucleus, they bind to DNA and activate transcription of hormone-responsive genes.
- Membrane receptors for steroid hormones permit more rapid signaling events in response to hormone binding. These have the same protein structure as intracellular steroid receptors but are instead localized to membrane caveolae.
- MISS involves modifications to existing cellular proteins, often through phosphorylation.
- Convergence of steroid signaling pathways at the membrane, cytoplasm, and nucleus permits an overall biological response to the steroid hormone.

Study Questions

19.1 A particular cell type under study is known to be the target of a certain hormone's action. The hormone has an intracellular receptor that normally resides within the cell's nucleus. The most likely identity of the hormone is

A. Adrenocorticotropic hormone
B. Estrogen
C. Growth hormone
D. Insulin
E. Prolactin

19.1: Correct answer = B. Estrogen is a steroid hormone that has an intracellular receptor that normally resides in the cell's nucleus. Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), growth hormone, insulin, and prolactin are all hydrophilic, peptide hormones that exclusively use membrane-bound receptors to stimulate their target cells.

19.2 Cells isolated from a breast tumor and grown in cell culture in the laboratory are found to respond to estrogen via both intracellular and membrane-bound receptors. Which of the following is most likely to result from signaling via the intracellular receptor?

A. Activation of serine/threonine protein kinase
B. Change in intracellular calcium levels
C. GTP binding to Ras
D. Phosphorylation of cellular enzymes
E. Synthesis of estrogen-responsive protein

19.2: Correct answer = E. In response to an intracellular steroid receptor, a target cell will synthesize a hormone-responsive protein. In this situation, estrogen will regulate the transcription of an estrogen-responsive gene that will be translated into a protein. Changes in intracellular calcium levels and in serine/threonine kinase activity result from G protein–mediated cell signaling. G protein–linked receptors are membrane-bound receptors. Phosphorylation of substrates is catalyzed by protein kinases. Serine/threonine kinases are regulated by second messengers and G protein–linked receptors. Tyrosine kinases are activated in catalytic receptor signaling. All use membrane-bound receptors. Ras is a GTP-binding protein activated by some forms of membrane receptor signaling.

19.3 A 43-year-old female patient has an estrogen-receptor positive breast tumor. An SERM is used as treatment. The beneficial actions of this drug to the patient result from the drug

A. Activating the transcription of estrogen-responsive genes.
B. Augmenting estrogen signaling in the remaining tumor cells.
C. Blocking the binding of estrogen to estrogen receptors.
D. Inducing signaling via membrane estrogen receptors.
E. Stimulating the translation of estrogen-regulated proteins.

19.3: Correct answer = C. Selective estrogen receptor modulators are hormone receptor antagonists that block the binding of the natural hormone to its receptor. Blocking the binding prevents hormone signaling through the receptor. In the case of an estrogen-responsive breast tumor, blocking the binding of estrogen will prevent the cancer cells from receiving stimulation necessary for their continued growth and survival. Activation of transcription of estrogen-responsive genes, augmentation of estrogen signaling, and stimulation of translation of estrogen-regulated proteins would be beneficial to the cancer cells and their survival, but not to the patient. It would not be beneficial to the patient for membrane-bound estrogen receptors to be stimulated and that is not the goal of such a therapy.

19.4 Which of the following regions within an androgen receptor protein contains zinc finger motifs?

A. Cytosolic domain
B. DNA-binding domain
C. Gene regulatory domain
D. Ligand-binding domain
E. Transmembrane domain

19.4: Correct answer = B. The DNA-binding domain of an intracellular steroid receptor protein contains zinc finger motifs that bind zinc and dictate DNA sequences to which the receptor will bind. The ligand-binding domain binds to the hormone and is in the COOH-terminal region. The gene regulatory domain is important for transcriptional activation but does not contain the zinc fingers that actually facilitate DNA binding. Membrane-bound steroid receptors, including those for androgens, may contain cytosolic (extracellular) and transmembrane regions; however, neither of them would have zinc fingers to facilitate DNA binding.

19.5 A steroid-responsive tumor cell has abnormally increased activity of MAP kinase signaling in response to the steroid. Which of the following aspects of steroid signaling may be involved in this abnormally sustained signaling?

A. DNA binding by activated hormone-receptor complex
B. Formation of hormone-receptor complex
C. Membrane-initiated steroid signaling
D. Stimulation of the receptor's gene regulatory domain
E. Translocation of the receptor to the cell's nucleus

19.5: Correct answer = C. Abnormal MISS can result in sustained activation of cellular kinase systems, including MAP kinase. EGFR is implicated in this abnormal signaling pathway. All other answer choices relate to NISS. Kinases such as MAP kinase are not (directly) stimulated in the course of NISS.

UNIT V
Regulation of Cell Growth and Cell Death

Life is pleasant. Death is peaceful. It's the transition that's troublesome.
—Isaac Asimov (American science fiction writer and biochemist, 1920–1992)

Arguably the most important occurrences within the life of a cell are its generation from a progenitor followed by its demise, either through a natural or through a pathological process. Regulation of both processes is critical to ensure that the appropriate number of cells is available to carry out their function within the organism. Safeguards are also needed to protect against uncontrolled growth, which may result in malignancy and the death of the organism in which the cell is a participant. This unit begins with a description of the cell cycle, the orderly sequence of biochemical events that culminates with the generation of two new cells from one parent cell. Cells that enter the active phases of the cell cycle often do so after resting in interphase for varying periods of time, depending on the cell type. Once a cell commits itself to dividing and to passing on its genetic information, it enters into a critical transition period, which, if unsuccessful, will mean that the cell has failed to reproduce itself and will likely die. Curiously, if the outcome of the cell cycle is a success, the parent cell will cease to exist, with two exact replicas replacing it. The second chapter in this unit concerns regulation of the cell cycle and the third focuses on abnormal cell growth. Checks and balances within the cell cycle are necessary to enable the orderly process of cell duplication to occur. As our understanding of abnormal cell growth progresses, improved treatments to halt unregulated growth may be developed. The fourth chapter in this unit focuses on cell death, particularly on the physiological process of apoptosis, where collateral damage is minimized. This unit concludes with the final chapter, an exploration of aging and senescence of the cell and the organism.

The Cell Cycle

20

I. OVERVIEW

Multicellular organisms are composed of a variety of specialized cells organized into a cellular community. When an organism requires additional cells, either for growth or to replace those normally lost, new ones must be produced by **cell division,** or **proliferation**. Somatic cells are generated by the division of existing cells in an orderly sequence of events. They duplicate their contents and then divide to produce two identical **daughter cells**. This sequence of duplication is known as the **cell cycle** and is the essential mechanism of eukaryotic reproduction. Cell division occurs throughout the life of the organism, although different cell types divide more or less often than others. Cells display remarkable variation in their proliferative capacity, depending on the cell type and the age of the individual. For example, neonatally derived fibroblasts can complete close to fifty rounds of division, but fibroblasts isolated from adults can complete only approximately half as many cell cycles.

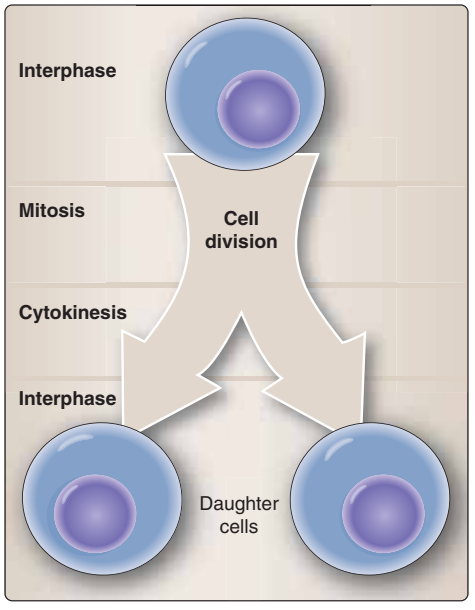


Figure 20.1
Stages of cell division and the cell cycle.

Cell renewal

Homeostasis, or stable system maintenance, requires that as cells die off or are lost (e.g., through abrasion or sloughing), they are replaced by tissue-type specific cells. Cellular turnover is a normal function. The turnover times for some cells in the adult body are slow or nonexistent (in the endocrine and central nervous system, for example), whereas other cells turnover very rapidly. Each individual has approximately 2×10^{13} erythrocytes. Because the half-life for an erythrocyte is approximately 115 days, the human body must replace approximately 10^{11} new red blood cells every day! The most abundant leukocytes, neutrophils, have a half-life of approximately 10.5 h, which means the body needs to replace approximately 6×10^{10} neutrophilsper day. Cells within the epithelia also turnover rapidly. The lifespan for cells that line the stomach is 3 to 5 days and that for enterocytes that line the small bowel is 5 to 6 days.

For a cell to generate two daughter cells, complete copies of all of the cell's constituents must be made. Genetic information contained within multiple chromosomes must be duplicated; the cytoplasmic organelles and cytoskeletal filaments must be copied and shared between the two newly formed daughter cells. The cell cycle may be broadly divided into three distinct stages: interphase, mitosis, and cytokinesis. **Interphase** is the period between successive rounds of nuclear division and is

distinguished by cellular growth and new synthesis of DNA. It can be further subdivided into three phases called **G_1 phase**, **S phase**, and **G_2 phase** (Figure 20.1). Division of genetic information occurs during the stage of the cell cycle known as **mitosis**. Mitosis can be divided into five distinct phases called **prophase**, **prometaphase**, **metaphase**, **anaphase**, and **telophase** and assures that each daughter cell will have identical complete functional copies of the parent cell's genetic material. The third stage, cytoplasmic division or **cytokinesis,** culminates with the separation into two distinct daughter cells that enter interphase.

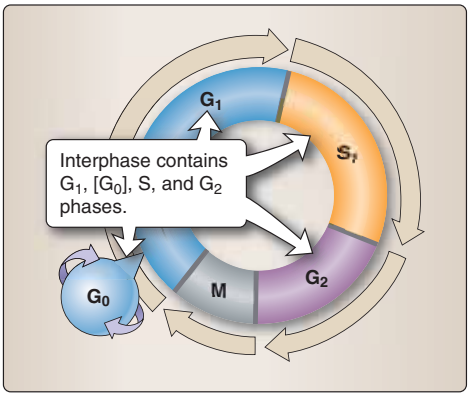


Figure 20.2
Interphase.

II. INTERPHASE

All cells, whether actively cycling or not, spend the vast majority of their lives in interphase. **Interphase** is an eventful and important part of the cell cycle and comprises G_1, S, and G_2 phases (Figure 20.2). Cellular growth and DNA synthesis occur during interphase, resulting in a duplication of cellular materials so that there are sufficient materials for two complete new daughter cells.

A. G_1 and G_0 phases

Named for the gap that follows mitosis and the next round of DNA synthesis, **G_1 phase** is generally both a growth phase and a preparation time for DNA synthesis of S phase (Figure 20.3). RNA and protein synthesis also take place during G_1 phase. In addition, organelles and intracellular structures are duplicated and the cell grows during this phase. The length of G_1 phase is the most variable among cell types. Very rapidly dividing cells, such as growing embryonic cells, spend very little time in G_1 phase. On the other hand, mature cells that are no longer actively cycling are permanently in G_1 phase. Those cells in G_1 phase that are not committed to DNA synthesis are in a specialized resting state called **G_0 phase** (pronounced G-zero phase). Some inactive or quiescent cells in G_0 phase may reenter the active phases of the cell cycle upon proper stimulation. The **restriction point** is located within G_1 phase and, if passed, will commit a cell to continuing into DNA synthesis within S phase. The restriction point is critical for cell cycle regulation and is detailed in Chapter 21.

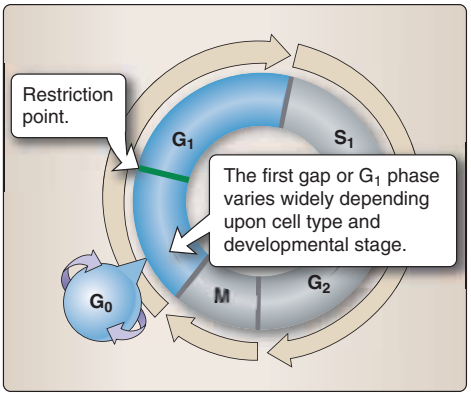


Figure 20.3
G_1 and G_0 phase.

B. S phase

Synthesis of nuclear DNA, also known as DNA **replication**, occurs during S phase (Figure 20.4). Each of the 46 chromosomes in a human cell is copied to form a sister **chromatid**. ATP-dependent unwinding of the chromatin structure by **DNA helicase** exposes the binding sites for DNA polymerase that will catalyze the synthesis of new DNA in the 5′ to 3′ direction. Multiple replication forks are activated on each chromosome in order to ensure that the entire genome is duplicated within the time span of S phase. Upon completion of DNA synthesis, chromosome strands are condensed into tightly coiled heterochromatin. The time

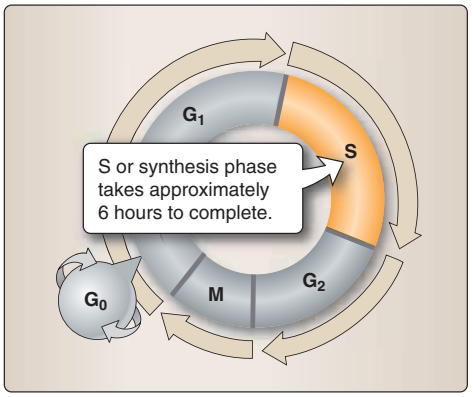


Figure 20.4
S phase.

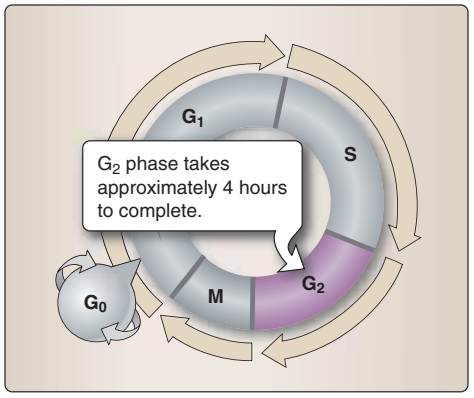


Figure 20.5
G_2 phase.

for completion of this process is relatively constant among cell types. Actively cycling cells spend approximately 6 h in S phase. DNA replication is described in detail in Chapter 7.

C. G_2 phase

The gap between the completion of S phase and the start of mitosis, known as **G_2**, is a time of preparation for the nuclear division of mitosis (Figure 20.5). This safety gap allows the cell to ensure that DNA synthesis is complete before proceeding to nuclear division in mitosis. Also contained with the G_2 is a checkpoint where intracellular regulatory molecules assess nuclear integrity (see Chapter 21.III). Typically, this phase lasts for approximately 4 h.

III. MITOSIS

Mitosis or nuclear division is a continuous process and can be divided into five phases based on progress made to a specific point in the overall nuclear division. Dividing cells spend about 1 h in mitosis (Figure 20.6). After completion of nuclear division, cytokinesis occurs, involving cytoplasmic division and resulting in the formation of two separate daughter cells from the one parent cell.

A. Prophase

In prophase, the nuclear envelope remains intact while the chromatin that was duplicated during S phase condenses into defined chromosomal structures called **chromatids** (Figure 20.7A). Chromosomes of mitotic cells contain two chromatids connected to each other at a **centromere**. Specialized protein complexes, called **kinetochores**, form and associate with each chromatid. Mitotic spindle microtubules will attach to each kinetochore as chromosomes are moved apart later in mitosis. The microtubules of the cytoplasm disassemble and then reorganize on the surface of the nucleus to form the **mitotic spindle**. Two centriole pairs push away from each other by growing bundles of microtubules forming the mitotic spindle. The **nucleolus**, the organelle within the nucleus where ribosomes are made, disassembles in prophase.

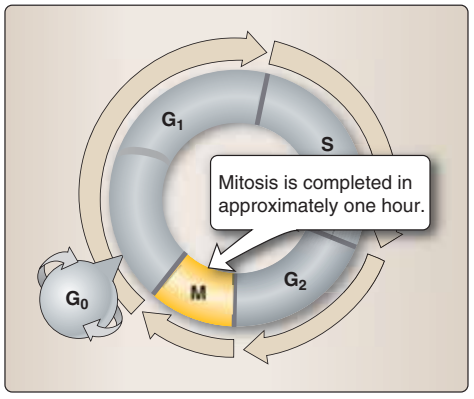


Figure 20.6
M phase.

B. Prometaphase

The disassembly of the nuclear envelope marks the beginning of prometaphase (Figure 20.7B). Spindle microtubules bind to kinetochores and chromosomes are pulled by the microtubules of the spindle.

C. Metaphase

Metaphase is characterized by chromatids aligned at the equator of the spindle, halfway between the two poles (Figure 20.7C). The aligned chromatids form the metaphase plate. Cells can be arrested in metaphase when microtubule inhibitors are used (see also Chapter 21). Karyotype analyses used to determine the overall chromosome composition and structure most often require cells in metaphase.

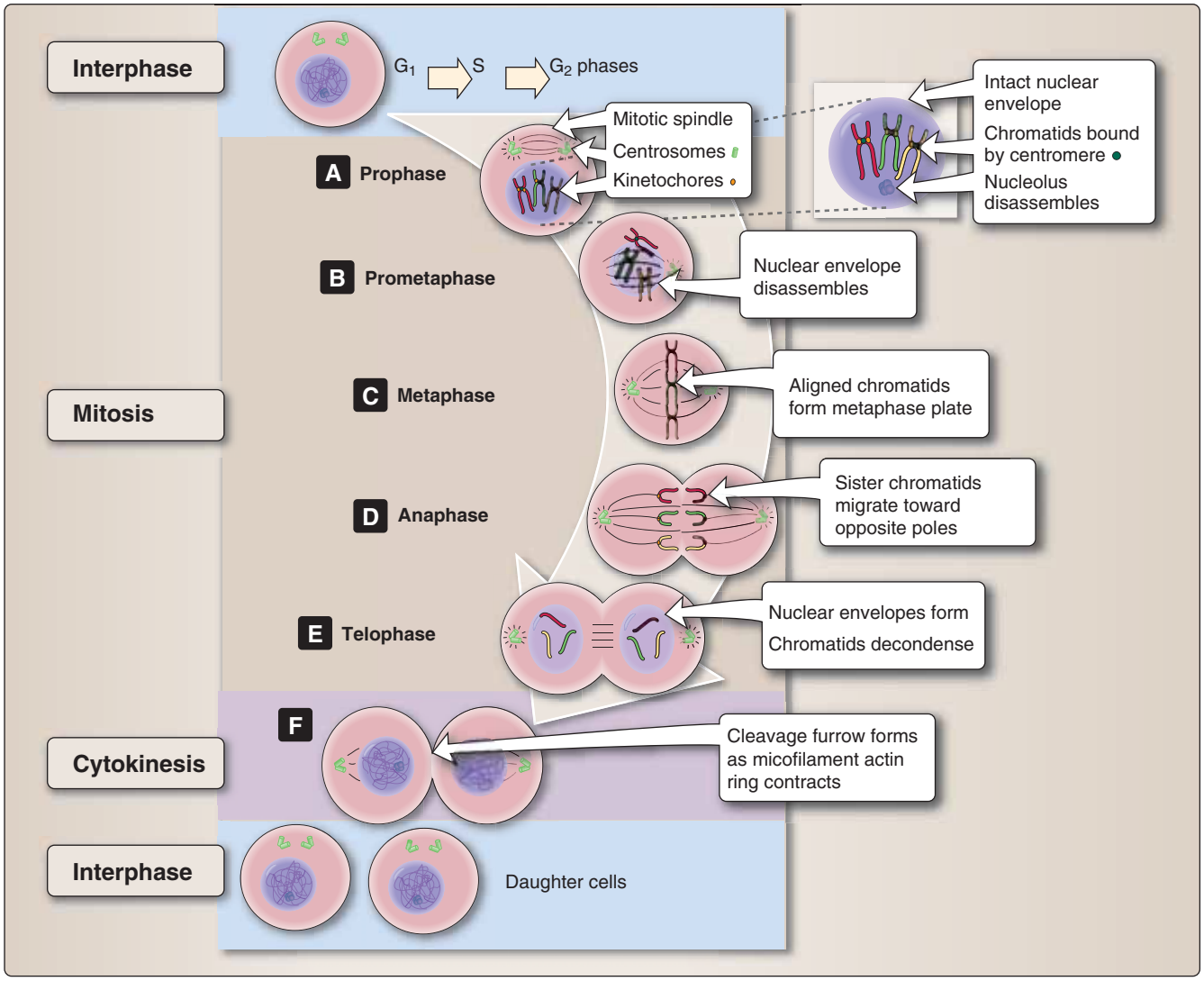


Figure 20.7
Mitosis. For illustrative purposes, three chromosomes have been drawn.

D. Anaphase

In anaphase, the mitotic poles are pushed further apart as a result of polar microtubules elongating (Figure 20.7D). Each centromere splits in two and paired kinetochores also separate. Sister chromatids migrate toward the opposite poles of the spindle.

E. Telophase

The last phase of nuclear division, telophase, is characterized by kinetochore microtubule disassembly and mitotic spindle dissociation (Figure 20.7E). Nuclear envelopes form around each of the two nuclei containing the chromatids. The chromatids decondense into dispersed chromatin and nucleoli reform in the daughter nuclei.

Hayflick's limit

Early in the 20th century, researchers observed that cancerous tumors arising in rodents could be serially transplanted indefinitely. By **midcentury**, cancer cells were shown to be immortal in tissue culture. In the 1960s, Dr Leonard Hayflick made the startling observation that normal noncancerous cells have a limited replicative capacity and are mortal. Hayflick discovered that human umbilical cord fibroblasts stopped dividing after about 50 divisions in culture—a phenomenon that has come to be known as Hayflick's limit. Fibroblasts cultured from adults were able to divide far fewer times. Replicative capacity depends upon the number of cell divisions and not on the age of the cells.

Contributing to Hayflick's limit is the irreversible shortening of telomeres (a hexameric DNA repeat sequence, TTAGGG, at the end of each human chromosome) each time a cell divides. Although telomerase, a complex of RNA and protein, helps maintain and repair telomeres by adding telomeric repeats, telomeric material is eventually lost, contributing to cellular senescence or aging. Telomeres normally help move chromosomes to opposite poles within the cell during telophase. When telomeres become too short, chromosomes can no longer segregate, and the cell can no longer divide.

Some tissues require continuous cell replacement, such as skin and gut epithelia and erythrocytes. These cells derive from progenitor stem cells that do not exhibit Hayflick's limit. Other cells that are subject to Hayflick's limit rarely divide, such as cells of the endocrine system, or not at all, such as neurons, during adult life.

IV. CYTOKINESIS—COMPLETION OF A CELL CYCLE

In order to create two distinct, separate daughter cells, cytoplasmic division follows nuclear division. An actin microfilament ring forms to create the machinery needed. Contraction of this actin-based structure results in the formation of a **cleavage furrow** that is seen beginning in anaphase (Figure 20.7F). The furrow deepens until opposing edges meet. Plasma membranes fuse on each side of the deep cleavage furrow and the result is the formation of two separate daughter cells, each identical to the other and to the original parent cell.

Aurora kinases

First discovered in the eggs of African clawed toad *Xenopus laevis*, aurora kinases, a family of serine/threonine kinases, play important functional roles during mitosis, specifically by controlling chromatid segregation. Three members of the aurora kinase family have been discovered in mammalian cells. Aurora A functions in prophase and is critical for proper formation of the mitotic spindle and for recruitment of proteins to stabilize centrosomal microtubules. Without Aurora A, the centrosome

does not accumulate sufficient γ-tubulin for anaphase and the centrosome never fully matures. Aurora A is also necessary for proper separation of centrosomes after the spindle has been formed. Aurora B functions in the attachment of the mitotic spindle to the centromere and also in cytokinesis for cleavage furrow formation. Aurora C is expressed in germ line cells, although its function remains to be elucidated. Elevated expression of all three members of the aurora kinase family has been observed in many human tumors. Inhibitors of aurora kinases are being assessed as anticancer therapies.

V. ASSESSMENT OF THE CELL CYCLE

Both the assessment of cell proliferation and the cell cycle are clinically important for the evaluation of disease progression. Equally important to both cell biology and drug-discovery research are methods used to evaluate cell proliferation and the role of agents that promote or retard the cell cycle. Although there are a number of tools and methods to assess proliferation, they can basically be divided into those used to analyze cell proliferation and those used to assess the cell cycle.

A. Assessment of cell proliferation

The proliferation of cells may be assessed either by measuring the synthesis of new (nascent) DNA or by the serial, halving dilution of labeled cytoplasmic proteins as the cell divides.

1. **DNA synthesis:** It may be assessed using modified analogs of thymidine, one of the nucleoside building blocks of DNA. In one experimental approach, radioactive tritiated (^{3}H) thymidine is added into tissue culture medium in which cells are grown. Because thymidine is exclusively used for DNA synthesis, cells that are actively synthesizing DNA will incorporate ^{3}H-thymidine and the accumulated radioactivity can be measured (Figure 20.8). A nonradioactive method to assess nascent DNA synthesis is to incubate the cells with the bromodeoxyuridine (BrDu) analog of thymidine. After the incubation period, cellular DNA is denatured by heat or acid and a labeled anti-BrDu monoclonal antibody is used as a probe to measure newly synthesized DNA.

2. **Dilution of a cytoplasmic probe:** It may also be used to assess cell proliferation. Cells are labeled with the succinimidyl ester of carboxyfluorescein diacetate (CFSE). The diacetate residues of CFSE allow it to readily diffuse across plasma membranes and into the cytoplasm. There, intracellular esterases cleave the acetate groups making the compound both fluorescent and membrane impermeant, thus trapping CFSE within the cell. The succinimidyl ester groups of CFSE readily and irreversibly bind to available amines (usually on lysine) on intracellular cytoplasmic and membrane proteins. As cells divide, their fluorescently labeled cytoplasmic proteins are divided equally between the two daughter cells. Each daughter cell has half the fluorescence of the previous generation, which can be measured by flow cytometry (Figure 20.9).

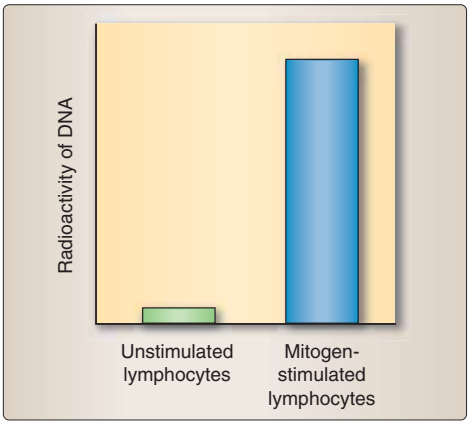


Figure 20.8
Cell proliferation assessed by ^{3}H-thymidine incorporation by stimulated lymphocytes.

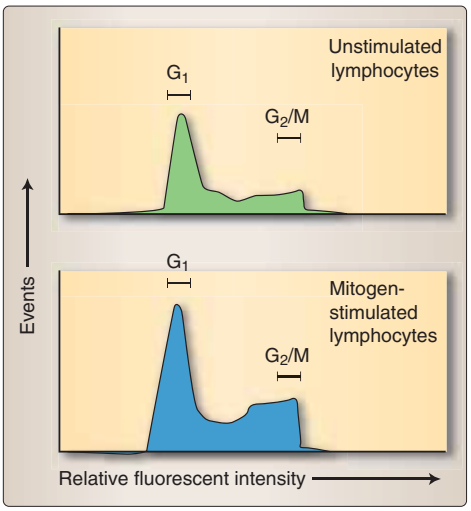


Figure 20.9
Cell proliferation by stimulated lymphocytes assessed by CFSE.

B. Cell cycle analysis

The amount of DNA contained within a cell is cell cycle dependent and ranges between 1*n* in G_1 phase and 2*n* in G_2 and M phases. Cell cycle distribution within a cell population can be assessed by flow cytometry and is a clinically important tool both in evaluating treatment therapies in lymphomas and leukemias and as a research tool in evaluating oncogene and tumor suppressor gene mechanisms. Briefly, any one of a wide variety of nucleic acid–binding fluorescent dyes may be used to label DNA. Fluorescence is proportional to the DNA content of the cell. Analysis of a flow cytometry histogram shows the proportion of cells within the population in G_1, S, and G_2 phases of the cell cycle (Figure 20.9).

Chapter Summary

- New cells to account for growth or to replace cells lost by injury or disease are produced from existing somatic cells by cell division.
- The sequence of duplication and division is known as the cell cycle.
- The cell cycle is divided into three stages: interphase, mitosis, and cytokinesis.
- All cells, including those cycling actively, spend the majority of their time in interphase, which is composed of G_1, S, and G_2 phases.
- Interphase is an eventful phase that includes cellular growth, protein and RNA synthesis in G_1 phase, DNA synthesis in S phase, and preparation for mitosis during G_2 phase.
- In mitosis, nuclear division follows interphase and culminates in two separate nuclei identical to each other and to the nucleus of the parent cell that was copied.
- Phases within mitosis include prophase, prometaphase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase.
- Cytokinesis, or cytoplasmic division, occurs after mitosis and results in two distinct, separate daughter cells identical to each other and to the parent cell.

Study Questions

21.1 A bone marrow stem cell is in interphase of the cell cycle. Which of the following may be observed in this cell?

A. Breakdown of the nucleolus
B. Disassembly of the nuclear envelope
C. Migration of sister chromatids toward opposite poles
D. Separation of paired kinetochores
E. Synthesis of nuclear DNA

20.1: Correct answer = E. Synthesis of nuclear DNA occurs during S phase, one of the three phases that constitutes interphase. G_1 and G_2 are the other phases of interphase. Breakdown of the nucleolus occurs in prophase of mitosis. Disassembly of the nuclear envelope occurs in prometaphase of mitosis. Both migration of sister chromatids toward opposite poles and separation of paired kinetochores occur in anaphase of mitosis.

20.2 A hepatocyte that is actively participating in the cell cycle is observed to increase in size and to duplicate its organelles during a particular phase. In which phase does this hepatocyte presently reside?

A. G_1 phase
B. G_2 phase
C. Prophase
D. S phase
E. Telophase

20.2: Correct answer = A. G1 phase is characterized by increases in cellular size and duplication of organelles, prior to replication of nuclear DNA in S phase. G2 phase is a safety gap prior to nuclear division of mitosis. Prophase and telophase are both phases of mitosis.

20.3 A mitotic cell is described as residing in telophase. Which of the following may be observed in this cell?

A. Chromosome alignment at the equator
B. Cleavage furrow formation
C. Mitotic spindle dissociation
D. RNA and protein synthesis
E. Unwinding of the chromatin

20.3: Correct answer = C. Mitotic spindle dissociation and kinetochore microtubule disassembly characterize telophase. Chromosome alignment at the equator occurs in metaphase of mitosis. Cleavage furrow formation occurs during cytokinesis, which happens after the completion of mitosis. RNA synthesis and protein synthesis are seen in cells in G_1 phase of interphase, while unwinding of chromatin occurs in S phase of interphase.

20.4 An actively cycling lymphocyte is observed to have a separation of its paired kinetochores and a migration of its sister chromatids toward opposite poles of the spindle. This mitotic lymphocyte presently resides in

A. Anaphase
B. Metaphase
C. Prometaphase
D. Prophase
E. Telophase

20.4: Correct answer = A. Anaphase is characterized by splitting in two of the centromeres and separation of paired kinetochores along with the migration of sister chromatids to opposite poles of the spindle.

20.5 A cell that is stimulated to divide lacks Aurora A. This cell will be unable to complete

A. Anaphase
B. G_1 phase
C. Metaphase
D. Prometaphase
E. S phase

20.5: Correct answer = A. Without Aurora A, the centrosome does not accumulate sufficient γ-tubulin for anaphase and the centrosome never fully matures. Phases of mitosis that occur prior to anaphase (prophase, prometaphase, and metaphase) as well as phases within interphase (G_1, S, and G_2) can occur normally without Aurora A.

Regulation of the Cell Cycle

21

I. OVERVIEW

Numerous checks and balances ensure that the cell cycle is highly regulated, establishing a state of balance or **homeostasis** between cell proliferation, cell differentiation, and cell death. Certain cell types retain the ability to divide throughout their life spans. Others permanently leave the active phases of the cell cycle ($G_1 \rightarrow S \rightarrow G_2$) after their differentiation. Yet, other cells exit and then reenter the cell cycle. Cells receive developmental and environmental cues and respond in accord with their own cell type and function. Cells that temporarily or reversibly stop dividing are viewed as in a state of **quiescence** called **G_0 phase** (Chapter 20) (Figure 21.1). Cells that permanently stop dividing, either **due to age or due to accumulated DNA damage**, are **senescent**. For example, neurons are postmitotic and will not reenter the active phases of the cell cycle. Intestinal epithelial cells and bone marrow hematopoietic cells, on the other hand, undergo continuous, rapid cell turnover in the course of their normal function and must be continuously replaced. Liver hepatocytes, although they do not continuously traverse the cell cycle, retain the ability to do so if needed. The ability of hepatocytes to reenter the active cell cycle accounts for liver regrowth following injury or disease; this property has been successfully exploited in live-donor liver transplantation. In this procedure, a portion of the liver from a donor is given to a patient in need of a liver transplant. Within several weeks after surgery, liver tissue doubles in size in both the donor and the recipient.

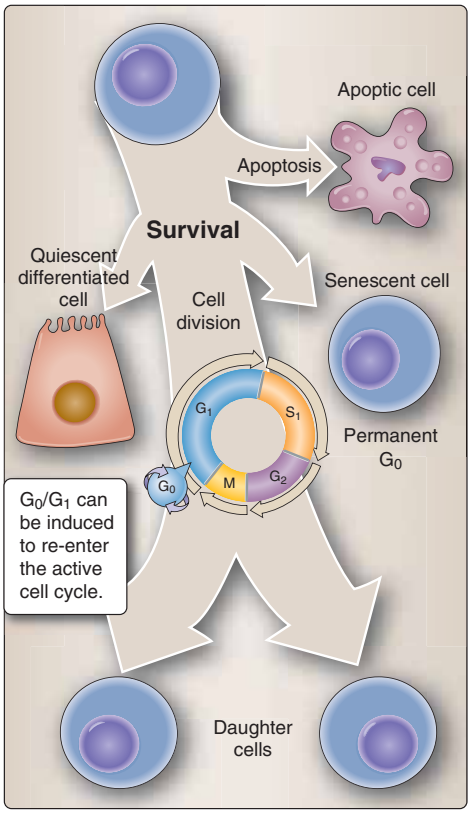


Figure 21.1
Tissue homeostasis requires a balance between differentiation, cell growth, and cell death.

Replicative senescence and the aging process

Normal human somatic cells (cells forming the body and not the germ line cells) are capable of only a finite number of cell divisions. After this number of divisions, they enter a nondividing but viable state termed replicative senescence. While this phenomenon is important for limiting tumor development, it is also possible that progressive functional abnormalities seen in some tissues are due to the loss of this regenerative capacity of cells. Senescence-associated biochemical changes may also impact aging. Telomere erosion, a consequence of cell division, is considered to be the main cause of the onset of replicative senescence (Chapter 7).

II. CELL CYCLE REGULATORS

Cell cycle regulators control cell cycle progression. The patterns of expression of these proteins and enzymes depend upon the cell cycle phase. Cell cycle mediators are categorized as **cyclins** or as **cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs).** Complexes of certain cyclins with specific CDKs **(cyclin-CDKs)** possess enzymatic (kinase) activity. Whenever necessary, **cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors** (CKI) can be recruited to inhibit cyclin-CDK complexes (Figure 21.2).

A. Cyclins

The cyclins, categorized as cyclins D, E, A, or B, are a family of cell cycle regulatory proteins. Different cyclins are expressed to regulate specific phases of the cell cycle. Cyclin concentrations rise and fall throughout the cell cycle due to its synthesis and degradation (via the proteosomal pathway, Chapter 12) (Figure 21.3).

Several categories of cyclins are known. D-type cyclins (cyclins D1, (Figure 21.3) D2, and D3) are G_1 regulators critical for progression through the **restriction point,** the point beyond which a cell irrevocably proceeds through the remainder of the cell cycle. S phase cyclins include type E cyclins and cyclin A (Table 21.1). Mitotic cyclins include cyclins B and A.

B. Cyclin-dependent kinases

Although CDKs are present in constant amounts during the cell cycle, their enzyme activities fluctuate depending upon available concentrations of cyclins required for their activation (Figure 21.3). Certain cyclins form complexes with certain CDKs to stimulate the kinase activity of the CDK. The CDK itself becomes phosphorylated. Then, the active **cyclin-CDK complex** catalyzes the phosphorylation of substrate proteins on serine and threonine amino acid residues. Phosphorylation changes the activation status of substrate proteins. Such alteration of regulatory proteins allows for initiation of the next phase of the cell cycle. Active CDK2 is responsible for activating target proteins involved in S phase transition (movement from G_1 to S) and for initiation of DNA synthesis. CDK1 targets activated proteins critical for the initiation of mitosis.

Table 21.1
CELL CYCLE FUNCTION OF CYCLINS AND CDKs

Cyclin	Kinase	Function
D	CDK4 CDK6	Progression past the restriction point at the G_1/S boundary
E, A	CDK2	Initiation of DNA synthesis in early S phase
B	CDK1	Transition from G2 to M

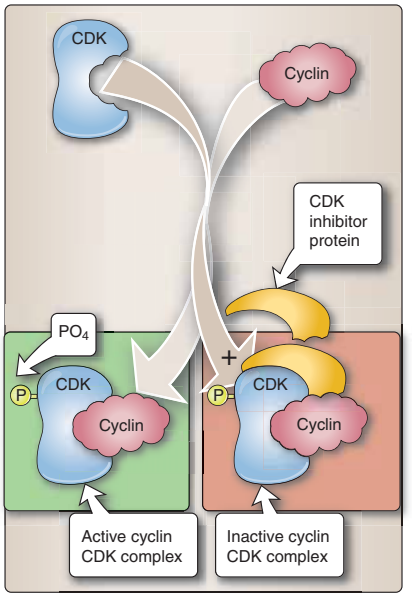


Figure 21.2
Cell cycle mediators and their formation of complexes.

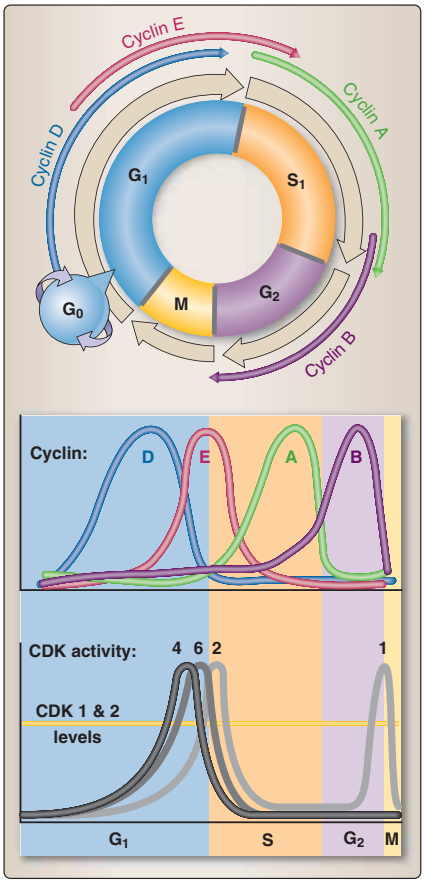


Figure 21.3
Cell cycle–specific expression of cyclins and activation of CDKs.

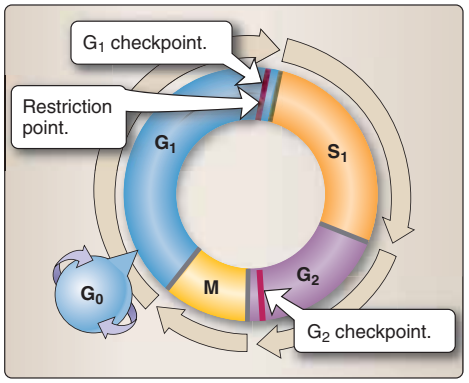


Figure 21.4
Progression through the cell cycle requires cyclin activation of specific CDKs.

III. CHECKPOINT REGULATION

Checkpoints placed at critical points in the cell cycle monitor the completion of critical events and, if necessary, delay the progression to the next stage of the cell cycle (Figure 21.4). One such checkpoint is the **restriction point** in G_1. The cell depends on external stimuli from growth factors to progress through the cell cycle prior to the restriction point. After that, the cell continues through the cell cycle without the need for further stimulation.

A. Tumor suppressors and checkpoints

Tumor suppressor proteins normally function to halt the cell cycle progression within G_1 when the cell should not continue past the restriction point. Sometimes it is desirable for a cell to remain in G_1 (or enter G_0) when continued growth is not needed or undesirable or when DNA is damaged. Mutated versions of tumor suppressor genes may encode proteins that permit cell cycle progression at inappropriate times. Cancer cells often show mutations of tumor suppressor genes.

1. **G_1 checkpoint:** It is important that nuclear synthesis of DNA not begin until all the appropriate cellular growth has occurred during G_1. Therefore, there are key regulators that ensure that G_1 is completed prior to the start of S phase.

2. **Retinoblastoma (RB) protein:** This tumor suppressor functions to halt a cell in the resting or G_1 phase of the cell cycle. The RB gene is mutated in an inherited eye malignancy known as hereditary RB. The mutant gene encodes an RB protein unable to halt the cell cycle in G_1 allowing unregulated progression through the remainder of the cell cycle.

   In **resting cells,** the RB protein contains few phosphorylated amino acid residues. In this state, RB prevents entry into S phase by binding to transcription factor E2F and its binding partner DP1/2 which are critical for the G_1/S transition (Figure 21.5). Therefore, RB normally prevents progression out of early G_1 and into S phase in a resting cell.

   In **actively cycling cells**, RB is progressively hyperphosphorylated as a consequence of growth factor stimulation and signaling via the MAP kinase cascade (Chapter 18). Subsequently, cyclin D-CDK4/6 complexes are activated and they phosphorylate RB. Further phosphorylation of RB by cyclin E-CDK2 allows the cell to move out of G_1. Hyperphosphorylated RB can no longer inhibit transcription factor E2F binding to DNA. Therefore, E2F is able to bind to DNA and activate genes whose products are important for S phase. Examples of E2F-regulated genes include thymidine kinase and DNA polymerase, both of which are involved in the synthesis of DNA.

3. **p53:** This tumor suppressor protein plays a major regulatory role in G_1. Nuclear DNA damage results in phosphorylation, stabilization, and activation of p53. Activated p53 stimulates **CKI** (see Figure 21.2) transcription to produce a protein named **p21**, to halt

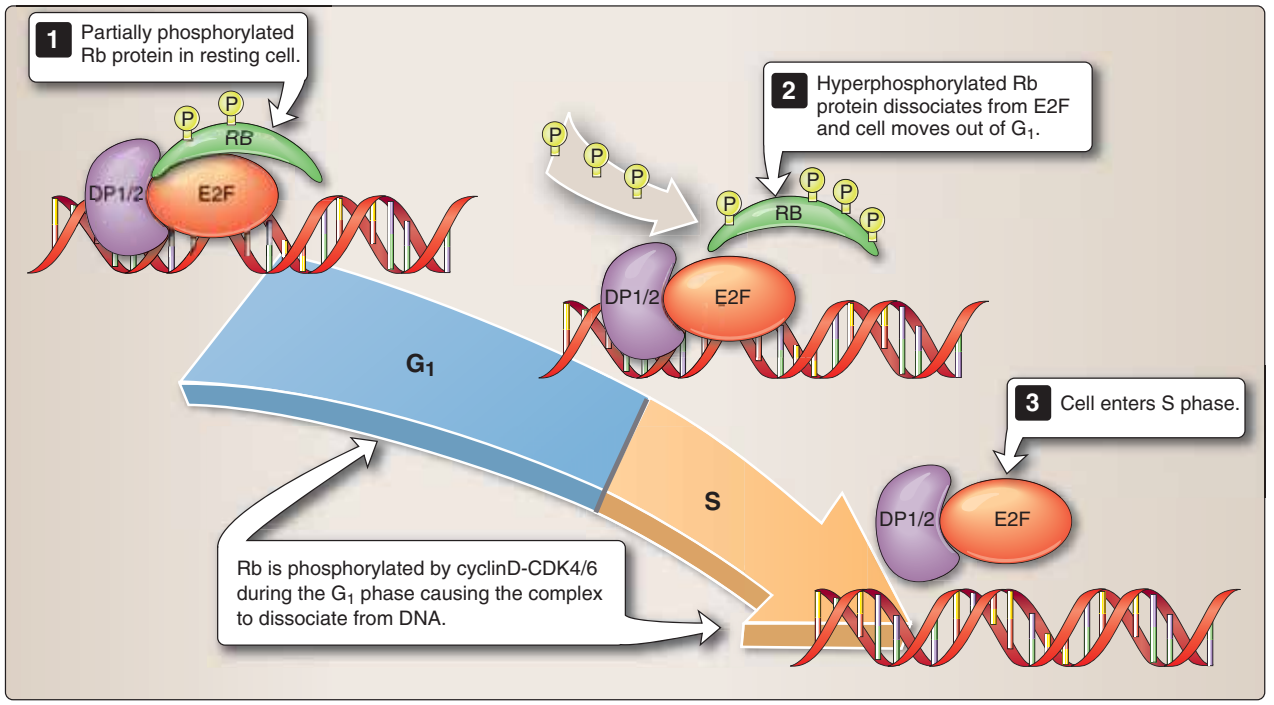


Figure 21.5
RB activation of transcription of S phase genes.

cell cycle progression to allow for DNA repair. If the damage is irreparable, p53 triggers apoptosis (Chapter 23). Unregulated cell cycle progression can occur in the presence of mutated versions of p53 because it is incapable of inducing the steps that would normally arrest the cell cycle. Over 50% of all human cancers show p53 mutations (Figure 21.6).

4. **Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors:** In addition to p21 others are known. Two classes of these inhibitory proteins are recognized. **INK4A** family members inhibit D-type cyclins from associating with and activating CDK4 and CDK6. **CIP/KIP** family members are potent inhibitors of CDK2 kinases. p21 ($p21^{CIP1}$) is a member of the CIP/KIP family.

Human papillomavirus, cervical cancer, and tumor suppressors

Human papillomavirus strains 16 and 18 are established etiological agents of cervical cancer. In cervical cells infected with these viral strains, viral protein E6 binds to p53 and viral protein E7 binds to RB. As a result of viral protein binding, both RB and p53 are inactivated and unregulated cell cycle progression and malignancy may result.

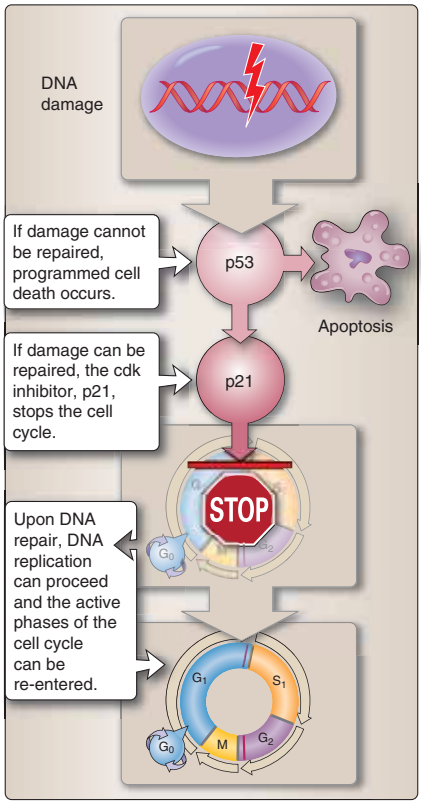


Figure 21.6
p53 control of cell fate following DNA damage.

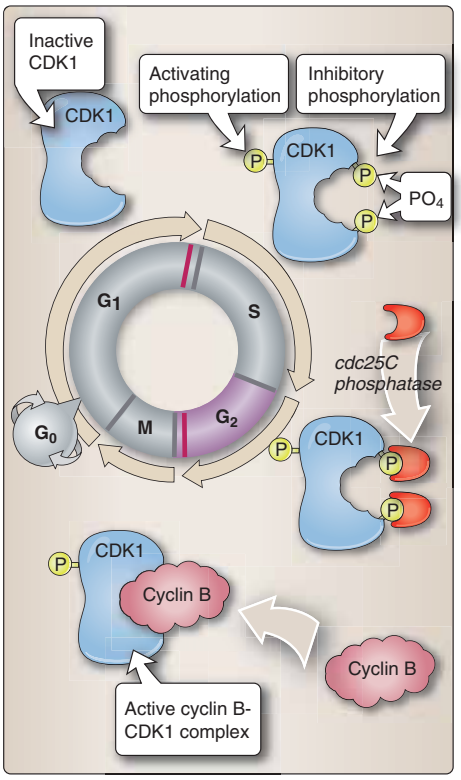


Figure 21.7
Progression from G_2 to M is controlled by cdc25C phosphatase and CDK1.

5. **G_2 checkpoint:** It is important for the integrity of the genome and of the cell that nuclear division **(mitosis)** does not begin before DNA is completely duplicated during S phase. Therefore, the G_2 checkpoint, which occurs after S and before the initiation of mitosis, is also a critical regulatory point within the cell cycle.

6. **CDK1 activity:** It controls the entry into mitosis. During G_1, S, and into G_2, CDK1 is phosphorylated on tyrosine residues, inhibiting its activity. Removal of inhibitory phosphorylations is required in order for CDK1 to bind to cyclin B and to stimulate progression through the remainder of the cell cycle.

7. **cdc25C phosphatase:** It catalyzes the removal of inhibitory phosphorylations from CDK1 (Figure 21.7). Following dephosphorylation, CDK1 can bind to cyclin B and the activated CDK1-cyclin B complex moves into the nucleus. Within the nucleus, the CDK1-cyclin B complex activates mitosis by phosphorylating key components of subcellular structures (e.g., microtubules). If the cell cycle must be suspended prior to chromosome segregation in mitosis, then cdc25C can be inactivated through actions of tumor suppressors **ATM** and **ATR** (see below).

B. DNA damage and cell cycle checkpoints

The usual response to DNA damage is to halt the cell cycle in G_1 until DNA repair (Chapter 8) can be accomplished. However, depending on the type of DNA damage, different cell cycle regulatory systems may be utilized. As previously described, the tumor suppressor p53 responds to DNA damage. Additional tumor suppressor proteins play a role in the control of checkpoints in cases of DNA damage.

1. **Types of DNA damage:** DNA damage within cells may be caused in a variety of ways including replication errors, chemical exposure, oxidative insults, and cellular metabolism.

2. **DNA damage–induced responses:** Tumor suppressors **ATM** (ataxia telangiectasia, mutated) and **ATR** (ATM and Rad3 related) respond to distinct types of DNA damage (Figure 21.8). ATM is the primary mediator of the response to double-strand DNA breaks, a type of damage induced by ionizing radiation. ATR plays a role in mediating UV-induced DNA damage, but it has a secondary role in the response to double-strand DNA breaks.

3. **Response by S phase cells:** The S phase checkpoint monitors cell cycle progression and slows the rate of DNA synthesis should DNA damage occur to an S phase cell. **BRCA1**, the protein product of the breast cancer susceptibility gene 1, plays a role in the repair of double-strand DNA breaks as part of a large complex. The mechanistic details and other proteins involved remain to be elucidated.

IV. ANTICANCER DRUGS AND THE CELL CYCLE

Both normal and tumor cells utilize the same cell cycle. Normal and **neoplastic** (cancerous) tissue may differ in the total number of cells in active phases of the cell cycle. Some chemotherapeutic agents are

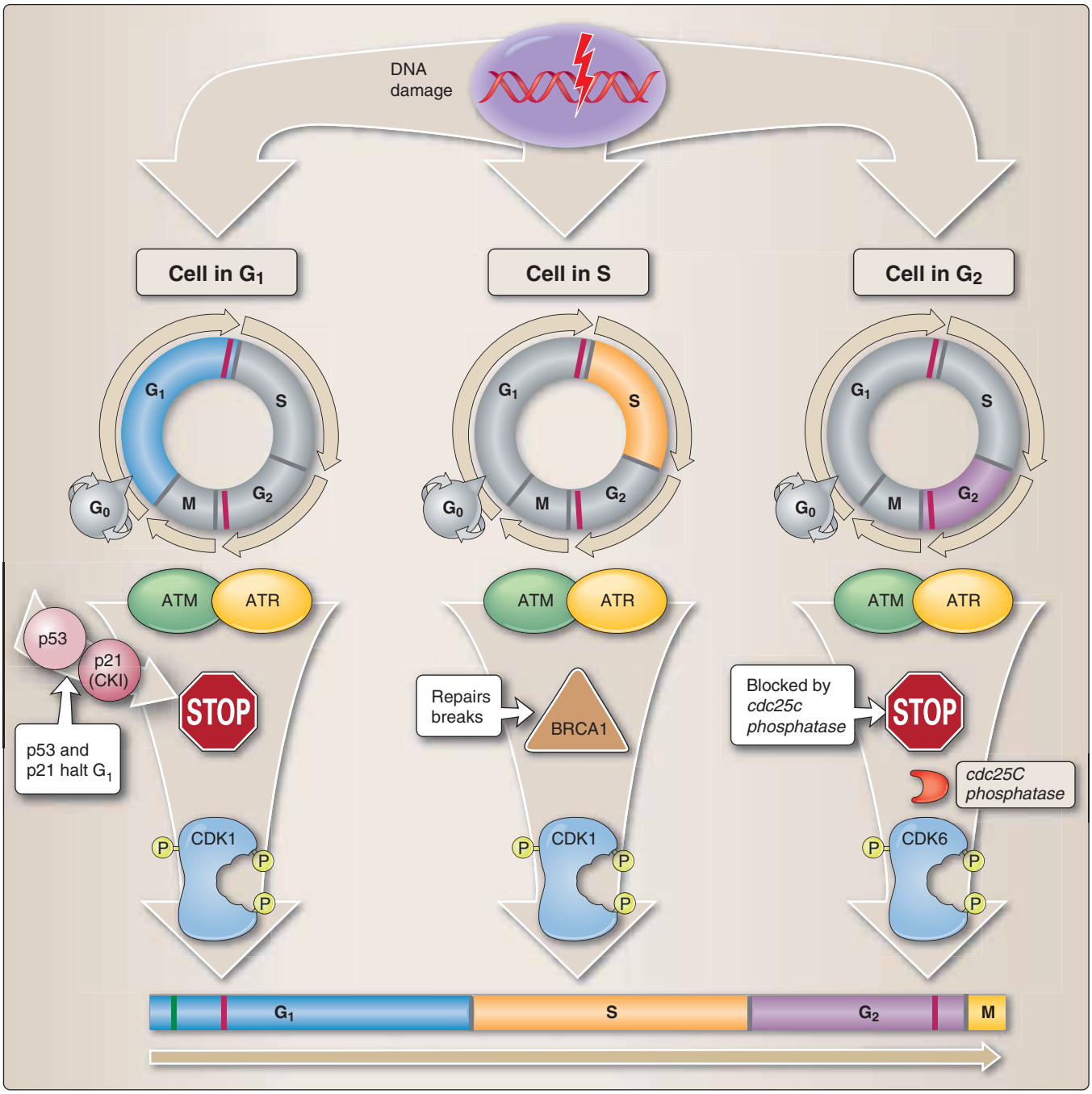


Figure 21.8
ATM/ATR in G_1 and G_2 checkpoint regulation.

effective only in actively cycling cells (Figure 21.9). These therapies are considered to be cell cycle–specific agents and are generally used for tumors with a high percentage of dividing cells. Normal, actively cycling cells are also damaged by such therapies. When tumors have a low percentage of dividing cells, then cell cycle–nonspecific agents can be used therapeutically.

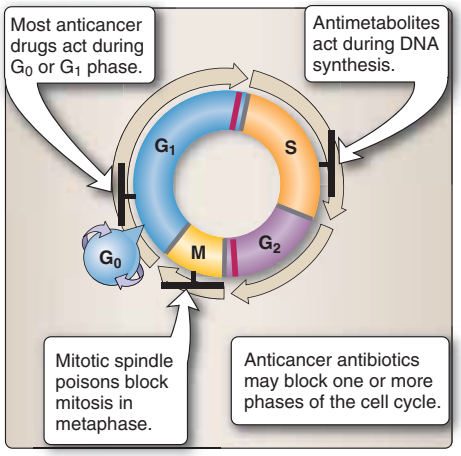


Figure 21.9
Anticancer drugs and the cell cycle.

A. Antimetabolites

Compounds structurally related to normal cellular components are called antimetabolites. They exert their toxic effects on cells in the S phase of the cell cycle. Their mechanism of action involves inhibition of synthesis of purine or pyrimidine nucleotide precursors. They can also compete with nucleotides in DNA and RNA synthesis (Chapters 7 and 9 and *LIR Biochemistry*). Examples of drugs in this category are methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil.

B. Anticancer antibiotics

Some members of this category cause cells to accumulate in the G_2 phase of the cell cycle. Bleomycin is an example of an anticancer antibiotic that results in the accumulation of cells in the G_2 phase. Other anticancer antibiotics are not specific to any particular cell cycle phase but do impact actively cycling cells more than resting cells. Their mechanism of action involves interacting with DNA and disrupting DNA function. Some alkylating agents and nitrosoureas are cell cycle–nonspecific drugs. These agents are often used to treat solid tumors with low growth fractions.

C. Mitotic spindle poisons

These drugs inhibit M phase cells, specifically during metaphase (Chapter 20). Their mechanism of action involves binding to tubulin (Chapter 4) and disrupting the spindle apparatus of the microtubules required for chromosome segregation. Such therapies are often used to treat high growth fraction cancers such as leukemias. Vincristine and vinblastine (the Vinca alkaloids), as well as Taxol, are examples of mitotic spindle poisons. Taxol is used in combination with other chemotherapy drugs to treat certain cancers, including metastatic breast cancer, ovarian cancer, and testicular cancer.

Chapter Summary

- Cyclins and CDKs control cell cycle progression.
- Specific cyclins are made and degraded during specific points in the cell cycle.
- CDKs are enzymatically active during a narrow window of the cell cycle and are important for driving the cell cycle forward.
- Cells are stimulated to enter the cell cycle by the action of growth factors which directly activate a specific cyclin belonging to the cyclin D family of G_1 cyclins.
- Tumor suppressor proteins inhibit the cell cycle.
- Checkpoint regulation is a safety measure to prevent accumulated DNA damage.
- RB protein controls movement into the S phase by inhibiting S phase–specific transcription factors.
- RB protein is active in its underphosphorylated form and inactive in its hyperphosphorylated form.

- p53 guards the genome from damage. In the event of DNA damage, p53 can induce the synthesis of a CKI.
- CDK1 controls the G_2M transition and is activated by the phosphatase action of cdc25C.
- ATM and ATR are kinases that sense and respond to specific types of DNA damage.
- External and internal factors contribute to different types of DNA damage.
- Anticancer drugs may have cell cycle–specific or cell cycle–nonspecific actions.
- Antimetabolites inhibit S phase cells, while anticancer antibiotics may cause accumulation of G_2 phase cells or act without regard to cell cycle phase. Mitotic spindle poisons disrupt spindle formation and affect cells in mitosis.

Study Questions

21.1 Which of the following types of cells are postmitotic and permanently in G_0?

A. Embryonic stem cells
B. Hematopoietic cells
C. Hepatocytes
D. Intestinal epithelial cells
E. Neurons

21.2 In a cell with only mutant versions of RB, which of the following actions will be inhibited?

A. Activation of DNA synthesis
B. Arrest of the cell cycle in G_1
C. Binding of cyclins to CDKs
D. Completion of nuclear division during mitosis
E. Removal of inhibitory phosphorylations from CDKs

21.3 If a normal, actively cycling cell receives damage to its DNA while it is in G_1 phase, which of the following will function to arrest the cell cycle?

A. cdc25C phosphatase
B. Cyclin D
C. CDK2
D. E2F
E. $p21^{CIP1}$

21.1: Correct answer = E. Neurons that have completed mitosis do not reenter the cell cycle. Embryonic stem cells (Chapter 1) have an enormous capacity for division and differentiation. Hematopoietic cells, which arise in bone marrow, continue to divide in order to replace lost blood cells and/or to create cells necessary for an immune response. Hepatocytes, functional cells in the liver, retain the ability to divide, allowing the liver to have a great capacity for regeneration. Intestinal epithelial cells divide quickly as they must be able to be replaced following injury that occurs as a normal consequence of their function and location.

21.2: Correct answer = B. Arrest of the cell cycle in G_1. Mutant RB does not halt the cell cycle in G_1. Instead it will allow unregulated passage out of G1. Activation of DNA synthesis will occur. Cyclins will bind to CDKs during cell cycle progression and inhibitory phosphorylations will be removed (by cdc25C phosphatase) from CDK1, as is required for progression through G_2. RB has no role in mitosis.

21.3: Correct answer = E. $p21^{CIP1}$ is a CKI that is activated by p53. Its role is to halt cell cycle progression in order to allow for DNA repair to take place. cdc25C phosphatase dephosphorylates CDK1, which controls entry into mitosis. Cyclin D activates CDK4 or CDK6 to allow for progression through G1 to S. CDK2 is activated by cyclin E or A to initiate DNA synthesis in early S phase. E2F is a transcription factor critical for the G_1/S transition.

21.4 In a normal, cycling cell in S phase, which of the following proteins will be active?

A. BRCA1
B. CDK2
C. p21
D. p53
E. RB

21.5 Replication errors are detected in a normal cell that has just completed S phase. The usual cellular response to this DNA damage will include

A. Binding of cyclin D to CDK2.
B. Halting the cell cycle at the restriction point.
C. Inactivation of cdc25C phosphatase.
D. Inhibition of purine nucleotide biosynthesis.
E. RB binding to transcription factor E2F.

12.6 A biopsy of a liver mass found in a 79-year-old female reveals malignant cells that contain a mutant tumor suppressor protein. Which of the following proteins is most likely present in mutated form in this liver tumor?

A. CDK4
B. Cyclin B
C. Cyclin D1
D. $p21^{C1P1}$
E. p53

21.7 A 72-year-old male, recently diagnosed with bladder cancer, is undergoing chemotherapy treatment with methotrexate. Two weeks following his first treatment, the patient presents with weakness, hair loss, and oral ulcers. Which of the following best explains the mechanism underlying these signs and symptoms?

A. Actively cycling normal cells are destroyed by the drug.
B. Cell cycle–nonspecific effects of the drug damage normal cells.
C. Continued tumor growth causes damage to normal body cells.
D. Present signs and symptoms likely result from an undiagnosed pathology.
E. Tumor cell lysis results in damage to normal body cells.

21.4: Correct answer = B. Of the choices listed, only CDK2 is active during S phase. BRCA1, the breast cancer susceptibility gene, plays a role in the repair of double-strand DNA breaks and does not function in a normal, cycling cell. p21 is a CDK inhibitor induced by p53 in response to DNA damage. Normal RB halts cells in G1 when it is not appropriate for cells to continue through the remainder of the cell cycle.

21.5: Correct answer = C. Upon inactivation of cdc25C phosphatase, the cell described must halt the cell cycle in G_2. Control at the G_2 checkpoint involves inactivation of cdc25C phosphatase, preventing dephosphorylation of CDK1 and halting the cell cycle to allow for DNA repair. Binding of cyclin D to CDK2 allows for progression within G_1. The restriction point is within G_1, and this cell is in G_2. Inhibition of purine nucleotide biosynthesis is the action of some cell cycle–specific cancer chemotherapy drugs. RB binding to E2F prevents entry into S phase. This cell has completed S phase.

21.6: Correct answer = E. Over 50% of cancer cells have mutant p53 tumor suppressor genes. $p21^{CIP1}$ is the CKI induced by functional p53 to arrest the cell cycle in G_1. The other proteins, cyclins and CDKs, function to activate the cell cycle.

21.7: Correct answer = A. Normal cycling cells are destroyed by methotrexate, a cell cycle–specific antimetabolite that exerts its effects on S phase cells. This drug can damage any cell in the body that arrives at S phase. The patient's weakness most likely results from anemia owing to inhibition of production of red blood cells (erythrocytes). Methotrexate is not a cell cycle–nonspecific drug. Such drugs would not likely damage actively cycling cells to the extent seen in this patient. Continued tumor growth and tumor cell lysis may damage other body cells, but nearby cells may be most affected. In this patient's situation, the affected cell types causing the signs and symptoms are all actively cycling cells. While an undiagnosed pathology may exist, the most likely explanation for the signs and symptoms is that normal cycling cells have been damaged by the S phase–specific actions of methotrexate.

Abnormal Cell Growth

22

I. OVERVIEW

Cells are often lost through death (apoptosis and necrosis), sloughing (e.g., shedding of cells lining the gastrointestinal tract and skin), or injury (e.g., bleeding). New cells replace cells at the same rate they are lost, a highly regulated state of balance known as **homeostasis**. If normal cellular regulatory mechanisms malfunction, unregulated and unchecked cell division may result, a condition known as **cancer. Protooncogenes** regulate or produce proteins that regulate normal cell growth and development. Mutations that alter protooncogenes may convert them from regulatory genes into cancer-causing **oncogenes**. In addition, mutations that create a loss of function in genes known as tumor suppressor genes may also induce cancer.

Most genetic changes that occur during carcinogenesis (transformation of normal cells to cancer cells) are somatic mutations. Each time a cell divides, there is a chance of somatic mutation; therefore, there is always a low background risk for cancer. A far more prevalent cause of cancer is environmental exposure.

II. GENES AND CANCER

The regulation of cell cycle progression is controlled by protooncogenes, which promote cell cycle progression, and tumor suppressor genes, which function to control the rapid progression through the cell cycle.

A. Protooncogenes and oncogenes

Cell division is controlled by a number of cellular proteins. Because these proteins are the products of genes, genetic mutation may result in deregulated cellular proliferation. **Protooncogenes** are genes whose protein products control cell growth and differentiation. These genes undergo mutations causing qualitative and quantitative changes in gene products and are then called **oncogenes**. Our knowledge of protooncogenes stems from molecular genetic studies on the defective gene product.

1. **Protooncogenes:** Protooncogenes stimulate the cell cycle and have been identified at all levels of the various signal transduction cascades that control cell growth, proliferation, and differentiation. As normal regulatory elements, protooncogenes function in a wide variety of cellular pathways (Figure 22.1). Mutations can

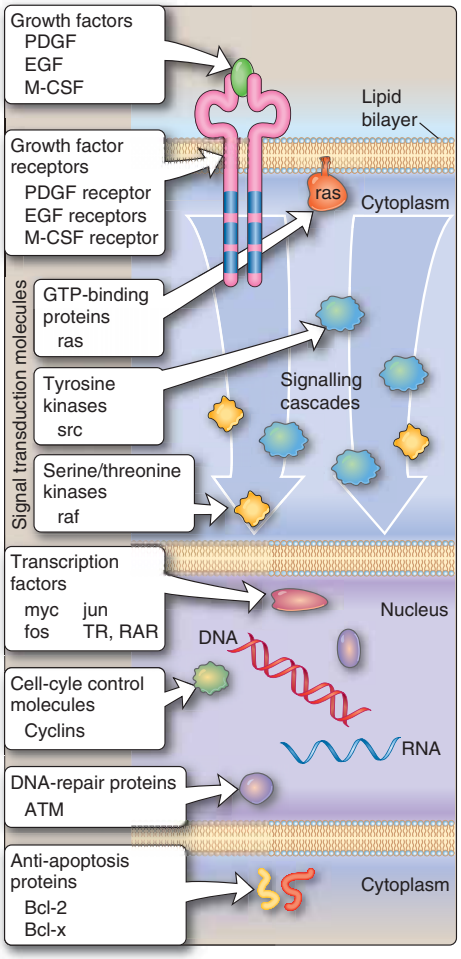


Figure 22.1
Protooncogenes and their roles in regulating growth.

occur in any of the steps involved in regulating cell growth and differentiation. When such mutations accumulate within a particular cell type, the progressive deregulation of growth eventually produces a cell whose progeny forms a tumor.

2. **Several ways of activating protooncogenes to oncogenes:** Point mutations, insertion mutations, gene amplification, chromosomal translocation (Chapter 8), and/or changes in expression of the oncoprotein can all result in deregulated activity of these genes (Figure 22.2).

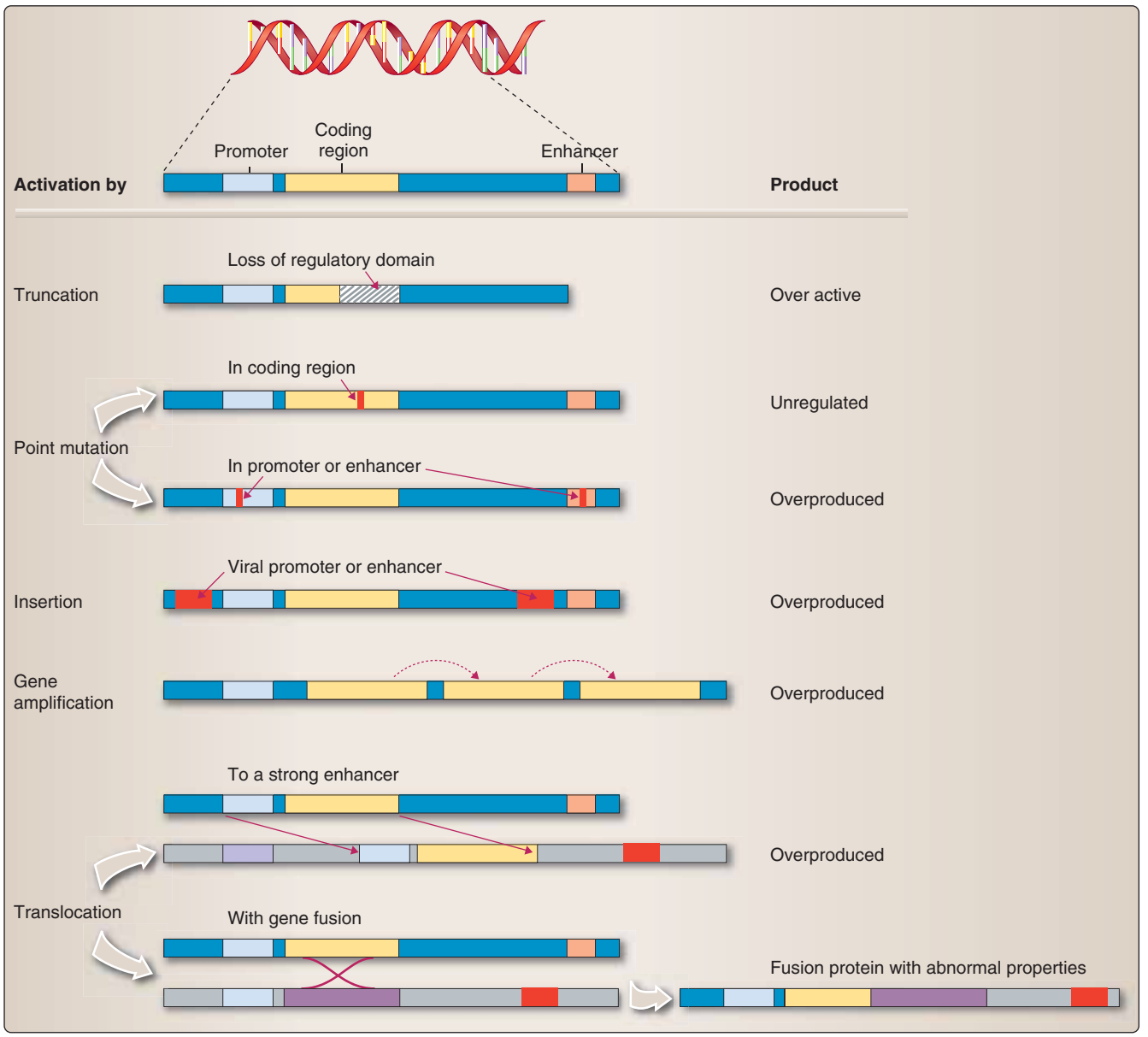


Figure 22.2
Mechanism of conversion of protooncogenes to oncogenes.

B. Tumor suppressor genes

Tumor suppressor genes are important for maintaining normal cell growth control by curtailing unregulated progression through the cell cycle. Situations that diminish tumor suppressor gene function may lead to neoplastic changes.

1. **Loss of function:** Loss of tumor suppressor genes predisposes cells to cancer. Protein products of protooncogenes are involved in growth stimulation; the protein products of tumor suppressor genes repress cell growth and division. Therefore, loss of gene function (through mutations and other alterations) can lead to cell transformation by removing the restraints that normally regulate cell growth.

2. **p53—guardian of the genome:** The most frequently inactivated tumor suppressor gene is the **p53 gene,** which encodes a protein with a 53 kilodalton molecular mass, or **p53,** which is most often implicated in cancer development. More than half of human cancers show p53 mutations (Chapter 21). Loss of p53 function can contribute to genomic instability within cells (Figure 22.3). p53 is important in preventing cancer because of its unique functional capabilities.
   p53
   - regulates gene expression and controls several key genes involved in growth regulation.
   - facilitates DNA repair. When DNA damage is encountered, p53 senses the damage and causes G_1 arrest of the cells, until the damage is repaired.
   - activates apoptosis of damaged cells. When damage to DNA within cells is beyond repair, p53 functions to trigger apoptosis in these cells.

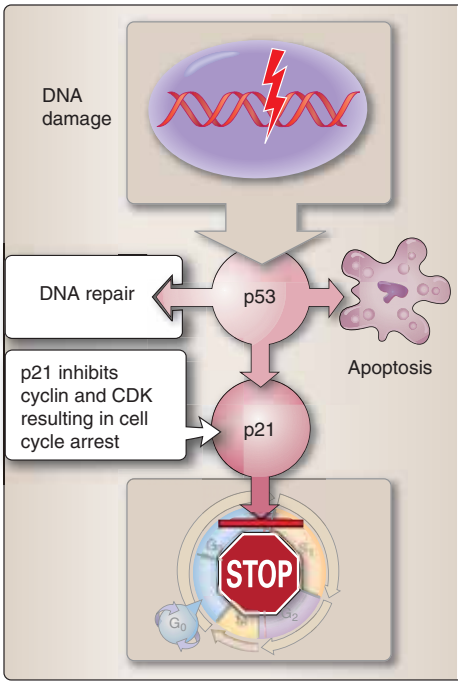


Figure 22.3
p53—guarding the genome.

Retinoblastoma

Retinoblastoma is an embryonic malignant neoplasm of retinal origin that occurs in germ line (40%) and sporadic (60%) forms. Germ line disease includes those patients with a family history (hereditary disease) and those patients who have sustained a new germ line mutation at the time of conception. The genetic locus responsible for a predisposition to retinoblastoma is located within the q14 band of chromosome 13. The retinoblastoma gene, RB, was cloned in 1987 and was the first tumor suppressor gene cloned. Patients with the germ line type of retinoblastoma have a markedly increased frequency of second malignant tumors—the most common being osteosarcomas.

C. Dominant and recessive nature of oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes

Some genetic mutations confer a growth advantage to the cell that contains it, allowing selective growth of these cells. Therefore, when protooncogenes undergo mutations, they are “activated” to oncogenes (Figure 22.4). Because these genes normally regulate growth,

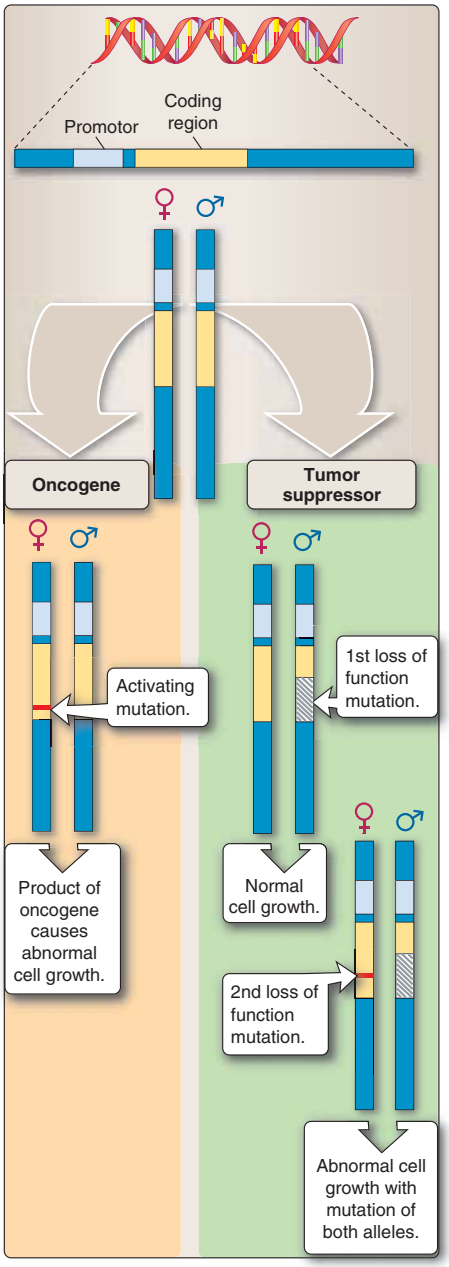


Figure 22.4
Oncogenes are dominant in action at the cell level and tumor suppressor genes are recessive.

mutations in them often favor the unregulated growth of cancer. Generally, tumor suppressor genes are "inactivated" by mutations and deletions, resulting in the loss of function of the protein and in unregulated cell growth. Both copies of the tumor suppressor genes have to be mutated or lost for loss of growth control; therefore, these genes act recessively at cell level. Oncogenes, on the other hand, are dominant in action requiring mutation of only one copy of a protooncogene (Figure 22.4).

MicroRNAs as oncogenes and tumor suppressors

As a class, **microRNAs (miRNAs)** regulate gene expression by controlling the levels of target RNA posttranscriptionally. They are encoded within the noncoding and intron regions of different genes and are transcribed into RNA, but not protein. These single-stranded RNA molecules are approximately 21 to 23 nucleotides in length and are processed from primary transcripts known as *pri-miRNA* into short stem-loop structures, *pre-miRNA*, and finally to functional miRNA. Mature miRNA molecules are partially complementary to one or more messenger RNA (mRNA) molecules and function to downregulate gene expression.

miRNAs are thought to affect the expression of critical proteins within the cell, such as cytokines, growth factors, transcription factors, etc. The expression profiles of miRNAs are frequently altered in tumors. When miRNA's targets are oncogenes, their loss of function results in increased target gene expression. Conversely, overexpression of certain miRNAs may decrease the levels of protein products of target tumor suppressor genes. Therefore, miRNAs behave as oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. New insights into miRNAs function may also advance the diagnosis and treatment of cancer.

III. MOLECULAR BASIS OF CANCER

Cancer is a stepwise process. Often, several genetic alterations must occur at specific sites before malignant transformation is seen in most adult cancers. Cancers of childhood appear to require fewer mutations before manifestation of overt cancer. Rare inherited mutations can predispose individuals to cancer at one or more sites. This type of mutation is present virtually in all somatic cells of the body.

A. Growth regulation

Normal cells respond to a complex set of biochemical signals, which allow them to develop, grow, differentiate, or die. Cancer results when any cell is freed from these types of restrictions and the resultant abnormal progeny of cells are allowed to proliferate.

B. Cancer genesis—a multistep process

Mutations in the key genes have to accumulate over time to create a progeny of cells that have lost most control over growth. Each individual mutation contributes in some way to eventually producing the malignant state. The accumulation of these mutations spans

several years and explains why cancers take a long time to develop in humans (Figure 22.5). Both exogenous (environmental insults) and endogenous processes (carcinogenic products generated by cellular reactions) may damage DNA. DNA damage that goes unrepaired may lead to mutations during mitosis. Increased errors during DNA replication or a decreased efficiency of DNA repair may favor increased frequency of genetic mutations. Cells become cancerous when mutations occur in protooncogenes and tumor suppressor genes.

C. Theories of cancer

It has been long known that cancer cells are genetically unstable. Only in the last two decades has it been realized that specific genes are responsible for this instability. Nearly 200 oncogenes and 170 tumor suppressor genes have been identified. Additional genes that aid in breaking down basement membranes of cells and allow for their movement are also known to be important in oncogenesis. Despite the large number of possible genetic permutations, certain combinations of these mutant genes were found in distinct cancers and also different types of cancer from the same tissue. From these observed patterns came several distinct theories of cancer formation.

1. **Clonal evolution model:** This model was proposed in the 1970s to explain how cancers evolve. According to this model, initial damage (a genetic mutation) occurs in a single cell, giving it a selective growth advantage and time to outnumber neighboring cells. Within this clonal population, a single cell may acquire a second mutation, providing an additional growth advantage and allowing it to expand and become the predominant cell type. Repeated cycles followed by clonal expansion eventually lead to a fully developed malignant tumor. Accumulated mutations within key genes trigger a single transformed cell to eventually develop into a malignant tumor (Figure 22.6).

Angiogenesis and tumor progression

As cancers progress, they accumulate in mass. To obtain the necessary nutrition and oxygen for their continued growth and survival, it is critical for tumors to have adequate blood supply. Cancer cells create new blood supply to sustain their growth by several mechanisms. Angiogenesis, or **neovascularization**, can be both activated and inhibited. Under normal physiologic conditions, angiogenic inhibitors predominate, blocking the growth of new blood vessels. When there is a need for new vasculature, activators increase in number and inhibitors decrease. Tumors release two proangiogenic factors, which are important for sustaining tumor growth: **vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)** and **basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF)**. Several angiogenesis inhibitors and antibodies to proangiogenic growth factors are currently in clinical trials to inhibit tumor progression. One mechanism for tumor neovascularization involves mutation of ***p53*** gene. Typically, wild type p53 regulates the expression of an angiogenesis inhibitor, **thrombospondin**. Mutations in p53 facilitate neovascularization due to the lack of production of thrombospondin.

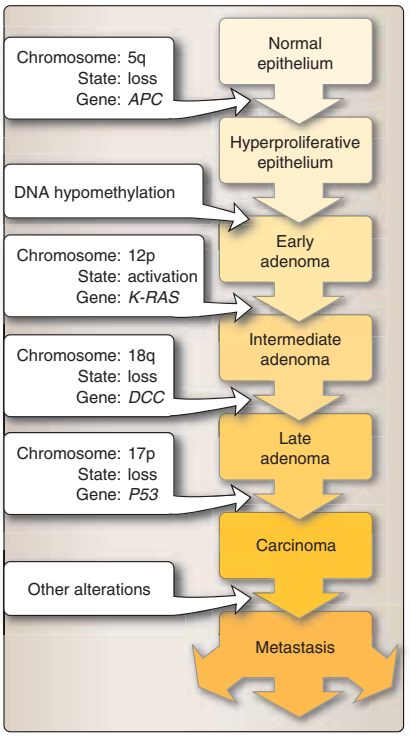


Figure 22.5
Colon cancer progression.

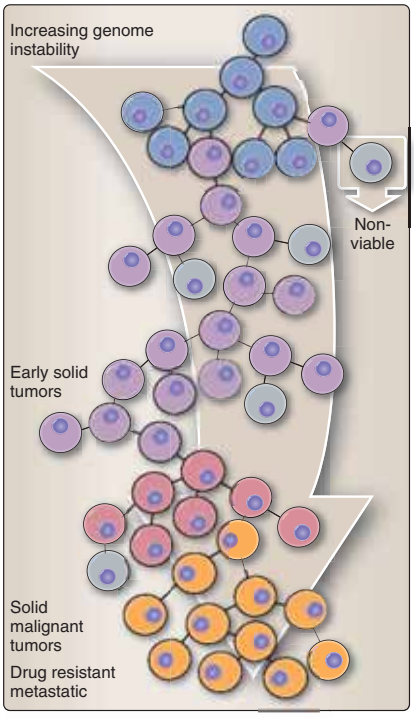


Figure 22.6
Theory of clonal evolution.

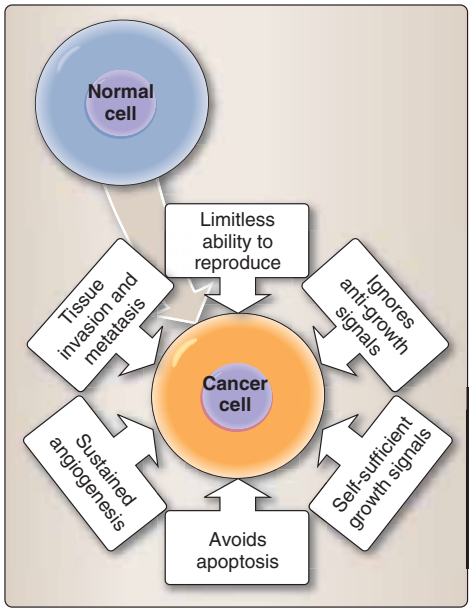


Figure 22.7
Hallmarks of cancer.

2. Hallmarks of cancer: The number of genes identified in cancers is constantly growing and the complexity of these observations has been recently streamlined into a series of genetic and cellular principles that may govern the formation of most, if not all, types of human cancers (Figure 22.7). According to this theory, oncogenesis requires cells to

- acquire self-sufficiency of growth signals
- become insensitive to growth inhibitory signals
- evade apoptosis
- acquire limitless replicative potential, and
- sustain angiogenesis

According to this model, the type of genetic insult may vary with different cancers. All cancers, however, should acquire damage to these different classes of genes until a cell loses a critical number of growth control mechanisms and initiates a tumor.

3. **Stem cell theory of cancer:** This theory accounts for the observations that tumors contain cancer stem cells with indefinite proliferative potential similar to adult stem cells. Because hematopoietic stem cell lineages have been well characterized, most of our evidence for cancer stem cells has come from leukemias. Cancer stem cells are thought to be self-renewing and responsible for all components of a heterogeneous tumor. These tumor-initiating cells tend to be drug resistant and to express markers typical of stem cells. The cancer stem cell model is also consistent with some clinical observations, in which standard chemotherapy has not been successful in destroying all tumor cells and some cells remain viable. Despite the small number of cancer stem cells, according to this theory, they may be responsible for tumor recurrence years after "successful" treatment (Figure 22.8). Several genes have been identified that can confer self-renewal properties to committed progenitors and mediate their neoplastic transformation.

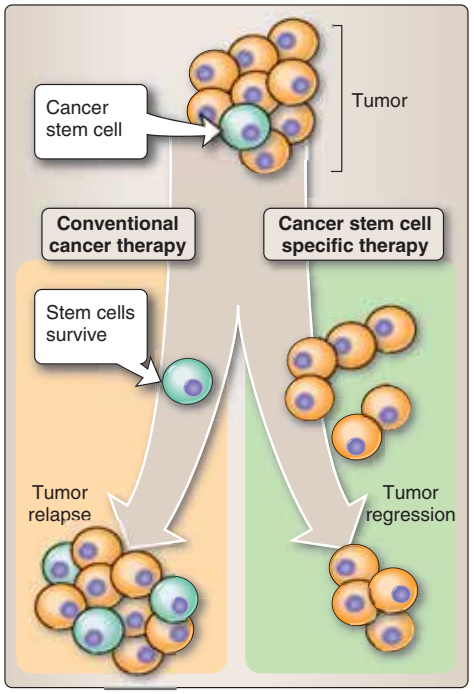


Figure 22.8
Stem cell theory of cancer.

D. Tumor progression

Cancer cells gain metastatic abilities as they evolve. Among these are genes whose products allow the breakdown of tissue structure and invade the basement membrane, allowing cells to migrate to other sites. In addition, as tumors accumulate in cellular mass, it is critical that they induce the growth of blood vessels, or **angiogenesis,** to supply the growing tumor with adequate nutrition and oxygen for its continued growth and survival.

IV. INHERITED MUTATIONS OF CANCER GENES

Even though the number of individuals with inherited predisposition is low when compared to the total number of human cancers, the risk for cancer is severalfold higher in the individual carrying a mutation in the cancer-causing gene, as this is inherited through the germ line and is therefore present in every cell of the body.

Table 22.1
EXAMPLES OF FAMILIAL CANCER SYNDROMES

Syndrome	Primary Tumor	Associated Conditions	Gene	Function of Gene Product
Familial breast cancer	Breast cancer	Ovarian cancer	*BRCA1*	Repair of double strand DNA breaks
	Breast cancer	Ovarian cancer Pancreatic cancer Melanoma	*BRCA2*	Repair of double strand DNA breaks
Li-Fraumeni	Sarcomas Breast cancer	Leukemias Brain tumors	*P53*	Transcription factor Apoptosis Cell cycle arrest
Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer	Colorectal cancer	Endometrial Ovarian Bladder Glioblastoma	*MSH2* *MLH1*	Repair of DNA mismatches Maintains DNA stability
Familial adenomatous polyposis	Colorectal cancer	Duodenal Gastric tumors	*APC*	Regulation of β catenin levels Cell adhesion
Familial retinoblastoma	Retinoblastoma	Osteosarcoma	*RB*	Cell cycle regulator Transcription factor

A. Inherited mutations mostly affect tumor suppressor genes

A large percentage of genes that are mutated in familial cancers are due to tumor suppressor genes. Some examples are shown in Table 22.1. Mutation in protooncogenes during development may not be compatible with life. This highlights the importance of orderly growth during embryogenesis to produce a viable fetus, which is better facilitated with the loss of a copy of a tumor suppressor gene than in the presence of an oncogene.

B. Inherited mutations and cancer risk

Cancer risk in those individuals carrying a mutation in a cancer-causing gene is severalfold greater, because the presence of the mutation in every cell in their bodies makes it highly likely for other mutations to occur.

V. MUTATIONS IN DRUG-METABOLIZING ENZYMES AND CANCER SUSCEPTIBILITY

Environmental chemicals may be classified as either genotoxic or nongenotoxic. Genotoxic chemicals interact with DNA, causing mutations in critical genes. Nongenotoxic mechanisms differ depending upon the nature of the chemical compound. Chemical carcinogenesis is a multistep process (Figure 22.9). Chemicals that have no appreciable carcinogenic potential of their own but greatly enhance tumor development when exposed to them for long periods of time mediate tumor promotion.

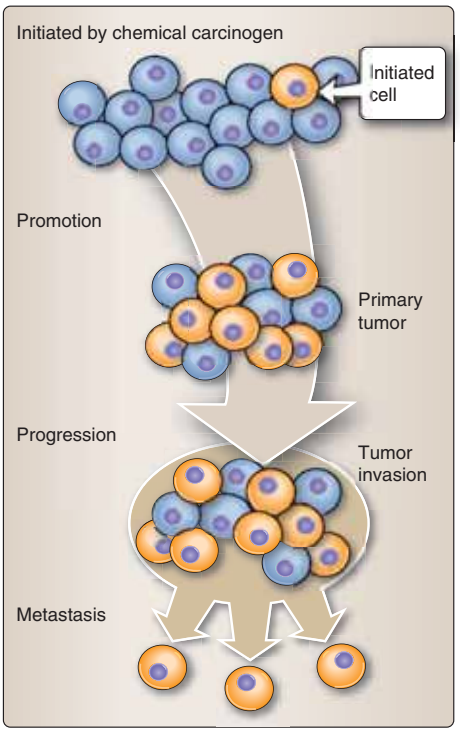


Figure 22.9
Chemical carcinogenesis.

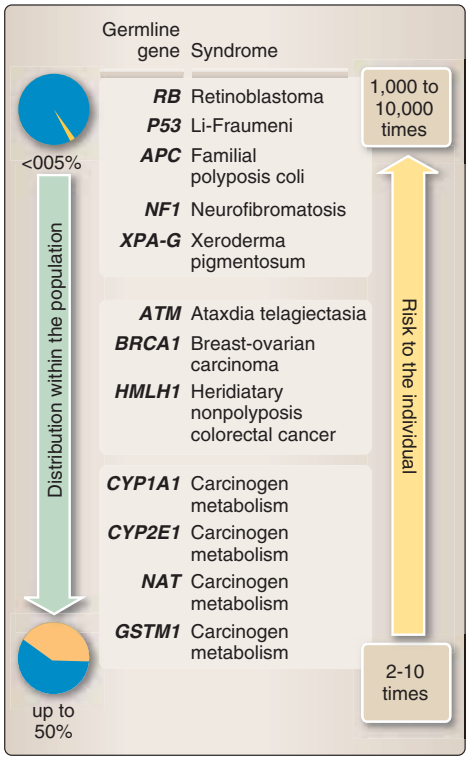


Figure 22.10
Drug-metabolizing enzymes and cancer risk.

In terms of lifestyle, exogenous hormones, high-fat diet, alcohol, etc. are known to promote cancer and therefore can be an important determinant of cancer risk.

Mutations in* P53 *mirror etiological agent in human carcinogenesis

The p53 tumor suppressor gene is mutated in over 50% of lung, breast, colon, and other common tumors; the mutational spectrum varies by cancer type and environmental exposure, providing clues to the specific risk factors involved.

Mutations in the specific codon of the p53 gene occur in lung, head, and neck cancers when benzopyrene adducts (cigarette smoke, environmental carcinogens) bind to DNA. In geographic areas in which aflatoxins and hepatitis B are risk factors for liver tumors, specific p53 mutations (codon 249, AGG to AGT) are seen to occur in these tumors.

Alterations seen in the *P53* gene in squamous and basal cell carcinomas of skin are hallmarks of exposure to ultraviolet light. Cervical tumors are due to human papillomavirus (HPV) infection. In HPV-positive tumors, p53 remains wild type, but binding to HPV causes its rapid degradation. p53 is an example of how several of the capabilities of cancer are realized with its loss and underscores its importance in the prevention of cancer.

While genetic predisposition, ethnicity, age, gender, and, to some extent, health and nutritional impairment are cancer susceptibility factors, recent studies are showing polymorphisms in certain drug-metabolizing enzymes to be associated with this inter-individual variation (Figure 22.10). Variations in the expression or form of the drug-metabolizing genes, such as **cytochrome P450, glutathione transferase,** and ***N*-acetyl transferase genes,** strongly influence individual biologic response to carcinogens.

While inheritance of cancer-causing genes will increase the cancer risk, its occurrence in the population is low. On the other hand, the carcinogen-metabolizing enzymes exist in different forms within the population at a high rate and will increase the cancer risk in some individuals carrying the form that allows activation of certain carcinogens.

Chapter Summary

- Cancer is a multistep process.
- There are several characteristic features that a cell has to attain before it undergoes neoplastic transformation.
- Protooncogenes are normal counterparts of oncogenes and usually have a role in growth regulation.
- Tumor suppressor genes normally restrain growth.
- Protooncogenes undergo mutations that cause them to be overactive or function without regulation.

- Tumor suppressor genes lose function when mutated.
- Oncogenes are dominant in action and tumor suppressor genes are recessive.
- Mutation in DNA repair genes can cause cancer.
- Inherited predisposition to cancer accounts for 5% to 10% of all human cancers.
- Lifestyle factors influence cancer risk in the general population.
- Polymorphism in drug-metabolizing enzymes explains cancer susceptibility in the general population.
- Germ line mutations in cancer-causing genes occur infrequently.
- Polymorphism in drug-metabolizing enzymes occurs more frequently.
- Mutations in p53 gene are the most common cancer-associated mutations and its function underscores its importance in the prevention of cancer.

Study Questions

22.1 A mutation in p53 that causes a loss of its function can result in a(n)

A. Ability of cells to arrest in G_1 phase after DNA damage.
B. Increase in the production of an angiogenesis inhibitor.
C. Decrease in induction of apoptosis of damaged cells.
D. Increase in DNA repair.
E. Decrease in DNA damage within cells.

22.2 Which of the following mechanisms cannot activate a protooncogene to an oncogene?

A. A single point mutation in the gene
B. Translocation of the gene to a site on a different chromosome
C. Amplification of the gene
D. Deletion of the entire gene
E. Overexpression of the gene

22.3 Which of the following will increase the risk of neoplastic transformation?

A. Increase in the activity of DNA repair enzymes
B. Decrease in the rate of mutations of protooncogenes
C. Decrease in the activity of tumor suppressor genes
D. Increase in the activity of carcinogen-metabolizing enzymes
E. Decrease in cell cycle activity

22.1: Correct answer = C. A loss of p53 function increases the survival of damaged cells, since p53 is no longer able to sense the presence of DNA damage in them. Functional p53 can arrest the cell cycle in the G_1 phase, transcriptionally activate the production of an angiogenesis inhibitor, and allow repair of damaged DNA. The presence of mutant p53 will increase DNA damage within cells.

22.2: Correct answer = D. Deletion of the gene will result complete loss of expression. All other modifications have the potential to produce an aberrant oncogenic protein.

22.3: Correct answer = C. Decreased tumor suppressor gene activity allows DNA damage to accumulate and allows cell cycle to be unregulated, all of which will increase the risk of neoplastic transformation. An increase in DNA repair is beneficial to the overall health of the cell. Mutations in protooncogenes increase cancer occurrence, so a decrease will prevent neoplastic transformation. An increase in carcinogen-metabolizing activity will help remove potential carcinogens from the body. A decrease in the cell cycle will prevent abnormal growth.

22.4 Which of the following individuals' cancer risk is the highest based on the knowledge of their health histories? A 24-year-old

A. Diabetic male
B. Obese male with a family history of cardiovascular disease
C. Premenopausal woman taking exogenous hormones
D. Underweight female on a perpetual diet
E. Woman with a family history of breast cancer

22.5 Which of the following proteins have the potential to inhibit angiogenesis?

A. Adenomatous polyposis coli (APC)
B. Telomerase
C. Thrombospondin
D. Retinoblastoma
E. *N*-acetyl transferase

22.4: Correct answer = E. A woman with a family history of breast cancer is likely to carry mutations in the predisposing gene. The mutant gene is now present in every cell of her body. Having a mutant gene makes the cell susceptible to further mutations. Given the current knowledge, her risk is the highest for cancer occurrence but it does not mean that she will definitely have cancer. The presence of diabetes or cardiovascular disease does not raise the risk of cancer. Being underweight does not increase cancer risk. Exogenous estrogen is known to slightly increase cancer risk.

22.5: Correct answer = C. Thrombospondin is an angiogenesis inhibitor. APC mutations predispose individuals to polyps in the colon. Telomerase activation is required for the tumor's "immortalization." Retinoblastoma is a tumor suppressor gene that controls the G_1 transition. *N*-acetyl transferase is a drug-metabolizing enzyme whose polymorphic forms may influence cancer risk in the population.

23 Cell Death

I. OVERVIEW

All cells eventually die either by necrosis or apoptosis. Necrosis is a passive, pathological process induced by cellular injury or accidental means and often involves the simultaneous death of cells in groups (Figure 23.1). Necrotic cells have ruptured cell membranes allowing the cytoplasm and organelles to spill into the surrounding tissue fluids, often inducing an inflammatory response. In contrast, apoptosis is an active, normal, physiological process that removes individual cells without damaging neighboring cells or inducing inflammation. Cells undergoing apoptosis have a characteristic "blebbed" appearance of their membranes. Apoptosis is as fundamental to cellular and tissue physiology as cell division and differentiation. Disturbance in pathways that regulate apoptosis may result in cancers, autoimmune diseases, and neurodegenerative disorders.

II. NECROSIS

Necrosis is a passive, pathological process induced by acute injury or disease. A group of cells in a localized region of a tissue generally undergo necrosis at the same time after experiencing an insult. Cells that die by necrosis increase in volume and lyse (burst), releasing their intracellular contents. Mitochondria and other intracellular components are released, often inducing a potentially damaging **inflammatory response**. The necrotic process is completed within several days.

> ***Necrosis and serum enzymes***
>
> Because intracellular contents, including enzymes, are released from necrotic cells, measurement of enzymes in serum samples prepared from a patient's blood is often done to aid in diagnosis and to help to determine a prognosis. For example, most cells contain lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), an enzyme that all cells use to generate ATP from glucose. When cells from any tissue die by necrosis, LDH will appear in the blood. In fact, LDH is often used as a general marker of necrotic cell death.

III. APOPTOSIS

Cells deprived of survival factors activate an intracellular suicide program and die by a process of programmed cell death called **apoptosis** (pronounced ă-pŏp-tō'sĭs apo tō' sis). The requirement of a cell to receive signals for survival helps to ensure that cells continue to live only when and where they are needed.

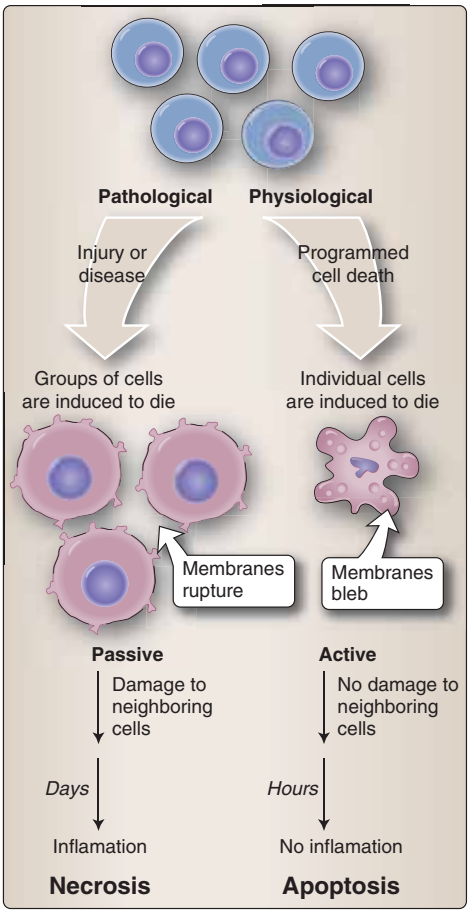


Figure 23.1
Cell death by necrosis and apoptosis.

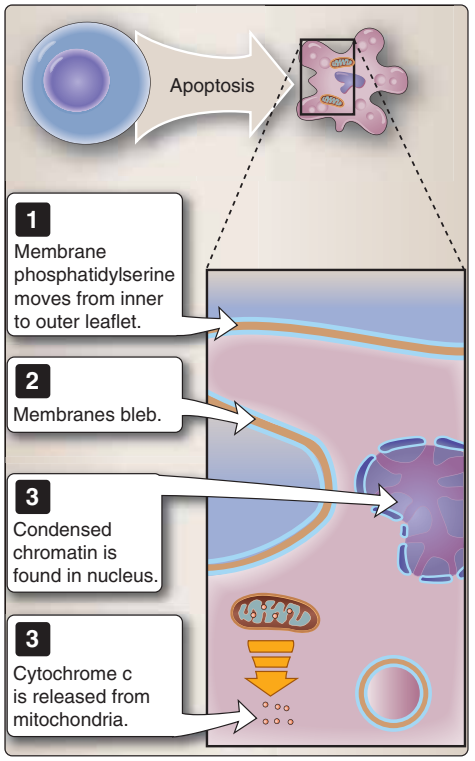


Figure 23.2
Cellular changes during apoptosis.

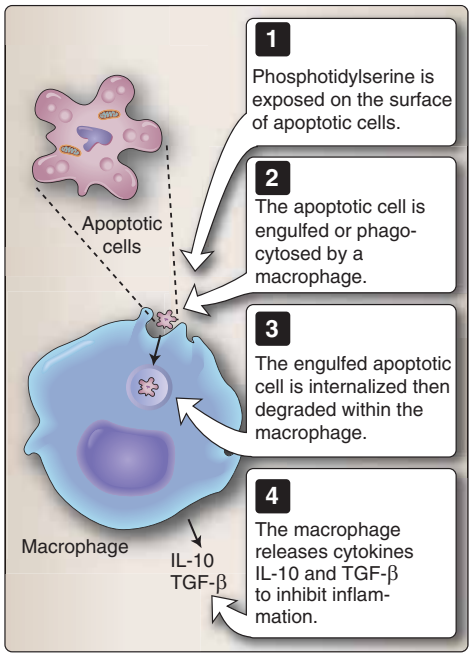


Figure 23.3
Apoptotic cell removal via phagocytosis.

Cells undergoing apoptosis shrink in size but do not lyse. Their plasma membrane remains intact but portions of the membrane eventually bud off, or **bleb,** and lose their asymmetry and ability to attach to neighboring cells in a tissue. The membrane phospholipid **phosphatidylserine,** which is normally present on the inner membrane leaflet oriented toward the cytosol, inverts and becomes exposed on the cell's surface. In an active, ATP-requiring process, mitochondria of apoptotic cells release **cytochrome *c*** but remain within the membrane blebs (Figure 23.2). Chromatin of apoptotic cells segments and condenses.

Apoptotic cells are **engulfed by phagocytic cells,** macrophages and dendritic cells, which bind to the phosphatidylserine on the membrane surface (Figure 23.3). A macrophage internalizes and then degrades an apoptotic cell, reducing the risk of inflammation from the cell death. Phagocytic cells also release cytokines including interleukin-10 (IL-10) and transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) that inhibit inflammation. Therefore, there is no extensive damage done to neighboring cells in a tissue when a nearby resident cell undergoes apoptosis. Apoptosis is completed within a few hours.

A. Biologic significance

While necrosis is a traumatic process resulting in widespread cell death, tissue damage, and inflammation, apoptosis has the advantage of eliminating individual cells whose survival would be harmful to the organism or whose elimination is critical for normal development or function.

1. **Function of apoptosis:** Elimination of damaged cells is an important function of apoptosis. When a cell is damaged beyond repair, infected with a virus, or experiencing starvation or the effects of ionizing radiation or toxins, actions of the tumor suppressor protein **p53** (a product of the p53 gene) halt the cell cycle and stimulate apoptosis (Figure 23.4). The normal (wild type) p53 binds to a p53-responsive element within the gene promoter of the proapoptotic protein **Bax**, triggering programmed cell death. Removal of individual cells by apoptosis saves nutrients needed by other cells and can also halt the spread of a viral infection to other cells. But, mutant forms of p53 can neither halt the cell cycle nor initiate apoptosis. Therefore, abnormal cells expressing mutant p53 can continue to divide and fail to undergo apoptosis, despite the fact that their survival damages the organism.

2. **Development:** Apoptosis is used during development of the embryo. Extensive cell division and differentiation during this period often result in an excess number of cells that must be removed in order for normal development to proceed and for normal function to occur. In a developing vertebrate nervous system, more than half of the nerve cells generated undergo programmed cell death soon after they are formed.

   Selective apoptosis "sculpts" the developing tissues. For example, apoptotic death of cells between developing digits must occur for formation of individual fingers and toes (Figure 23.5A). Incomplete apoptosis can result in abnormal structures (Figure 23.5B). Development of a healthy and mature adaptive immune system also requires apoptosis. Negative selection in the thymus, the process by which autoreactive T cells are eliminated from the repertoire of cells, likewise occurs via apoptosis (see also *LIR Immunology*, p.114).

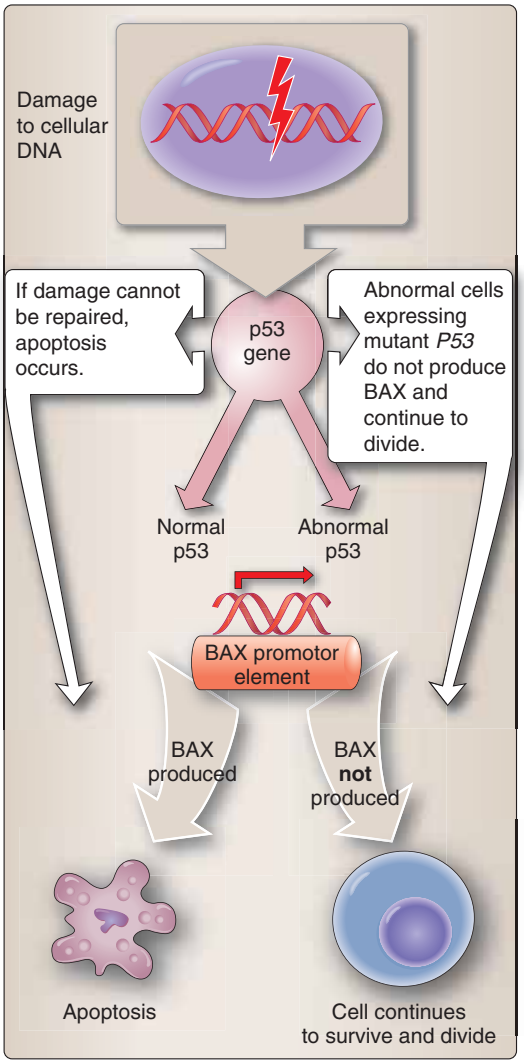


Figure 23.4
Apoptosis in response to DNA damage; role of p53 in apoptosis.

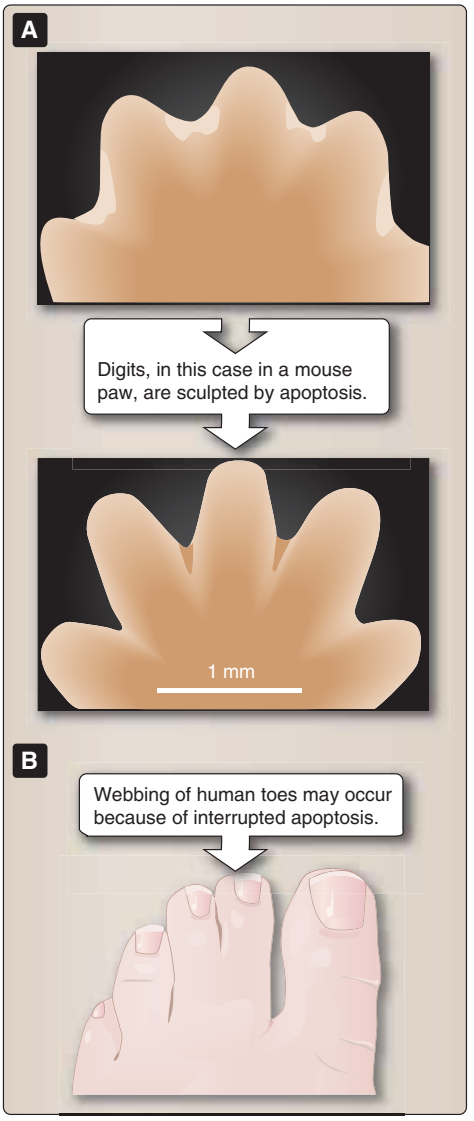


Figure 23.5
Sculpting by apoptosis.

Sonic hedgehog and apoptosis

During embryonic development of vertebrates, a gradient of the signaling molecule Sonic hedgehog (Shh) is released from the notochord to direct cells to form patterns in the neural tube. Neural tube cells express Patched 1 (Ptc1), the receptor for Shh. When Shh binds to this receptor, the target cell survives. In the absence of Shh, cells expressing Ptc1 undergo apoptosis.

3. **Homeostasis:** In normal, healthy adults, the number of cells is kept relatively constant owing to a balance between cell division and cell death (Figure 23.6). Billions of cells die each hour in the bone marrow and in the epithelia of healthy individuals. When cells are damaged or nonfunctioning, they must be replaced, but generation of new cells must be compensated by cell death to maintain a stable baseline population. Such homeostasis is required to maintain cell

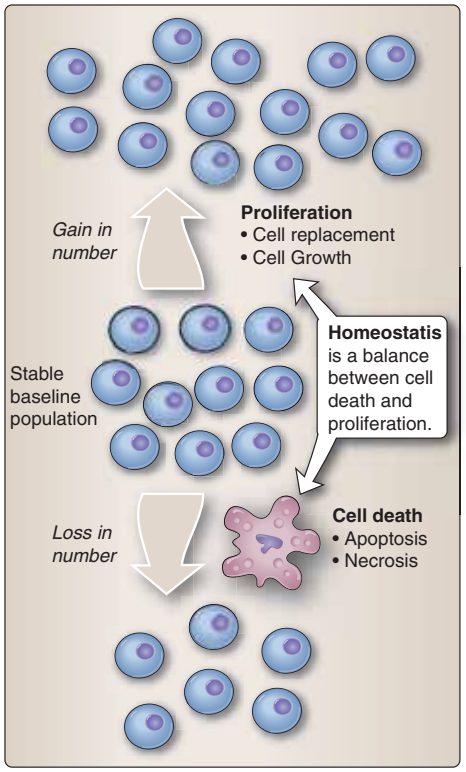


Figure 23.6
Homeostatic balance is maintained by a balance of cell growth and cell loss.

number and normal function. If the equilibrium is disturbed, then abnormal growth and tumors or abnormal cell loss can result. A complex system of controls tightly regulates homeostasis. One signaling mechanism that operates in this regard is the Shh-signaling pathway that normally sends an antiapoptotic signal to allow for cell survival. Failure to receive the signal results in apoptosis. However, when the hedgehog system is impaired, the antiapoptotic signal can be sent inappropriately, allowing damaged cells to escape death, with the potential for development of malignancy.

B. Initiation of apoptosis

Specific details of apoptotic mechanisms are cell-type and stimulus dependent; however, research suggests that there are common steps in this process.

1. **Apoptosome:** An **internal cell death program** will be initiated if irreparable damage has been sustained to cellular components or to DNA (Figure 23.7). **Bax**, a proapoptotic protein, is induced and inserted into the mitochondrial membrane to form a channel to allow cytochrome *c* to exit mitochondria. Cytochrome *c* in the cytoplasm triggers the formation of the **apoptosome,** a large protein complex that also requires ATP for its formation. The apoptosome is characteristic of apoptosis triggered by internal signals. To form this complex, cytoplasmic cytochrome *c* activates the Apaf-1 adaptor protein that in turn activates caspase 9 of the **caspase** proteolytic cascade that will cleave and destroy cellular proteins and DNA in order to cause cell death by apoptosis.

2. **Death receptors:** Death receptors belonging to the **tumor necrosis factor receptor** (TNFR) gene superfamily can initiate apoptosis from external signals. Individual members of this family recognize specific ligands but not all members of the TNF family initiate cell death. Those that do initiate cell death possess a homologous cytoplasmic sequence termed the "**death domain (DD)**." Adaptor molecules such as FADD (Fas-associated death domain) and TRADD (TNFR-associated protein) contain such DDs. They interact with the death receptors to transmit the apoptotic signal to the death machinery, via activation of caspase 8 or 10 (Figure 23.8).

   The **Fas death receptor** is a member of the TNFR superfamily that will initiate apoptotic cell death when engaged by the **Fas ligand** (FasL, also known as CD178). T-cytotoxic cells express FasL that interacts with the Fas death receptor on host cells infected with virus in order to stimulate their apoptotic death. TNFR1 is also involved in death signaling but its death-inducing capability is weak compared to that of Fas (CD95).

Fas ligand–induced apoptosis

Membrane-anchored FasL trimer on the surface of an adjacent cell causes trimerization of the Fas receptor (Figure 23.9). This results in the clustering of the receptors' DDs, which then recruit the cytosolic adaptor protein FADD by binding to FADD's death

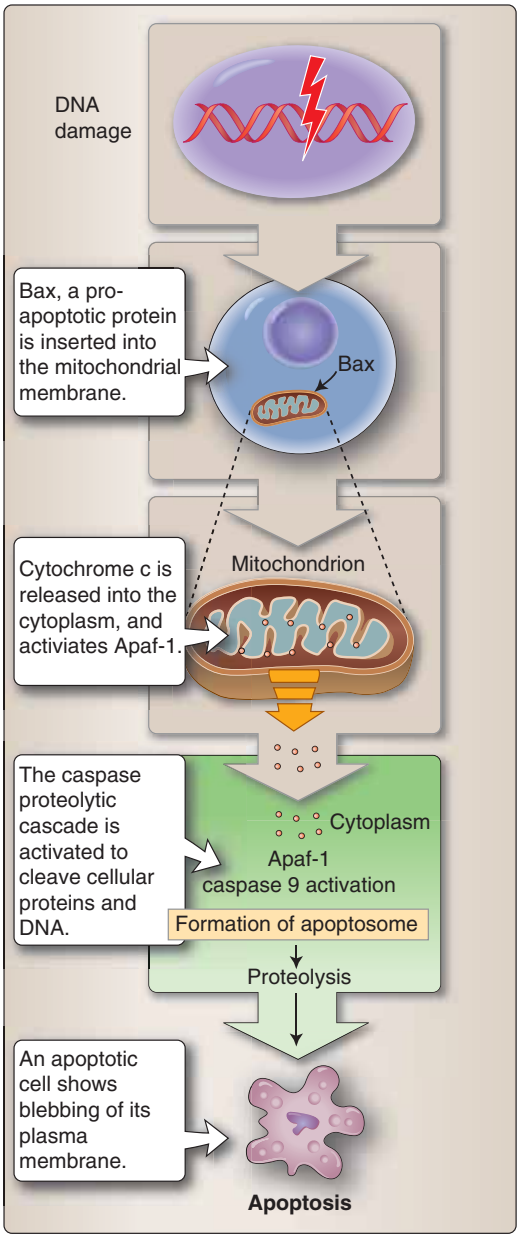


Figure 23.7
Cellular apoptosis via formation of the apoptosome.

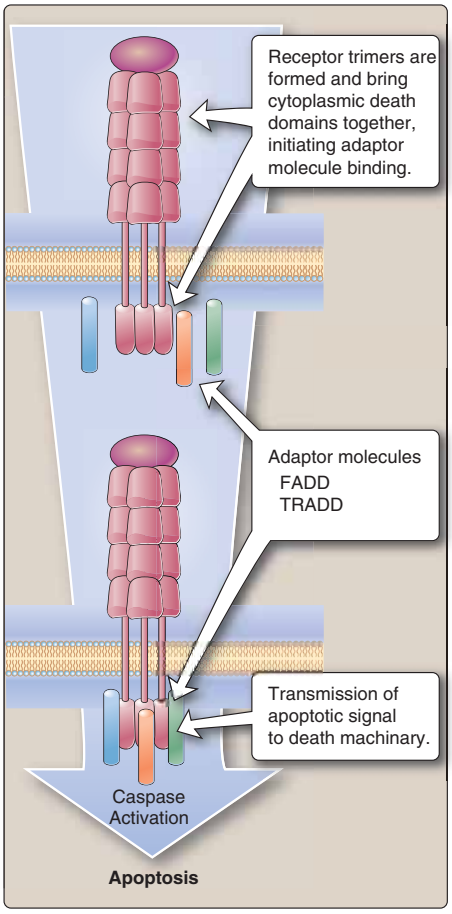


Figure 23.8
Death-receptor initiation of apoptosis.

domains. FADD not only contains a DD but also a death effector domain (DED) that binds to an analogous domain repeated in tandem within procaspase 8, the inactive or zymogen form of caspase 8. The complex of Fas receptor (trimer), FADD, and caspase 8 is called the death-inducing signaling complex (DISC). Upon recruitment by FADD, procaspase 8 is able to activate itself. Caspase 8 then activates downstream caspases and commits the cell to apoptosis. Apoptosis triggered by FasL-Fas (CD178:CD95) plays a fundamental role in the regulation of the immune system.

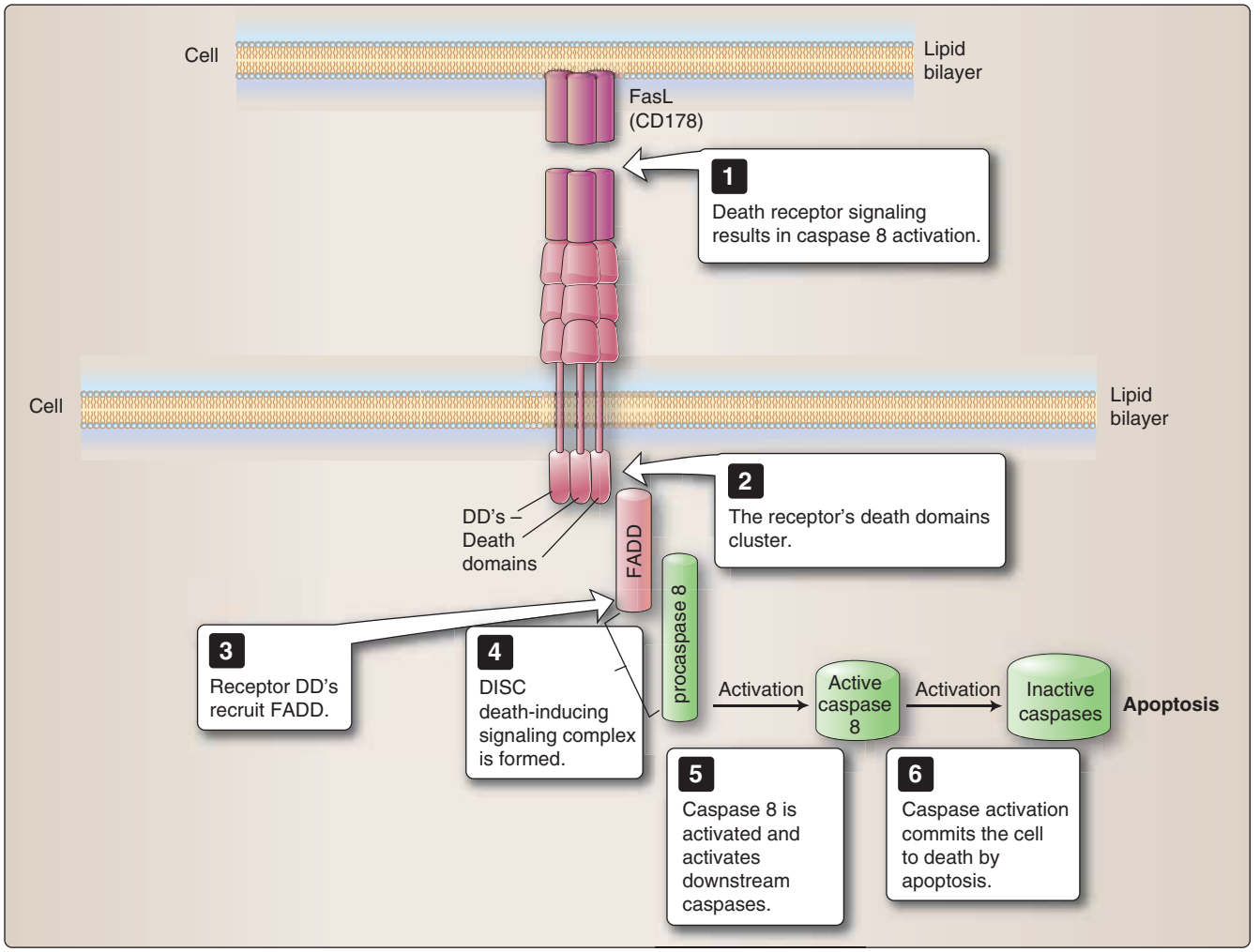


Figure 23.9
Apoptosis as a result of FasL binding to the Fas receptor.

Caspases:	Role:
Caspase 1	Cytokine maturation
Apoptotic:	
Caspases 2,8,9,10	Initiator caspases
Caspases 3,6,7	Effector caspases
Caspases 4,5	Inflamation
Caspase 14	Skin development

Figure 23.10
Classification and roles of caspases.

C. Caspase family of proteases

Caspases are a family of proteases (enzymes whose substrates are proteins) that are major effectors of apoptotic cell death. They are members of the cysteine protease class, which is named after a cysteine amino acid residue present within the catalytic site of the enzyme molecule. Caspases are synthesized in inactive zymogen or proenzyme forms and are activated to become functional proteases when needed. This posttranslational modification ensures that the enzymes can be activated rapidly when required.

1. **Classification of caspases:** Caspases are grouped based on their function (Figure 23.10). Eleven members of the caspase family have been identified in humans. Some are not involved in apoptosis. Caspase 1 is involved in cytokine maturation, caspases 4 and 5 are involved in inflammation, and caspase 14 is important in skin development. The remaining caspases are involved in apoptosis and are grouped into either the initiator or the effector families of apoptotic caspases.

Initiator caspases include caspases 2, 8, 9, and 10. These possess characteristic regions or domains such as caspase recruitment domains (CARD) in caspases 2 and 9 and DED in caspases 8 and 10 that enable the protease to interact with molecules that regulate their activity. Initiator caspases cleave inactive proenzyme forms of effector caspases, resulting in their activation. **Effector caspases** include caspases 3, 6, and 7. These "executioner caspases" proteolytically cleave protein substrates with the cell, causing the apoptotic demise of the cell.

2. **The caspase cascade:** This process is the sequential proteolytic activation of one caspase after another in an orderly fashion during the initiation of apoptosis. Caspase inhibitors regulate the process. The cascade can be activated by various stimuli, including the apoptosome, death receptors, and granzyme B released by cytotoxic T cells. The apoptosome and death receptors activate initiator caspases; the apoptosome activates caspase 9, while death receptors activate caspases 8 and 10. Granzyme B activates caspases 3 and 7, which are effector caspases.

   Targets of caspases include nuclear and cytoplasmic proteins. In many instances, the exact role played by the cleavage of caspase substrates is not understood and how the destruction of the protein relates to apoptosis is often unclear. Nuclear lamins, structural fibrous proteins in the nucleus, are targets of caspases. Additionally, DNA fragmentation factor 45/inhibitor of caspase-activated DNAse is cleaved, allowing caspase-activated DNAse to enter the nucleus and fragment DNA, causing the characteristic laddering pattern of DNA in apoptotic cells (Figure 23.11). The DNA is cleaved by an endonuclease into fragments that are multiples of the same size, corresponding to the length of the nucleosome coil, for example, 2, 4, 6, 8, etc. A distinctive 180-bp ladder is seen in the DNA of cells undergoing apoptosis. Poly ADP ribose polymerase is also known to be proteolytically cleaved by caspases during the apoptotic process, as is Bid, a member of the Bcl-2 family.

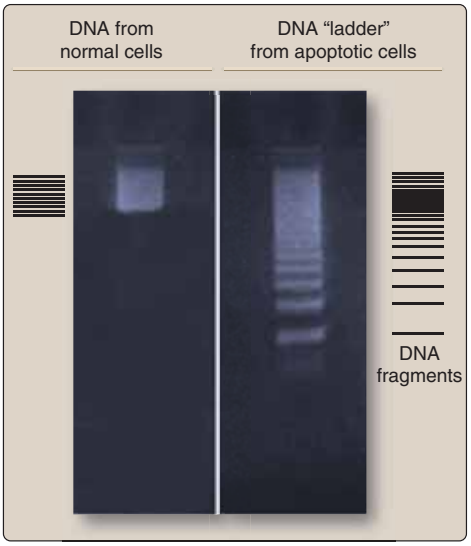


Figure 23.11
DNA fragmentation or laddering in apoptotic cells.

D. Members of the Bcl-2 Family

In apoptotic cells, the ratio of prosurvival to proapoptotic proteins changes to favor the proapoptotic proteins. Many of these proteins are members of the Bcl-2 protein family. Prosurvival (antiapoptotic) members of the Bcl-2 family include **Bcl-2** and **Bcl-xL,** while prodeath members include **Bak** and **Bax** (Figure 23.12). In most cell types, death receptor signaling results in the activation of caspase 8, a protease which catalyzes the cleavage of Bid to tBid (Figure 23.13). Bak and Bax can then translocate from the cytosol to the outer mitochondrial membrane, permeabilize it, and facilitate the release of proapoptotic proteins including cytochrome *c* and Smac/DIABLO, an antagonist of inhibitors of apoptosis proteins (IAPs).

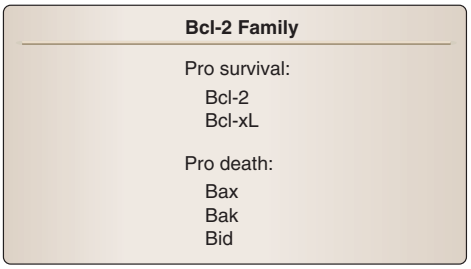


Figure 23.12
Prosurvival and prodeath members of the Bcl-2 family.

E. Apoptosis in disease

1. **Cancer:** A leading cause of death, cancer arises when the homeostatic balance between cell division and apoptosis is altered. Decreased apoptosis in cancer cells may result from altered expression of apoptosis regulatory proteins. Overexpression of the

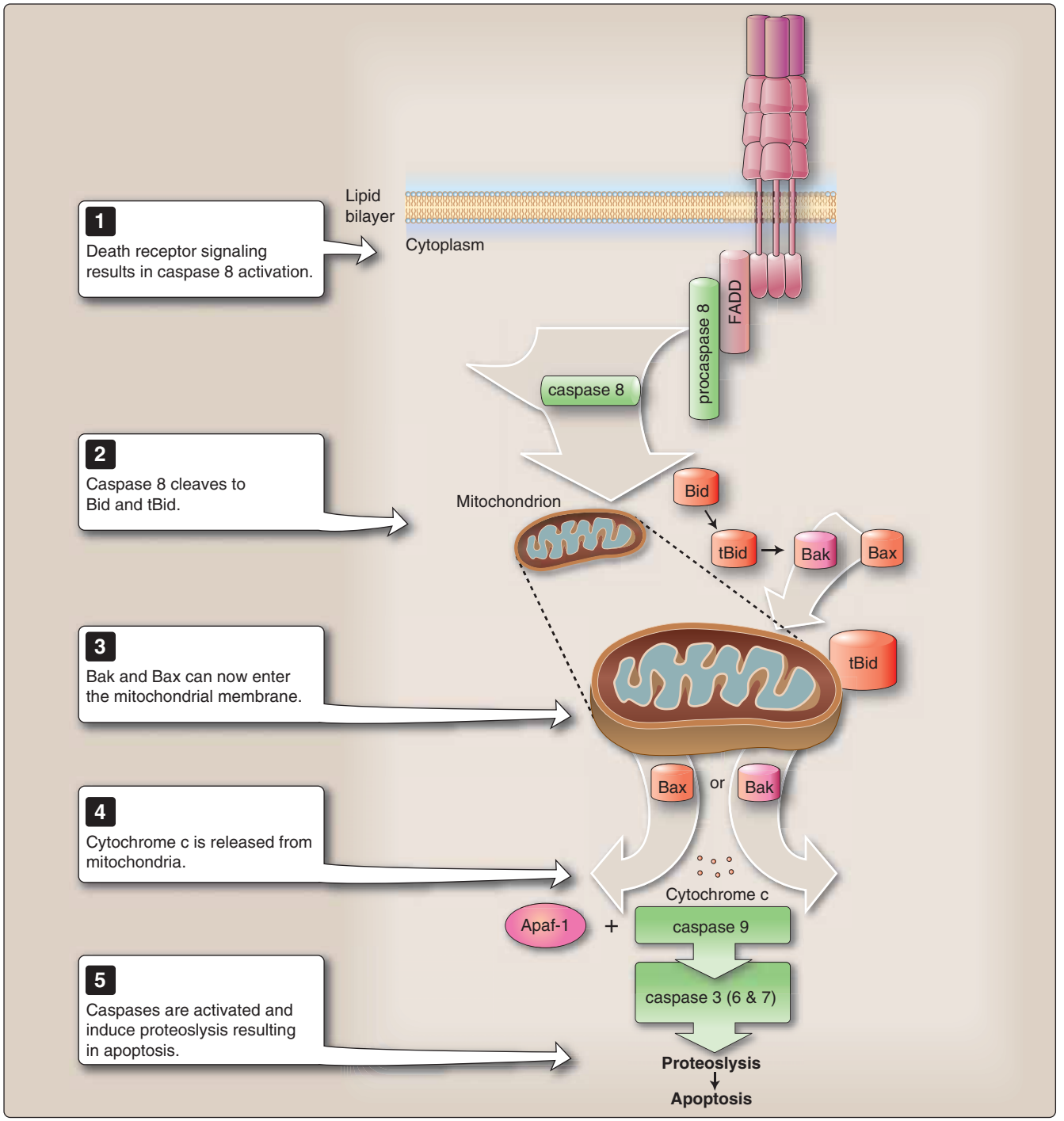


Figure 23.13
Bcl-2 family members in apoptosis.

antiapoptotic Bcl-2 protein in lymphocytes that also express the *myc* oncogene can result in lymphoma. When chromosomal translocations move the Bcl-2 gene next to the immunoglobulin heavy chain locus, lymphoma can also result. The Bcl-2 gene has also been implicated in breast, prostate, and lung carcinomas and in melanoma. Resistance to cancer chemotherapy in some tumors

may also be caused by the overexpression of Bcl-2 and defective apoptosis.

2. **Autoimmune conditions:** Rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, and type 1 diabetes mellitus are examples of autoimmune conditions that may result in part from defective apoptosis (see *LIR Immunology*, Chapter 16). A prominent feature of autoimmune diseases is the failure of T cells that recognize self to undergo negative selection via apoptosis. The autoreactive cells then survive and proliferate. Defective apoptosis has sometimes been attributed to abnormal expression of proteins involved in apoptotic signaling. For example, some studies indicate that T cells infiltrating rheumatoid synovium express high levels of Bcl-2 and are resistant to Fas-induced apoptosis. Defective Fas death receptors and increased apoptosis in pancreatic islets may cause destruction of pancreatic β cells and development of type 1 diabetes mellitus.

   Enhanced apoptosis can also impact progression of infection with **human immunodeficiency virus** (HIV) to the immune-compromised state of AIDS. Inappropriate apoptotic depletion of $CD4^+$ T helper cells causes marked decreases in these T cells in affected individuals. Some HIV proteins inactivate anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 and other HIV proteins promote Fas-mediated apoptosis.

3. **Neurodegenerative illnesses:** Other types of disorders may also result in part from increased apoptosis. **Schizophrenia**, a chronic neurodegenerative illness, is characterized by delusions, hallucinations, and changes in emotional state. Although the mechanisms underlying these deficits are largely unknown, recent postmortem data implicate a role for altered neuronal apoptosis. Apoptotic regulatory proteins and DNA fragmentation patterns appear to be altered in several cortical regions in individuals with schizophrenia. In individuals with **Alzheimer's disease**, localized apoptosis may contribute to early neurite and synapse loss, leading to the initial cognitive decline. Additionally, many individuals infected with the HIV virus develop a syndrome of neurologic deterioration known as **HIV-associated dementia** (HAD). HAD appears to be associated with active caspase 3 in the affected brain regions, leading to speculation that pharmacologic interventions aimed at the caspase pathway may be beneficial.

F. Laboratory assessment of apoptosis

Several laboratory assays exist to assess apoptosis. In addition to the methods described below, analysis of expression of proapoptotic proteins, such as Bax, and measurement of caspase activity can also be done.

1. **DNA laddering:** Visualization of **DNA laddering** is perhaps the oldest technique available to detect that apoptosis has occurred. Since the genomic DNA of apoptotic cells is degraded into approximately 180 base pair fragments, a characteristic laddering appearance is revealed on agarose gel electrophoresis (see Figure 23.11).

2. **TUNEL:** The **TUNEL** method, which stands for *t*erminal *u*ridine deoxy*n*ucleotidyl transferase nick *e*nd *l*abeling, detects DNA fragmentation based on the presence of strand breaks or nicks in the DNA. The terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase enzyme catalyzes the addition of dUTPs that have been labeled for the experiment.
3. **Annexin 5:** The **Annexin 5** affinity assay is also useful for the detection of cells early in the apoptotic process. Annexins are a family of proteins that bind to phospholipids in cell membranes. Annexin 5 binds to phosphatidylserine, which, in healthy cells, is present on the inner membrane leaflet. Soon after a cell has initiated steps toward programmed cell death, phosphatidylserine flip-flops to the outer membrane leaflet. A labeled antibody to Annexin 5 can be used to detect cells displaying phosphatidylserine on their outer leaflet, indicating that they have initiated the apoptotic process.
4. **Flow cytometry:** This procedure can be used to measure **cell size** and **granularity** of cells within a population, both of which differ in apoptotic and normal cells. Because apoptotic cells shrink in size, the forward angle light scatter will reveal an apoptotic population of less intensity compared with normal cells. Granularity of apoptotic cells is increased compared with that of normal cells, as indicated by side scatter.

Chapter Summary

- Cell death occurs via one of the two processes: necrosis, a pathological process, or apoptosis, a physiological process.
- Necrotic cells rupture and release their contents, including enzymes, to the extracellular media, often inducing an inflammatory response.
- Apoptotic cells undergo a programmed form of cell death with blebbing membranes that remain intact. Their engulfment by phagocytic cells prevents their death from causing an inflammatory response.
- Apoptosis is important for elimination of damaged cells in development and for tissue homeostasis.
- Apoptosis may be stimulated by an internal process resulting in assembly of an apoptosome or by extracellular signals via death receptors.
- Apoptotic cells show a change in their ratio of proapoptotic and prosurvival protein members of the Bcl-2 protein family to favor the proapoptotic proteins.
- Caspase proteases catalyze cleavage of cellular proteins, culminating in apoptosis.
- Insufficient apoptosis in certain cells can result in cancer and autoimmune conditions, while excess apoptosis can lead to neurodegenerative illnesses and may play a role in the development of AIDS from HIV infection.

Study Questions

23.1 A 64-year-old male is suspected of having experienced a massive lysis of his erythrocytes. Positive results for which of the following tests may help confirm this suspicion?

A. Annexin 5
B. Caspase activity
C. DNA laddering
D. LDH in blood serum
E. TUNEL assay

23.1: Correct answer = D. Massive lysis of erythrocytes occurs by necrosis, which is accompanied by the release of intracellular enzymes, including LDH, into the patient's blood. Assays of annexin 5, caspase activity, DNA laddering, and TUNEL are all used to detect apoptotic cells. Since erythrocytes do not contain genomic DNA, measurement of DNA laddering of erythrocytes is never possible.

23.2 An 8-year-old female sustained an injury to her arm, which initiated an inflammatory response, resulting in pain and swelling. Which of the following is characteristic of the cells that died to initiate this response?

A. Activation of caspase 3 to cleave cellular proteins
B. Cytochrome *c* release from mitochondria
C. Fas death receptor binding to an extracellular ligand
D. Increase in the intracellular ratio of Bax to Bcl-2
E. Plasma membranes that have ruptured during the process

23.2: Correct answer = E. Ruptured plasma membranes are characteristic of necrotic cells that induce an inflammatory response as a result of their death. The other answer choices all relate to apoptotic cell death that does not stimulate inflammation.

23.3 A cell has been induced to die in the course of normal development and an apoptosome forms within that cell. Which of the following is required for this process?

A. Energy in the form of ATP
B. Fas death receptor signaling
C. Loss of mitochondria from cells
D. Plasma membrane rupture
E. Release of enzymes from cells

23.3: Correct answer = A. Apoptosome formation in response to internal apoptotic signals requires energy in the form of ATP. FasL signals via Fas death receptors when apoptotic signals are received from external sources. Loss of mitochondria, plasma membrane rupture, and release of enzymes all occur during necrotic cell death.

23.4 A population of cells is being grown in the laboratory and the total number of viable cells is observed to decrease. Analysis of Bax protein reveals an increase in its expression. Which of the following findings may be used to confirm that apoptosis is occurring in this cell population?

A. Increased expression of Bcl-2 protein
B. Intracellular enzymes in the culture medium
C. Phosphatidylserine on the outer membrane leaflet
D. Release of mitochondria from the dying cells
E. Visualization of ruptured plasma membranes

23.4: Correct answer = C. Phosphatidylserine is a phospholipid normally present on the inner leaflet of a plasma membrane. But, during apoptosis, it appears on the outer leaflet. Annexin 5 binding to phosphatidylserine can also be used to detect it on the outer membrane. Bcl-2 is antiapoptotic and would not increase its expression during apoptosis. Necrotic cells whose plasma membranes rupture release the intracellular enzymes and mitochondria.

23.5 In which of the following conditions may high levels of apoptotic cell death result in disease?

A. Breast cancer
B. HIV/AIDS
C. Lymphoma
D. Rheumatoid arthritis
E. Systemic lupus erythematosus

23.5: Correct answer = B. Progression of HIV infection to AIDS involves apoptotic depletion of $CD4^+$ helper T cells. Insufficient apoptosis is observed in cancers, such as breast cancer and lymphoma, and also in autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis and systemic lupus erythematosus.

Aging and Senescence

24

I. OVERVIEW

Most eukaryotic cells undergo a finite number of cell divisions. Cell division is restricted by a process of replicative or cellular senescence where cells reach an irreversible arrest of cell proliferation. Several genes are known to play a role in the control of replicative senescence. There are also several hypotheses to explain the aging process in eukaryotic cells. The characteristics of aging are unique and affect all individuals and are separate from diseases that result due to the aging process.

II. CELLULAR SENESCENCE

Normal eukaryotic cells do not divide indefinitely. The replicative span of cells is limited and is referred to as replicative senescence. The finiteness of human cells was first described by Hayflick in the 1960s using human fibroblasts. Replicative senescence depends on the number of cell divisions—not the time taken for cells to complete the cell cycle. It is also dependent on the cell type. While some cells such as the germ line cells divide indefinitely, most other normal cells retain the capacity to senesce with age. Proliferating cells reach their limit largely because repeated DNA replication in the absence of the enzyme telomerase (Chapter 7) causes telomeres to progressively shorten. Cells that fail to senesce proliferate despite dysfunctional telomeres. Eventually these cells develop aberrations in their chromosomes that can result in cancer. Therefore, the senescence response represents a fail-safe mechanism in place to prevent malignant transformation. Accumulation of DNA damage, inappropriate expression of oncogenes, and generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) are all known to induce senescence (Figure 24.1).

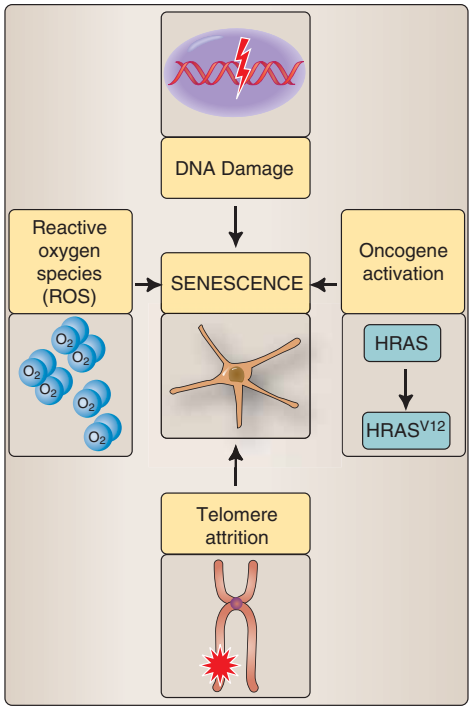


Figure 24.1
Senescence inducers.

A. The senescent phenotype

Senescent cells display a number of phenotypes that distinguish them from quiescent cells, and in this manner, senescent cells are thought to enter a form of terminal differentiation state. This state cannot be reversed by physiological stimulators of growth. Senescent cells, while incapable of replication, are generally viable and metabolically active, survive long term, and resist apoptosis (Figure 24.2). These cells

also express a senescence-associated beta-galactosidase enzyme activity (SA-B-gal).

1. **Irreversible cell cycle arrest:** Growth arrest of senescent cells occurs mostly in the G_1 phase and is accompanied by an increased expression of cell cycle inhibitors and a decreased expression of cell cycle regulators such as cyclins and transcription factors (E2F) (see Chapter 20) necessary for progression of the cell cycle.

   The cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors p21 and p16 are important players in aging and age-related disease. They function to inactivate the cyclin-dependent kinases (Chapter 20) which maintain the retinoblastoma protein (pRB) in its active hypophosphorylated state necessary to produce a block in cell cycle progression in G_1.

2. **Chromatin modification during senescence:** There is age-associated remodeling of chromatin. While there is a genome wide decrease in methylation, there is also an increase in methylation at specific sites in the genome. This happens at CG sites (Chapter 6) on DNA, which may comprise of promoter regions of genes. The decrease in methylation happens in regions comprising of repetitive DNA sequences. Histones (Chapter 6) are also modified with age by deacetylation, creating unique regions in the chromatin called **senescence-associated heterochromatin foci** (SAHF). This type of modification is usually seen when proliferation is triggered in senescent cells, causing regions associated with proliferation-promoting genes to be silenced and contributing to the senescence-associated proliferation arrest (Figure 24.3).

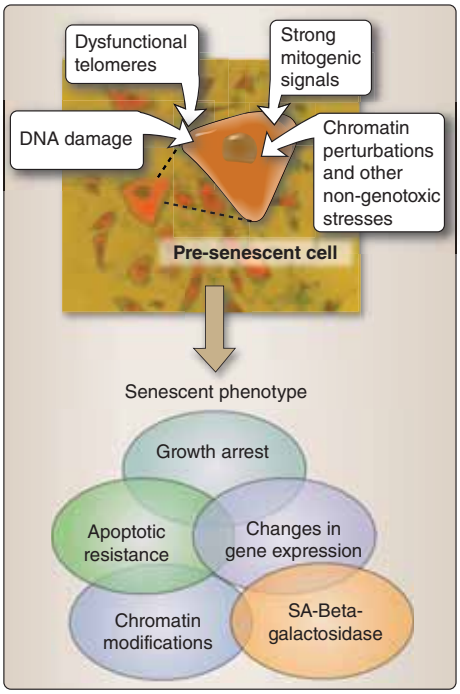


Figure 24.2
The senescent phenotype.

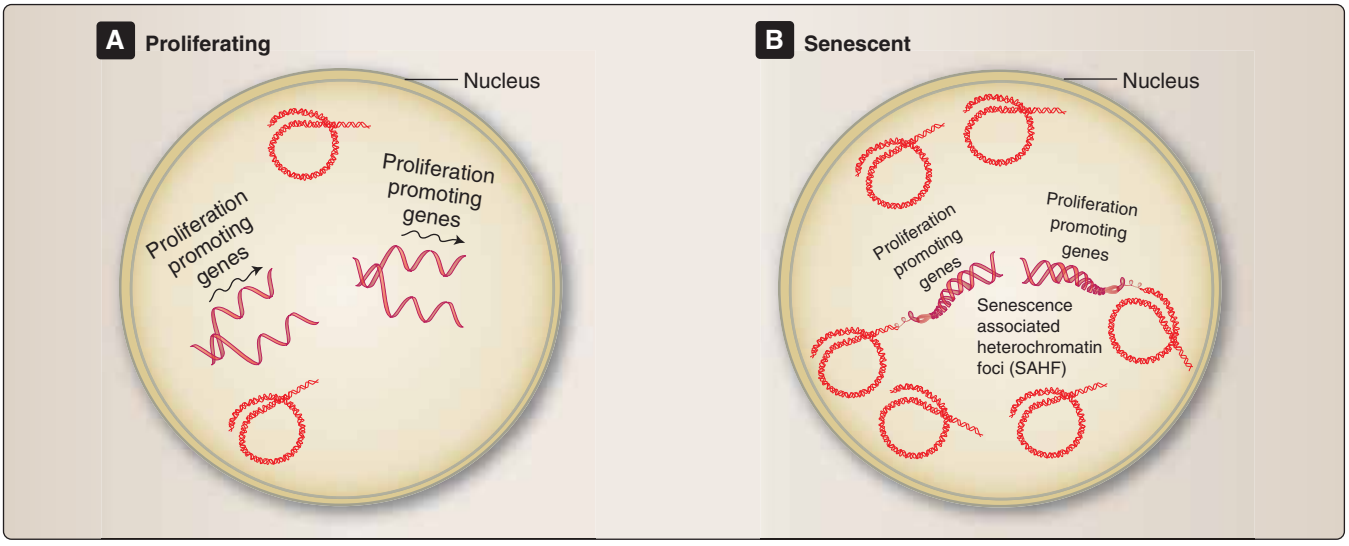


Figure 24.3
Senescence-associated proliferation arrest.

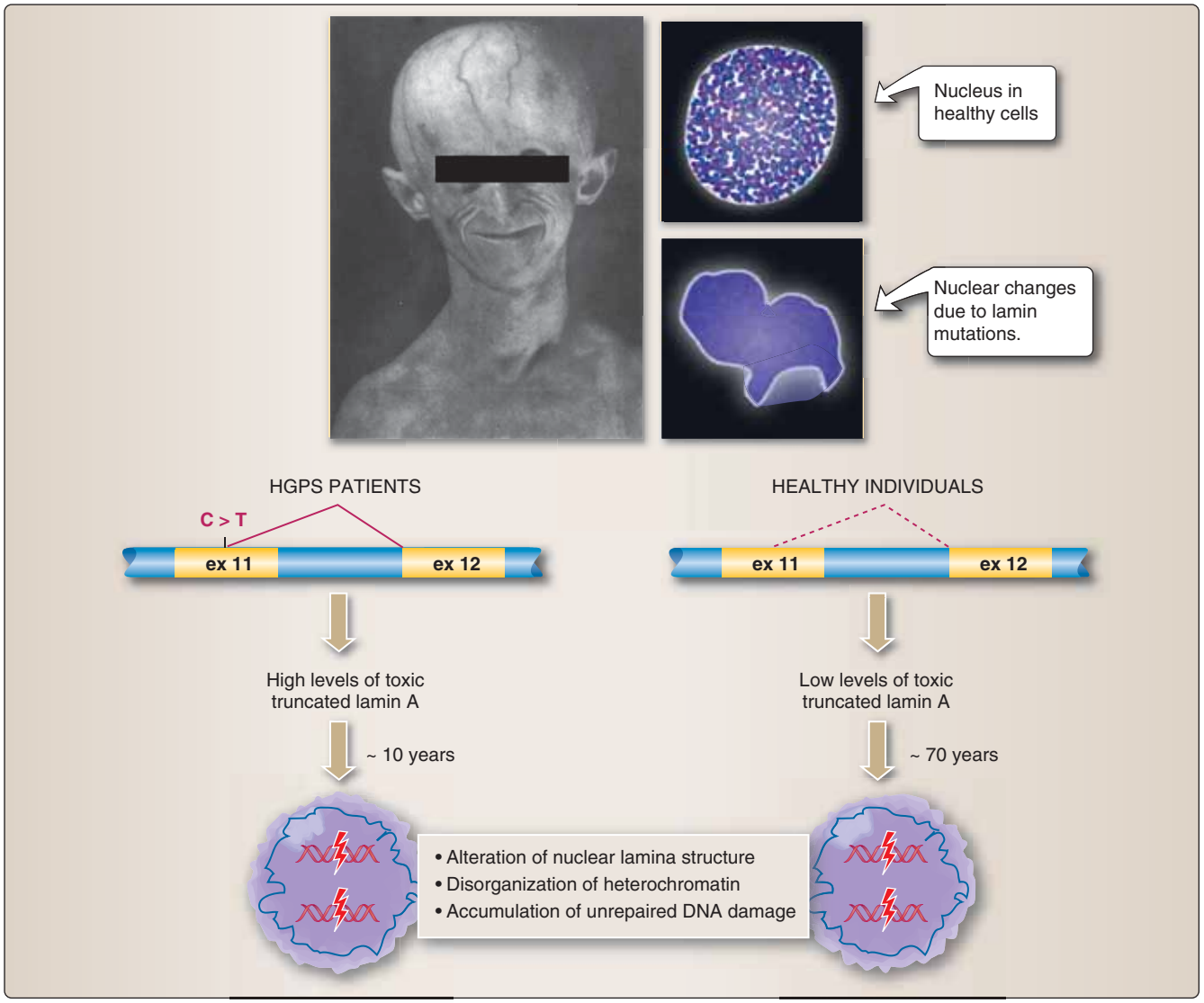


Figure 24.4
Hutchinson-Gilford progeria syndrome (HGPS) and nuclear architecture.

One class of proteins that play a role in the protection of cell from age-related decline in function is sirtuins. **Sirtuins** (founding member—silent information regulator 2) are NAD-dependent histone deacetylases that are evolutionarily conserved. The uniqueness of sirtuins lies in the fact that unlike deacetylases, which simply hydrolyze acetyl-lysine residues, the sirtuin-mediated deacetylation reaction couples lysine deacetylation to NAD hydrolysis. This hydrolysis yields, in addition to other products, nicotinamide, which itself is an inhibitor of sirtuin activity. The dependence of sirtuins on NAD links their enzymatic activity directly to the energy status of the cell via the cellular NAD:NADH ratios. While other enzyme activities are known for this family of proteins, sirtuin 1 (SIRT1) (human counterpart of sirt2) is an NAD-dependent histone deacetylase with roles in chromatin silencing and deacetylation of lysine amino acids in other nonhistone target proteins.

It has been found to be the key molecule that affects longevity within the context of calorie restriction (see clinical correlation), which has long been known to increase life span.

Progerias and nucleus architecture

Hutchinson-Gilford progeria syndrome (HGPS) is a rare syndrome that is characterized by greatly accelerated aging. These individuals demonstrate severe growth retardation, loss of subcutaneous fat, reduced bone mineral density, alopecia, and poor muscle development. They also show wrinkled skin and have a higher incidence of stroke and myocardial infarction. The average age of death for individuals affected by this syndrome is 12 to 15 years. Interestingly, these patients do not present with all aspects of aging. In fact, they do not show increased incidence of cancers, neurodegeneration, and other age-related disorders such as arthritis or cataracts. At the molecular level, HGPS may represent accelerated aging. The syndrome is caused by a mutation in the Lamin A gene which encodes a nuclear scaffold protein. The nuclei of HGPS cells show dramatic changes in structure (Figure 24.4) and the changes to chromatin are similar to that seen in the normal aging process.

B. Mechanisms involved in senescence induction

Many mechanisms have been proposed to contribute to the aging phenomenon in eukaryotes; however, the specific contribution of each and their relative importance in this process is a matter of debate.

1. **DNA replication stress:** This is defined as inefficient DNA replication that causes DNA replication forks to progress slowly or stall. Many factors are known to contribute to this type of stress to DNA replication (Figure 24.5). RecQ helicases are a group of helicase enyzmes that are important in maintaining the genome. They function in unwinding DNA and aiding in replication of double-stranded DNA. In the absence of these enzymes, replication does not proceed normally and is implicated in the process of aging. Mutations in the WRN RecQ helicase cause genomic instability and the premature aging syndrome **Werner syndrome**. In addition to shortened life span, Werner syndrome is characterized by premature graying and thinning of hair, osteoporosis, type II diabetes, cataracts, and an increased incidence of cancer.

2. **Mitochondria, reactive oxygen species, and aging:** Mitochondria have their own genome and they replicate and transcribe their DNA semiautonomously. Like nuclear DNA, mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) is constantly exposed to DNA damaging agents. The free radical theory of aging proposes that aging as well as the associated degenerative diseases could be attributed to the deleterious effects of free radicals on various cellular components. One of the sources for ROS in the cell is oxidative phosphorylation within mitochondria, so the free-radical theory of aging is essentially a mitochondrial

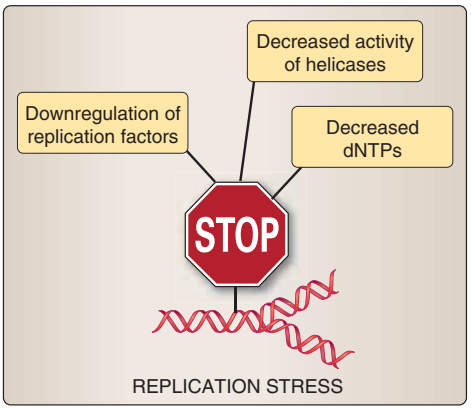


Figure 24.5
DNA replication stress.

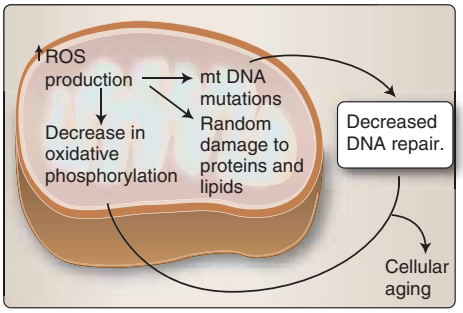


Figure 24.6
Mitochondria, reactive oxygen species, and aging.

theory of aging. Because mtDNA is vulnerable to oxidative stress (due to the close proximity between the sites of ROS production and mtDNA), mtDNA mutations accumulate progressively during life and are directly responsible for a measurable deficiency in cellular oxidative phosphorylation activity, leading to an enhanced ROS production. The increase in mutational load in mtDNA combined with increased ROS production creates a "vicious cycle" that culminates in the aging of the organism (Figure 24.6).

Calorie restriction, aging and red wine

Caloric restriction, which is the reduction of caloric intake without malnutrition, is known to be important for extending the life span in a wide range of species including humans and for postponing the manifestations of aging, including both functional decline and age-related diseases. Much is known about the physiological changes that occur when subjected to caloric restriction, but molecular mechanisms are not known. Recently, sirtuins have been found to be induced by calorie reduction. Resveratrol, a polyphenolic compound in red wine, which has been shown to mimic calorie restriction in its ability, potently induces SIRT1 expression in addition to a number of related protective effects on cell metabolism aimed to prevent age-related decline in physiological functions. The amount of resveratrol necessary is the caveat—requiring an equivalent of 100 bottles of red wine to produce the beneficial effect seen in laboratory animals!

3. **Stem cell theory of aging:** According to this theory, tissue-specific adult stem cells, which are important for self-renewal and tissue replacement during the human life span, show an age-associated decline in replicative function. These cells are generally retained in the quiescent state but can be induced into the cell cycle in response to physiological growth factor stimulation even after prolonged periods of dormancy. Once stimulated, the stem cells can produce undifferentiated progeny of cells, which, in turn, produces differentiated cells through subsequent rounds of proliferation. It is thought that aging affects the ability of stem cells to produce the undifferentiated progeny and the differentiated cells but not its ability to self-renew (Figure 24.7). According to this model, one of the mechanisms used by tumor suppressors such as p53 is in part through activation of differentiation in the self-renewing tissue-specific stem cells. P16 has also been shown to play an important role in the age-related decline of stem cells. Sufficient evidence is available to indicate that an age-associated increase in p16 levels restricts self-renewal and upsets tissue homeostasis (see below).

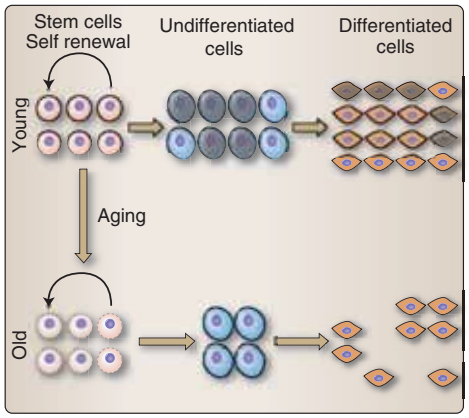


Figure 24.7
Stem cell's functionality is altered with age.

C. Molecular mechanisms in senescence response

While diverse stimuli can induce the senescence response, they all appear to converge on either one or two different pathways that both establish and maintain the senescence response. These pathways are governed by two tumor suppressor proteins, p53 and pRB (Chapter 21).

1. **The p53 pathway:** It is well known that p53 is an important mediator of cellular responses to DNA damage. It has also been found to be an important mediator of senescence response as attrition of telomeres (which resembles damaged DNA) similarly triggers an increase in p53. Inappropriate activation of oncogenes within normal cells also induces a senescence response through activation of p53. Oncogenes such as RAS (Chapters 17, 22) are known to signal through generation of ROS, which is necessary for their mitogenic effects. However generation of DNA damaging ROS also activates the p53-dependent damage response. At least, in some cell types, the induction of senescence by DNA damage, telomere dysfunction, and possibly oncogene overexpression converge on the p53 pathway, which is both necessary and sufficient to establish and maintain senescence arrest. Although the senescence-induced growth arrest cannot be reversed by physiological growth signals, it can be reversed by inactivation of p53 function, which explains the age-related increase in cancer incidence in the population (Figure 24.8).

2. **The pRB pathway:** In some cells, p53 inactivation alone appears to be insufficient to reverse the senescent phenotype. The difference appears to be in the presence or absence of p16 expression. Stress increases the expression of p16 and the resultant increase in pRB is known to aid in the reorganization of the chromatin, resulting in replicative senescence-related inhibition of gene encoding cell cycle regulators.

Chapter Summary

- Most eukaryotic cells undergo a finite number of cell divisions.
- Replicative senescence refers to the number of cell divisions that a cell undergoes before it irreversibly ceases proliferating.
- Senescent cells are metabolically viable but will not enter the cell cycle under any condition.
- Senescent cells are characterized by increased expression of cell cycle inhibitors such as p16 and p21.
- The chromatin in senescent cells demonstrates a unique structure as a result of modifications to histones and DNA.
- Sirtuins are a group of proteins with NAD-dependent deacetylase activity that offer protection against age-associated decline in metabolism and physiological functions.
- Mitochondria-associated ROS formation is implicated in the oxidative damage to macromolecules coupled with a decrease in oxidative phosphorylation.
- Age-associated decline in the replicative potential of stem cells also accounts for the deficiencies in tissue replacement during aging.

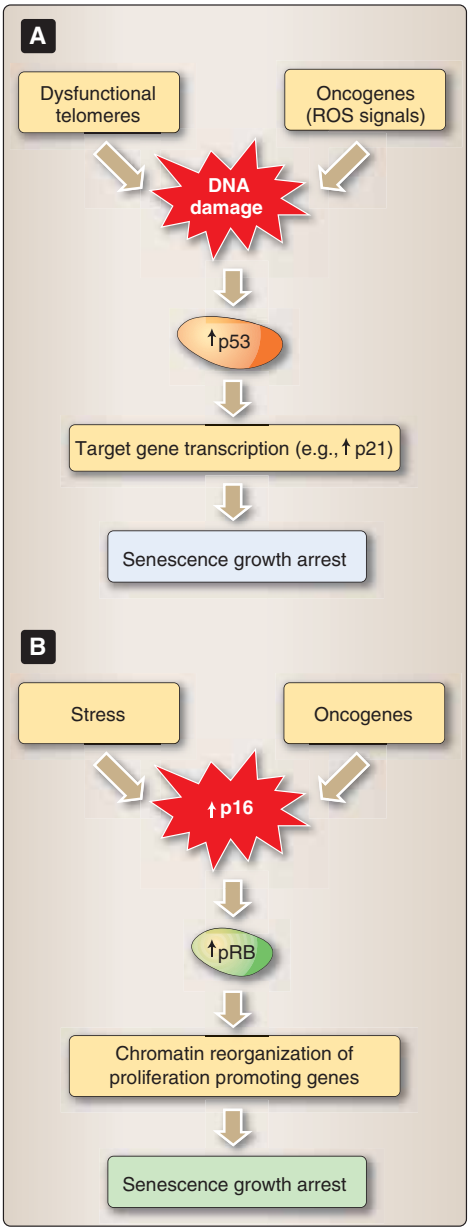


Figure 24.8
Molecular mechanisms in senescence response.

Study Questions

24.1 Which of the following characteristics of senescent cells is incorrect?

Senescent cells

A. Are aging cells with a limited lifespan.
B. Show telomere attrition.
C. Are metabolically viable.
D. Can be induced into the cell cycle.
E. Express a type of beta-galactosidase activity.

24.2 Which of the following types of DNA modifications are known to be associated with aging?

A. Cytosine methylation of DNA in certain promoter sites
B. Deacytelation of certain chromatin regions in DNA
C. Oxidative damage to mtDNA
D. DNA methylation of repeat sequences
E. All of the above

24.3 ALL of the following EXCEPT one represent an increase in p53 as a result of activation of a DNA damage or senescence pathway. Which of the following conditions show an increase in p53 that is unrelated to DNA damage or senescence induction?

A. Inappropriate activation of oncogenes in normal cells
B. Activation of proliferation in aging stem cells
C. Generation of ROS in aging mitochondria
D. DNA replication stress
E. Shortening of telomeres in DNA

24.1: Correct answer = D. While cells with a limited life span senesce, show telomere attrition, and exit out of the cell cycle, they remain metabolically viable. They are, however, unable to enter the cell cycle under any condition. A senescent-associated beta-galactosidase activity is known to be present in aging cells.

24.2: Correct answer = E. Methylation of certain CpG residues in DNA is important to silence the critical genes, while deacetylation of chromatin regions creating the SAHF results in the silencing of a number of cell cycle regulatory genes. Oxidative damage due to generation of ROS and subsequent mutations in mtDNA is implicated in the aging process. Methylation and demethylation of DNA are seen with aging, but methylation appears to be limited to the repeat sequences in DNA.

24.3: Correct answer = B. An increase in p53 in adult stem cells is associated with an induction in differentiation of these cells. Inappropriate expression of oncogenes increases p53 as a result of increase in ROS production, which is also true in aging mitochondria. DNA replication stress and shortening of telomeres also induce a damage response directly related to the damage in DNA.

Index

Page numbers followed by a *f* indicate figure; those followed by *t* indicate table.

T

U

V

W

X

Z